B Bunbury

A TREATISE OF Military Diſcipline;

In which is Laid down and Explained

The Duty of the OFFICER and SOLDIER,

Thro' the ſeveral Branches of the *SERVICE*.

By *HUMPHREY BLAND*, Eſq;
ADJUTANT-GENERAL; and Colonel of one of His Majeſty's Regiments of Dragoons.

The FIFTH EDITION.

In omni Prælio non tam Multitudo & Virtus indocta, quam Ars & Exercitium ſolent præſtare Victoriam. Vegetius, Lib. 1.



DUBLIN:
Printed by M. RHAMES.
For P. CRAMPTON, over-againſt the *Horſe-Guard*, in *Dame-ſtreet*, Bookſeller. M DCC XLIII.


BRITISH MUSEUM
30
67
DEC

TO THE

KING.

SIR,

I Most Humbly beg Your Majesty's Pardon for laying this Treatiſe at Your Feet; which I preſume to do upon no other Foundation, than that of my Zeal for your Service: And I hope, from Your Majesty's known Goodneſs, that

DEDICATION.

You will be pleaſed to excuſe its Errors, ſince the only Motive I had for Writing it was the Deſire I have every Way to approve my ſelf,

May it pleaſe Your moſt Sacred MAJESTY,

Your Majeſty's Moſt Humble,

Moſt Obedient, and

Moſt Devoted

Subject and Servant,



Humphrey Bland.

PREFACE.

FROM *the great Reputation of the* British *Arms, Men would be apt to imagine, that ſeveral Treatiſes, of the Art of War, were to be met with in our Language; but when they come to enquire, they will be ſtrangely ſurprized to find nothing of this Kind of our Native Growth, that I know of, except what has been left by the Earl of* Orrery, *who wrote fifty Years ago: And tho' his Writings might have been very inſtructive at that Time, yet ſo many Improvements have been ſince made, (ſeveral Inſtances of which I could eaſily produce, were there an Occaſion) that they can be but of very little Uſe, at preſent, to young Officers, for whoſe Sake chiefly, this Book is publiſhed.*

As the Nation has abounded with Officers, whoſe Services leave no Doubt of their Abilities to perform a Work of this Nature,

Nature, it muſt be ſuppos'd that their Indolence, or their imagining no Want of it, was the Reaſon that nothing of this Kind has hitherto appeared: But conſidering how few old Officers remain, and that they are diminiſhing every Day, I hope I ſhall not be cenſured for having ventured to commit to Writing the little Knowledge I have acquir'd in Military Matters, for the Inſtruction of thoſe who are yet to learn; who, in a little time longer, if they have no Opportunity of going Abroad, and wanting the Example of old Officers to guide them, may not think it uſeleſs to have Recourſe to this Account of their Duty, however imperfect it may be.

I am well aware how little Thanks ſome People may think I deſerve for this Attempt; and am very ſenſible that Standing Armies, and conſequently the modelling of them, are little reliſhed in time of Peace in this Kingdom; and, I muſt own, as much a Soldier as I am, not to be deſired, if we can preſerve our King, our Trade, (and, I had almoſt ſaid, our

our Civil Government) without them: But such is the State of the World at present, that, I doubt, it will be in vain to flatter ourselves with the Hopes of opposing our Militia to Troops who have the Advantage of Discipline on their Side: Neither are our Treaties nor Alliances (as appears by Proofs too recent) sufficient without the Ratio Ultima: *And, I believe, it is a true Observation, that First or Last, Force has been the conclusive Argument of most Treaties, and those have been found the best, which have been supported by the best Troops.*

I have, throughout my Book, taken every Occasion to inculcate the Necessity of Legal Military Subordination. It has been the Practice of all Nations, Ancient and Modern, even where the People have been blessed with the highest Liberty, never to admit of a Military Independance upon their Military Superiors: I look upon it as the Band which ties the whole together, and without it all other Rules and Forms to be of no Use. Perhaps it is the great Distinction between Regular Troops and

Militia

Militia, and the Cauſe why the Former have always had the Advantage over the Latter.

I know it will be objected, that the better our Troops are, the more dangerous they may be; and I confeſs the Objection to be of ſo great Weight, that it fits not me to enter into the Queſtion: All that I am pleading for, is, that as long as it ſhall be thought neceſſary to keep up a Body of Regular Troops, thoſe Troops may be put upon ſuch a Foot as may anſwer the End, and the ſole End, which is expected from them by the Publick. Give me Leave to add, to the Honour of the Officers, that more Inſtances than One might be given, when, inſtead of being thoſe ſervile Tools, (which is ſo much apprehended) of bringing their Country into Slavery, they have Behaved themſelves with zeal for its Liberty, equal, I think, with the beſt Engliſhman; *if expoſing themſelves and Families to the Hazard of Starving, may be allowed to be an Inſtance of it.*



CON-

CONTENTS.

CHAP. I.

Directions for the Forming of Battalions, Posting of Officers, &c.

ARTICLE I.

Directions to the Officers and Soldiers about Parading of Companies. Page 1
About the Sizing of Men, and Method of doing it. 2
In what Manner the Companies are to march to the General Parade. ibid.
How the Companies are to draw up in Battalion, with a Plan of the same. 3
The old Way of compleating of Files rejected, and a new Method proposed. ibid.
Directions for the drawing up of the Company of Granadiers. 4
ARTICLE II. *How the Officers take their Posts in Battalion.* ibid.
How the Serjeants, Hautboys, and Drummers are to be posted. 5
How the Colonel and Lieutenant-Colonel are to post themselves. ibid.
No Officer to be absent without Leave when the Battalion draws out. ibid.
ARTICLE III. *Method of sending for the Colours.* 6
Compliment paid to the Colours. ibid.
How the Colours may be brought by the Field-Officers Companies. 8
Method of Lodging the Colours. ibid.
The Battalion told off into Divisions, and the Officers appointed to them. 9
ARTICLE IV. *Directions for the Opening of Files, with proper Rules for the doing of it both for the Officers and Private Soldiers.* ibid.
Distances of Ranks and Files. 10
ARTICLE V. *How the Officers are to take their Posts in the Rear by Beat of Drum.* 14

How

CONTENTS.

How they are to return to the Front by Beat of Drum. Page 15
How it is to be perform'd by Word of Command. 16
ARTICLE VI. *Directions for the Closing of Files.* ibid.
Manner of dismissing of the Battalion after Exercise. 17
How the Officers are to march the Companies with clubb'd Arms. ibid.
The Major and Adjutant to exercise the Regiment on Horse-back. ibid.
Other Officers, when order'd, to exercise it on Foot. ibid.
Directions to those who exercise the Regiment. 18
Instructions for delivering of the Words of Command. ibid.
Position of a Soldier under Arms. ibid.

CHAP. II.

Of the Words of Command of the Manual Exercise of the Foot, with an Explanation. 19

CHAP. III.

Manual Exercise of the Granadiers, with an Explanation. 34

CHAP. IV.

Evolutions of the Foot, with an Explanation, and General Rules for Wheeling.

CHAP. V.

Of Passing in Review.

ARTICLE I. *The Companies to be inspected before the Review.* 56
ARTICLE II. *When the Regiment is form'd, what is necessary to be done before the General comes to review it.* ibid.
Compliment to be paid the General who Reviews. ibid.
Directions for the Facing of the Regiment. 57

Of-

Officers to remain in the Front, when the General passes along the Rear. Page 58
ARTICLE III. *After the Regiment has been review'd Standing, what further Ceremonies are commonly perform'd.* ibid.
ARTICLE IV. *How the Colonel and Lieutenant-Colonel are to post themselves during the Exercise.* 59
The Major to exercise the Regiment on Horseback though he should command it. ibid.
When a Captain commands the Regiment, how he is to proceed. ibid.
How the Hautboys, Drummers and Serjeants on the Flanks are to post themselves during the Exercise. ibid.
Officer who exercises not to find Fault before the General. 60
ARTICLE V. *After the Exercise, how they are to march by the General.* ibid.
What Grand and Sub-Divisions are. ibid.
How they are to march by Grand and Sub-Divisions. 61
Manner of posting the Officers to them. ibid.
Directions about Saluting. ibid.
How they are to pass by in Companies. 63
When they have pass'd by the General, to draw up on their former Ground. 64
ARTICLE VI. *When the Regiment marches off from the Left, how the Colonel and Lieutenant-Colonel are to post themselves.* ibid.

CHAP. VI.

Consisting of Directions for the different Firings of the Foot.

ARTICLE I. *How the Battalion is to be form'd to go through the Firings.* 65
Bayonets may be fix'd or not at common Exercise. 66
Telling off the Platoons, and what Number of Files they consist of. ibid.
Officers to command the Platoons, and Manner of Posting them. ibid.
The rest of the Officers fall in the Rear, and Reason why. ibid.
Platoons divided into several Firings, and Number each Firing commonly consists of. 67
Platoons of each placed in different Parts of the Battalion, and Reasons for it. ibid.

ARTICLE II. *Manner of dividing the Platoons in different Parts of the Battalion.* Page 68
Three Plans, shewing how it is generally done. 69, 70, 71
Words of Command of the Platoon Exercise, with an Explanation. 72
Necessary Care in the making up of the Cartridges. 73
Inconveniencies that may attend their not being ramm'd down. ibid.
The Major to be exact in the Telling off the Platoons, and the Officers to be thoroughly inform'd of their Firing and Number. 74
Method to try if they know it, to prevent Mistakes in the Execution. ibid.
The Whole to be inform'd in what Manner they are to fire. ibid.
Whether Standing, Advancing, or Retiring, or all three; and if the Platoons of each Firing are to fire in their Order (and what is meant by their Order) or together. ibid.
If to proceed by Beat of Drum, what Beatings the Major will use. ibid.
Common Beatings used, and what is generally perform'd at each. ibid.
ARTICLE. III. *Directions to fire Standing, which is perform'd in their Order.* 75
Directions to the Officers who command the Platoons in giving the Words of Command. 77
How to go through the Firings Advancing, and to vary it from the other, in which the Major is to give the Words of Command. 77
Directions to fire Retiring, and to finish with the Whole. 78
ARTICLE IV. *Method of going through the Firings without Halting of the Battalion.* 79
Danger which may attend it; particularly in Retiring. 80
For what Number of Men the Plans are calculated. 81
ARTICLE V. *Directions for the Firing by Ranks, with Remarks on it.*
ARTICLE VI. *Parapet Firing, on what Occasion used, with the Methods of performing it.* 8[illegible]
ARTICLE VII. *Street-Firing, when used, and how perform'd at Exercise.* 8[illegible]
ARTICLE VIII. *Running-Fire,* or Feu de Joye, *how perform'd in Camp and Garison.* 8[illegible]

CHAP.

CONTENTS.

CHAP. VII.

Containing Directions how a Battalion of Foot is to defend itself when attack'd by Horse.

ARTICLE I. *Directions for their Telling off, that they may act either in Battalion, or in the Square.* Page 90
The first Plan the most perfect, as being proper for both. ibid.
Apprehensions from Horse, proceed from the Foot not knowing their own Strength. 91
A Situation suppos'd, where they can be only attack'd in Front. ibid.
Directions for the Management of their Fire in that Situation. ibid.
In this Case, the Front Rank to fire with the rest, and Reason for it. 92
How to judge of real or feint Attacks by the Disposition of the Enemy. ibid.
Proposal to advance small Platoons to disappoint their feint Attacks. ibid.
Directions to those Platoont in Advancing and Giving their Fire. 93
Platoons of the first Firing to make ready when those Advanced do, and when to give their Fire. 94
A Situation suppos'd where one Flank is expos'd. ibid.
Manner of securing that Flank. ibid.
ARTICLE II. *Directions for the forming of the Square from Three deep, according to the* Dutch *Manner.* 95
Two Plans shewing how it is done. ibid.
Directions for the reducing of the Square into Battalion. 99
ARTICLE III. *Directions for the forming of the Square by four Grand Divisions, commonly practised by the* English, *with a Plan of the same.* 101
How it is reduced into Battalion. 104
Remarks on the different Ways of Forming the Square. 105
ARTICLE. IV. *Directions for Firing and Marching in the Square.* ibid.
The Platoons of each Face divided into different Firings. 106
Figures on the Inside shew what Firings they belong to. ibid.
How they are to fire in their Order. 107
How they are to face in Marching towards the different Fronts. ibid.

How they are to Fire marching towards each Front. Page 108
To end with the Fire of the whole Square. 113

CHAP. VIII.

General Rules for the Marching of a Battalion, or a Detachment of Men, where there is a Possibility of meeting with the Enemy.

ARTICLE I. *An Officer's Character hardly retrievable if surpriz'd without being prepar'd.* 114
Reflections to induce young Officers to the Study of the Service. ibid.
No Military Man above the Knowledge of the minuteſt Part of the Service. 115
Confirm'd by the Practice of the Germans, *and the late Glorious King* WILLIAM. ibid.
ARTICLE II. *Method propos'd to march by Platoons inſtead of Diviſions. Reaſons for it.* 116
Van and Rear-Guards, what Numbers they generally conſiſt of. 117
General Inſtructions to the Van and Rear-Guards, and Advantage of a Rear-Guard. 118
ARTICLE III. *Directions for the Marching of the Regiment, and how the Officers are to march their Platoons.* 120
Major and Adjutant, their Duty in the above Caſe. ibid.
Directions for the paſſing of a Defile. ibid.
The Soldiers not to faſten the Tent-Poles to their Firelocks. 121
Conſequence that happen'd by this, and other Neglects. ibid.
Reflections on the ſaid Miſcarriage, by Way of Precaution to others. 122
ARTICLE IV. *In incloſed Countries, to have ſmall Parties on the Flanks: Deſign and Uſe of them.* 123
Precautions in Reconnoitring. If cut off, how to make it known. ibid.
How to be reliev'd, with Directions to thoſe who are ſent. 124
Young Officers apt to exceed their Orders from a miſtaken Zeal. ibid.
Reflections on the Conſequences of that, and the contrary Behaviour. ibid.

When

CONTENTS.

When the Vanguard discovers any Troops, necessary Precautions to be taken. Page 125
Instructions to the Officers who shall be commanded from the Body to attack a Partizan-Party, for fear of being driven into an Ambuscade. ibid.
Necessary Precautions of the Commanding Officer, if his March is obstructed. ibid.
His Orders must determine him in these Cases. 126
ARTICLE V. *Necessary Precautions, and Disposition of the Regiment, in marching through an Open or Champain Country.* ibid.
When proper to march in four grand Divisions, and Method of doing it upon the March. 127
Directions to form the Square from grand Divisions on the March. 128
Necessary Precautions on the Appearance of the Enemy's Horse, and not to form the Square, but march in grand Divisions, 'till there's a Necessity for it. 129
When in Danger, not to be solicitous about their Baggage. ibid.
Van and Rear-Guards drawn in, and to be divided into the Platoons. ibid.
If the Enemy retires, or keeps at a Distance, to pursue their March. ibid.
Directions for reducing the Square into Grand Divisions. 130

CHAP. IX.

General Rules for Battalions of Foot, when they Engage in the Line.

ARTICLE I. *Necessary Inspection into the Arms and Ammunition the Day before the Action.* 132
Regiments to be as strong as possible when they go on Service. ibid.
To be Told off into Platoons, and the Officers divided to them. ibid.
Inspection of those Officers, and Reason why it is necessary. ibid.
A profound Silence in marching up to, and during the Action with the Enemy. ibid.
The Commanding Officer to give the Words of Command for all Movements. 133

Drummers to regulate their Beatings according to the said Words of Command. Page 133
ARTICLE II. *The Line to move slow in marching up to the Enemy.* ibid.
The Battalions to march up close before they fire, and then fall upon the Enemy with their Bayonets, with the Advantage which may arise from it. ibid.
But if deferr'd, how dangerous. 134
ARTICLE III. *When the Enemy gives Way, the Soldiers not to break in the Pursuit of them.* ibid.
No Battalion to advance before the Line in Pursuit of the Enemy. ibid.
Granadiers to advance and fire on them to keep up their Terror. 135
Directions to the said Granadiers in Advancing. ibid.
Danger in Battalions advancing before the Line. ibid.
ARTICLE IV. *An Article of War quoted against the Soldiers leaving their Ranks to plunder and pillage, before the Enemy are entirely beat.* 136
Consequences on its not being punctually obey'd. ibid.
Two Instances related, wherein it appear'd by way of Precaution to others. ibid.
ARTICLE V. *Field-Officers to observe what Regiments they are to sustain, or who sustains them.* 138
They are to remark the Cloathing and Colours of their own Troops, that they may distinguish them from the Enemy. ibid.
ARTICLE VI. *When the Enemy have Men posted in the Front of their Line, to annoy yours in marching up, the Granadiers should be order'd to dislodge them.* ibid.
ARTICLE VII. *When a Battalion is ordered to retire, what Precautions are necessary for the performing of it, with the Reasons why they may be order'd.* 139
When the greatest Part of the Line retires, the rest to do the same. ibid.
The Battalions in the Line to act in Concert with one another. ibid.
ARTICLE VIII. *When the first Line gives Way, how they are to retire.* 140
How the Officers are to act on this Occasion. ibid.
Danger which the second Line runs of being broke by the first. ibid.
Officers of the first Line to use their utmost Diligence to prevent it. ibid.
ARTICLE IX. *An Expedient offer'd in order to prevent it.* 141

ARTICLE

CONTENTS.

ARTICLE X. *Directions to the ſecond Line, on the firſt giving Way.* Page 142.
If follow'd, how eaſy to repulſe the Enemy. ibid.
Danger which the Men of the ſecond Line apprehend, on their ſeeing thoſe of the firſt give Way, more imaginary than real. ibid.
Reaſons ſhewing them to be ſo, in order to remove them. 143
The ſecond Line's moving on briskly, will in ſome Meaſure remove them. ibid.
ARTICLE XI. *A Remark, that the private Men form their Notion of the Danger from the Appearance of their Officers.* 144
To prevent bad Impreſſions, the Officers ſhould appear ſerene and chearful. ibid.
Which will have a good Effect, if they have an Opinion of their military Capacity. ibid.
Young or unexperienced Officers can't influence them in the ſame Manner. ibid.
ARTICLE XII. *When a Battalion in the Line is preſs'd for Room, what they are to do.* ibid.
ARTICLE XIII. *If attack'd in the Line, or in Brigade, by Horſe, how they are to act.* 145
ARTICLE XIV. *The Alternate Firing, practiſed by the* Dutch, *deſcribed.* ibid.
Advantage and Diſadvantage which may attend it. 146
The Dutch, *by the Excellency of their Diſcipline, have ſurmounted the Danger.* ibid.
Common Notion, that the Sang froid *of the* Dutch *is owing to Phlegm.* 147
Advanced only to excuſe our own Neglect of Diſcipline. ibid.
The French *look upon us in the ſame Light, though they have had Reaſon to be convinced of the contrary.* ibid.
Foreigners have a Notion that we can't be brought into Diſcipline. ibid.
Our Neglect of it has produced that Notion. ibid.

CHAP. X.

Duty of the Infantry in Garriſon.

ARTICLE I. *Upon marching to Garriſon, the Quarter-maſter to be ſent before.* 148

Directions to him on his taking of Quarters. Page 148
ARTICLE II. *When the Caſerns or Barracks can't contain the Troops, Manner of Quartering of them on the Inhabitants, which is call'd Cantoning.* 149
ARTICLE III. *Directions to the Quarter-maſter about meeting the Regiment, and what is proper to be done before they enter the Town.* ibid.
ARTICLE IV. *Ceremony at the Barrier before they enter, and how conducted to the Parade.* 150
When drawn up on the Parade, the Colonel to wait on the Governour. 151
Town-major to read the general Orders of the Garriſon to the Regiment. ibid.
Then to conduct them to the Regimental Parade, Alarum-Poſts and Quarters, where they are diſmiſs'd. 152

CHAP. XI.

Uſual Guards in a Gariſon, and Manner of Forming the Parade.

ARTICLE I. *How the Guards are compos'd.* 153
Number who mount, according to the Tooops in Gariſon. ibid.
Method commonly obſerv'd in it. ibid.
Number each Guard generally conſiſts of. ibid.
The Citadel, generally a Gariſon of its own. ibid.
The Guards mount in the Morning. 154
ARTICLE II. *Directions about viewing the Men who mount the Guard.* ibid.
ARTICLE III. *Directions for the Beating of the Aſſembly or Troop.* 155
How the Detachments are to draw up on the Parade. ibid.
ARTICLE IV. *Manner of forming the Guards, and poſting the Serjeants to them.* 156
Officers to draw for their Guards, and their Names to be enter'd. ibid.
Manner of drawing up the Reſerve and Horſe Guards. 157
When the Guards are to exerciſe together, how perform'd. ibid.
How the Guards are to march off. ibid.
Horſe-Guards to march laſt. Reaſon ſuppos'd for that Cuſtom. 158

Adjutants

Adjutants to attend the Town-major 'till diſmiſs'd. Page 158
Orderly Serjeants and Corporals to attend their Adjutants. ibid.
French *Governors oblig'd to ſee the Guards march off.* ibid.
Dutch *Governors not, but often do.* ibid.
Gariſons remote from the Enemy, the Orders deliver'd in the Morning. ibid.
In Frontiers; not 'till the Gates are ſhut. 159
Upon the Arrival of a Perſon entitled to a Guard, the eldeſt Regiment in Gariſon is to furniſh it. ibid.
ARTICLE V. *Directions for the Mounting and Diſmounting of Guards.* ibid.
Corporals of Guards to inſpect into the Things committed to the Charge of their Sentries. 160
How they are to proceed when any of thoſe Things are damag'd or loſt. ibid.
ARTICLE VI. *Manner of relieving Sentries.* 162
Directions how Sentries are to behave on their Poſts. ibid.

CHAP. XII.

Inſtructions to the Officers on Guard 'till they are Relieved.

ARTICLE I. *The Officers to keep their Guards, and how they may give their Men Leave.* 166
Officers on the Port-Guards to examine all Strangers, and how they are to proceed with ſuſpected Perſons. ibid.
ARTICLE II. *Officers of the Port-Guards to ſend their Reports to the Captain of the Main-Guard, with the Time and Manner of doing it.* 167
Directions to the Captain of the Main-Guard, about entering of the ſeveral Reports, and Time of delivering them to the Governor. ibid.
Reſerve-Guard, only under the Direction of the Governor. 168
ARTICLE III. *Time the Draw-Bridges are kept up, and the Barrier ſhut.* ibid.
Port-Guards to be under Arms, when Troops enter the Town. Reaſons for it. 169
Upon a Fire, the Port-Guard, to be under Arms, and the Gates ſhut. Reaſon for it. ibid.

CONTENTS.

The ſame Precaution when a Riot happens near a Port-Guard. Page 170
Main Guard to quell thoſe in the Middle of the Town. ibid.
In Frontier Garriſons the Guards to be doubled on Market-days. Reaſons for it. ibid.
ARTICLE IV. *Port-Guards to ſend for the Keys at Sun-ſet, and the Drummers to beat the Retreat on the Ram-parts.* ibid.
The Gates to be then cloſed, and the Wickets only left open. ibid.
No Soldier to have Port-Liberty then. ibid.
The Keys brought to the Main-Guard, and deliver'd to the Serjeants of the Ports. ibid.
Port-Guards, how they receive the Keys, and Ceremony of ſhutting the Gates. 171
How Guards are to be poſted in the Out-works during the Night. ibid.
When they are numerous, a Method propos'd for the doing of it. ibid.
When the Gates are lock'd, how the Keys are to be return'd. ibid.
Manner of delivering of the Night-Orders. 172
Captain of the Main-Guard to diſtribute the Tickets for the Rounds. ibid.
Additional viſiting Rounds, on what Occaſions appointed. ibid.
Manner of doing it, and by whom. ibid.
Time of beating the Tat-too, and by whom. 173
All Soldiers to retire to their Quarters at Tat-too. ibid.
Burghers to carry Lights with them, when they go out after Tat-too. 173
Penalty if they don't. ibid.
ARTICLE V. *Patrols to go every Hour after Tat-too, and Duty of the Patrols.* ibid.
Proper Diſtricts to be aſſign'd for the Patrols of each Guard. ibid.
What Places are moſt proper for the Horſe to patrol in. 174
Serjeants of the Patrol make a Report to their Officers. ibid.
ARTICLE VI. *Ordinary and Extraordinary Rounds.* 175
Town-Major's Round to go firſt, with the Deſign of it. ibid.
Manner of going and receiving of Rounds. ibid.
Reaſons for the ſaid Ceremonies, to ſhew the Neceſſity of keeping them up. 177
Town-Major to make a Report to the Governor after his Round. 178

In

In France *the Officers give the Parole to the Town-Major.* Page 179
Their Reaſon for it. ibid.
When the Rounds or Sentries diſcover any Men from the Ramparts, what they are to do. 180
How the Officers, who command the Guards, are to act on ſuch Notice. 181
The Deſign and Duty of Rounds. ibid.
ARTICLE VII. *At Reveille the Keys to be carried to the Main-Guard, and deliver'd to the Serjeants from the Ports.* 182
Patrols of Horſe to be ſent with the Keys. ibid.
Precaution in letting the Patrols of Horſe out of the Gates. ibid.
Deſign, Manner, and Time of their Patroling. ibid.
When the Patrols return, the Gates to be opened, and the Keys ſent back. 183
Port-Guards to remain under Arms while the Horſe are patroling. ibid.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Detachments, viſiting the Soldiers Quarters, and the Hoſpital.

ARTICLE I, *Upon what Occaſion Detachments are order'd.* Page 184
A ſeparate Duty from the Town-Guards. ibid.
Manner of appointing Officers and Serjeants for thoſe Commands. ibid.
Every Battalion to furniſh an equal Proportion. ibid.
When Officers are detach'd, their ordinary Complement of Men. 185
Contrary to the Rules of War to ſend leſs than 19 Men. ibid.
ARTICLE II. *Not to paſs for a Duty unleſs they march beyond the Barrier.* ibid.
How an Officer is to mount Guard when he returns from a Party. 186
Leſs than an Officer and 25 Men ſhould not be detach'd but on Neceſſity. ibid.
All Detachments to have Paſſports from the Governor. ibid.
Conſequence if they have not, or conſiſt of leſs than 19 Men. ibid.

Reaſon

Reaſon ſuppos'd for this Cuſtom, and how far it ſhould be adher'd to. Page 186
How an Officer on Party is to act, when he ſends a Detachment from him. 187
All Parties to return at the Time limited, unleſs prevented by the Enemy. ibid.
ARTICLE III. *Orderly Serjeants and Corporals, their Duty.* ibid.
The Soldiers divided into Meſſes, and Manner of doing it. 189
Neceſſary to ſee their Victuals dreſs'd. Reaſon for it. Conſequence if neglected. ibid.
Directions about viſiting the Soldiers Quarters. 190
ARTICLE IV. *Directions about viſiting the Sick Soldiers. Incumbent on the Captains to aſſiſt their own Men, and not let them remain too long in the Hoſpital.* ibid.
Where there is no Hoſpital, an Infirmary to be appointed. 191

CHAP. XIV.

Command of the Governor. Compliment due to him, and the other Officers, from the Troops in Gariſon.

ARTICLE I. *The Governor has the chief Command of the Troops in his Gariſon, tho' Officers of a ſuperior Rank ſhould be order'd in with them.* 192
Who the Command falls to in the Abſence of the Governor, &c. ibid.
His Power over the Civil, determin'd by the Conſtitution of the Country. 193
That over the Military much more extenſive. 194
Officers and Soldiers not to lie out of the Gariſon without his Leave. ibid.
General Mothod of granting his Leave of Abſence. ibid.
His Power not limited in this, Conſequences if it was. 195
How Officers and Soldiers are to apply for Leave of Abſence ibid.
ARTICLE II. *Soldiers who have Leave muſt have Paſſport ſign'd by the Governor.* 196
Thoſe who go without, to be taken up and try'd as Deſerters. ibid.
Officers on the Port-Guards to examine all Soldiers who enter the Gates. ibid.
Officers on Party to examine all Soldiers they meet. ibid.

Regiments can't hold Courts-Martial without Leave from the Governor. ibid.
Nor appear under Arms but by the ſaid Leave, and mention'd in Orders. 197
Reaſon, ſuppos'd for this Cuſtom. ibid.
ARTICLE III. *On an Alarm, all the Troops to repair to their Alarm-Poſts.* 198
How the Colours are to be conducted there. ibid.
On what Occaſions the Troops may be order'd to their Alarm-Poſts. ibid.
When aſſembled, none can diſmiſs them but the Governor. ibid.
ARTICLE IV. *Compliment paid the Governor by the Guards.* 199
Compliment due to General Officers and others, in Camp and Gariſon. ibid.
Compliment paid to a Marſhal of France *in the* French *Gariſons.* 201
His Authority ſuperior to all Governors, even in their own Gariſons. ibid.
A Copy of the late Duke of Marlborough's *Commiſſion of Captain-General.* ibid.
ARTICLE V. *Governors of Citadels,* &c. *to ſend for the Word from the Governor of the Town.* 203
Governor of a Citadel, his Power over his own Gariſon. ibid.
Not to ſuffer above one Third of his Gariſon to go out at a Time. ibid.
Governors of Towns and Citadels in France, *their Command ſeparate,* &c. 204
Common to find it ſo there, and Reaſon alledged for it. ibid.
ARTICLE VI. *Town-Major and his Adjutants to view the Fortifications,* &c. *frequently.* ibid.
Inhabitants to give in the Names of thoſe who lodge with them, &c. ibid.
A Table for the ſeveral Duties in a Gariſon. 205

CHAP. XV.

Duty of the Infantry in Camp.

Of Guards Ordinary.

ARTICLE I. *What is generally meant by Camp-Duty.* 206
Guards Ordinary, what they are, and Numbers they generally conſiſt of. ibid.

CONTENTS.

ARTICLE II. *Method of Mounting and Dismounting of the Quarter-Guard, Duty and Design of it.* Page 207
ARTICLE III. *Directions for the parading the Men of the other Guards Ordinary.* 210
ARTICLE IV. *How the Guards are form'd on the Grand Parade.* 212
ARTICLE V. *Picquet-Guard, the Design, and Time it continues on Duty.* 213
Time of Drawing out, with the Captain's Directions to the Men. 214
Men of the Picquet not to be changed, and Reasons why. ibid.
How far the Picquet is to march when it passes for a Duty. 215
General Officers of the Day have the immediate Command of it. ibid.
Order for the marching of the Picquet, to be sent to the Lieutenant-General of the Day. ibid.
According to the Number of Regiments, Field-Officers are appointed for the Picquet. 216
Infantry divided into Wings for the Ease of appointing them. ibid.
When the Army is large, each Wing furnishes its own Field-Officers. ibid.
Manner of appointing them to their several Commands. ibid.
A Plan of a Body of Foot form'd into two Lines, divided into Wings and Brigades, to shew how the Field-Officers are appointed for the Picquet. 217
Colonels of the Picquet to go the Grand Round, the other Field-Officers go theirs, as they shall direct, and when to make their Reports. 218
General-Officers of the Day always received as Grand Rounds. ibid.
None but the Lieutenant-General of the Day can draw out the Picquet by Night. ibid.
Upon an Alarm, a Method propos'd of joining the Picquet. 219
ARTICLE VI. *In what the* German *and* French *Picquets differ from ours.* 220
Method of the Foot Picquet of the Germans, *with Reflections on it.* ibid.
Method of the Horse Picquet, preferable to that of the Foot. 222
Reason why, and how it may be improved. 223
When follow'd, the necessary Precautions which should be taken. ibid.
Method of the Foot Picquet of the French. 226

CHAP.

CONTENTS.

CHAP. XVI.

Guards Ordinary of the Cavalry, and Guards Extraordinary of the Foot.

ARTICLE I. *Guards Ordinary, Standard-Guard, Number they conſiſt of.* Page 227
Remarks on their Mounting in Boots. 228
ARTICLE II. *Grand-Guard, Number unfix'd, divided into Captains Commands. How poſted.* ibid.
Deſign and Duty of the Grand-Guard. 229
Manner of Relieving it. 230
Day and Night Poſts of the Grand-Guard, and Reaſon why. ibid.
To whom the Poſting of the Grand-Guards belong. ibid.
In Proportion to the Number of the Grand-Guard, Field-Officers are appointed. 231
Directions to the Officer who commands it, when the Enemy approaches. ibid.
To whom he is to make his Report when reliev'd. 232
ARTICLE III. *Guards Extraordinary of the Foot, on what Occaſions order'd.* ibid.
What is meant by Out-Poſts, and Reaſon for them. ibid.
Uſual Time of relieving Out-Poſts. ibid.
Adjutants to ſee the Men who mount, ſupplied with Bread and Pay. ibid.
Out-Poſts, neceſſary Precautions for their Security. 233
Their Orderly Men to attend the Major of Brigade of the Day. Reaſon why. ibid.
Out-Poſts, how they are to receive the Generals who viſit them. ibid.
Thoſe near the Camp to have the Parole which is given to the Army. ibid.
Thoſe at a Diſtance to have one of their own, and by whom ſent. ibid.
Neceſſary Conduct of an Officer who commands an Out-Poſt. ibid.
How far he is to maintain his Poſt, muſt depend on his Orders and Situation. 235
Cuſtom of War in thoſe Caſes. ibid.
ARTICLE IV. *Foraging Parties, Deſign and Duty of them.* ibid.

ARTICLE

CONTENTS.

ARTICLE V. *Convoys, or Escorts, on what Occasions order'd.* Page 236
ARTICLE VI. *Expeditions, Nature and Design of them.* 237

CHAP. XVII.

General Rules for Incamping an Army, &c.

ARTICLE I. *Distance of the Lines, with the Ground allowed to a Battalion and Squadron.* 238
The Ground allowed to a Squadron not sufficient, with the Reason why. ibid.
To remedy this, a new Method propos'd to incamp a Regiment of Horse or Dragoons, with the Advantage it has over the old Way 239
ARTICLE II. *Common Proportion of a Trooper's Tent, with Directions for Incamping a Regiment of Horse or Dragoons of nine Troops, and a Plan of the same.* 24[illegible]
Usual Proportion of Officers Tents. 24[illegible]
Method of making Kitchens for the Private Men, with the Conveniency of them. ibid.
ARTICLE III. *Directions for Incamping a Regiment of thirteen Companies, with a Plan of the same.* 24[illegible]
Duty of the Quarter-master, and Camp-Colour-Men. 24[illegible]
ARTICLE IV. *The severnl Beatings used the Day the Army marches, and what is to be done at each.* 24[illegible]
ARTICLE V. *Duty of the Quarter-Master-General, with the Method of Drawing out an Incampment or Line of Battel* 25[illegible]

CHAP. XVIII.

Duty of the Troops at a Siege.

ARTICLE I. *The Foot employed in making the Trenches, but paid for the same.* 25[illegible]
The Prices paid during the late War. ibid.
Time the Men work in the Trenches. 25[illegible]
Fascines, Gabions, &c. *made by the Foot, with a Description and the Proportion of them, and Method of carrying them to the Magazine.* 25[illegible]

ARTICLE

CONTENTS.

ARTICLE II. *Directions to the Covering-party and Workmen, at the opening of the Trenches.* Page 260
Manner of making Trenches, with the common Proportion of the ſeveral parts. 263
When the Workmen leave off, the Covering-party takes Poſſeſſion of the Trenches. 265
Directions to the Officers who command the Workmen, when a Sortie is made. 266
ARTICLE III. *Guard of the Trenches, done by entire Battalions, and commanded by General Officers.* 267
Manner of Relieving the Guard of the Trenches, with Directions to thoſe who mount, and the neceſſary Precautions to be taken. ibid.
Practice of the French *Battalions when they mount the Trenches.* 272
ARTICLE IV. *A Guard of Horſe commanded to each Attack, but remain at the* Queue *of the Trenches.* 273
When a Sally is made, the Horſe are to aſſiſt the Foot in repulſing the Enemy. ibid.
Method of the French *Governors, by making ſmall Sorties to retard the Progreſs of the Beſiegers.* 274
When any little Attack is to be made, it is to be done by the Guard of the Trenches, and the Battalions on Duty give an equal Number of Men for that Service. 275
ARTICLE V. *General Rules for a conſiderable Attack, with the Diſpoſition of the Troops who make it.* 277

CHAP. XIX.

Manner of receiving and diſtributing the daily Orders, with the general Detail of Duty, according to the Method *in* Flanders.

ARTICLE I. *General Officers of Horſe and Foot, ſeparate Commands and Duty.* 281
Diſtinct General Officers of the Day for the Horſe and Foot. 281
Number of each, and Time they remain on that Duty. ibid.
Generals of the Day command the Picquet, and viſit the Grand-guard and Out-poſts. 282
Majors of Brigade roll for the Day, and Duty of him who is of the Day. ibid.

Duty

CONTENTS.

Duty of the Adjutant-General. Page 283
ARTICLE II. *How the Orders are received and distributed.* 284
ARTICLE III. *How the Duty of General Officers and others is regulated; as also that of entire Battalions.* 286
Plan of a Roster, or Table, by which the Duty of Field-Officers, Captains, Subalterns, entire Battalions and Squadrons is regulated, with an Explanation of the Roster. 289
Table of Proportion for the Detaching of private Men, with an Explanation of the Table. 292

CHAP. XX.

Manual Exercise and Evolutions of the Cavalry explained.

ARTICLE I. *Proper Arms of a Trooper, and Manner of placing them.* 313
Directions for the forming and drawing up of Squadrons. 314
The several Distances of Ranks and Files. 315
How the Officers post themselves at the Head of the Squadrons. ibid.
How the Standards are brought to the Regiment and returned. ibid.
How the Squadrons are to be told off, or divided for the Exercise. 317
General Rules for Wheeling. 318
ARTICLE II. *The Manual Exercise on Horseback, with an Explanation.* 320
ARTICLE III. *Evolutions of the Horse, explained.* 327
ARTICLE IV. *Words of Command for Dismounting, Linking the Horses, Forming into Battalion, and Exercising on Foot; as also the reducing them into Squadron, and returning to their Horses, with an Explanation.* 347
ARTICLE V. *How a Regiment of two Squadrons is to proceed when they dismount.* 360
ARTICLE VI. *Directions for the Reception of a General, and the Manner of passing in Review before him.* 361

BRITISH LIBRARY MUSEUM 30 67 DEC

A TREATISE OF Military Diſcipline.

CHAP. I.

Containing Directions for the Forming of Battalions, Poſting of Officers, &c.

ARTICLE. I.

WHEN the Battalion is order'd to draw out to Exerciſe, or upon any other Occaſion, the Soldiers are to repair, at the Time appointed, to their Captain's Quarters, or the Place order'd for that Purpoſe, compleatly arm'd and accouter'd. The Subalterns and Non-Commiſſion'd Officers are to be there at the ſame time.

As ſoon as the Men are paraded, the Lieutenant, or in his Abſence the Enſign, muſt order them to ſtand to their Arms, and form them into a Rank entire, or three or ſix deep; after which he is to view their Arms, Ammunition,

Cloaths and Accoutrements, and to ſee if they are clean and dreſs'd in a Soldier-like Manner, in order to make a Report of each Particular to his Captain, when he comes to march the Company to the general Parade.

As there is not any one thing which contributes more to the Appearance of a Regiment than the Sizing of the Men, great Care ſhould be taken in the doing of it, before they march to the general Parade. For which End, there ſhould be a Size-roll made for each Company, that the Men may know what Rank they are to form in, which will ſave the Officers both the Time and Trouble of doing it: For, by caſting their Eye over the Size-roll, they can immediately ſee if the Men are drawn up according to that, or not.

The Sizing of Men, is the placing, as near as poſſible, thoſe of an equal Height into each Rank.

In forming ſix deep, the talleſt Men muſt be placed in the Front and fourth Ranks. The Reaſon for it is, that when the Rear-half-files are doubled up, the Men of the fourth Rank may ſize with thoſe of the firſt. The ſame Rule muſt be obſerv'd in ſizing the Men of the ſecond and fifth Ranks; as alſo, thoſe of the third and ſixth, without which Precaution the Battalion will appear to a great Diſadvantage.

The eaſieſt and moſt exact Method for the doing of this, is to draw up the Companies at the Captain's Quarters three deep, placing the talleſt Men in the Front and Rear-ranks, and the loweſt in the Center, and from thence to march them off in two Diviſions, ordering the ſecond Diviſion to draw up in the Rear of the firſt, when they are to form in Battalion, the ſecond Diviſion then compoſing the Rear-half-files; by which Means, when they are order'd to double either in the Evolutions, or to go through the Firings, the Ranks will appear equally ſiz'd.

In the forming of four deep, (which is ſeldom done but when a Battalion is very weak) the ſame Regard muſt be had, that the Ranks may appear equally ſized when they double.

The Companies being form'd and ſiz'd, the Men's Arms, *&c.* inſpected according to the above Directions, they are to march with ſhoulder'd Arms, the Captain leading the firſt Diviſion, the Enſign at the Head of the ſecond, and the Lieutenant in the Rear. The Serjeants are to march on the Flanks, and to ſee that they carry their Arms well, and keep their Ranks ſtraight. The Drummers are to fall in between the firſt and ſecond Ranks of the firſt diviſion; but when

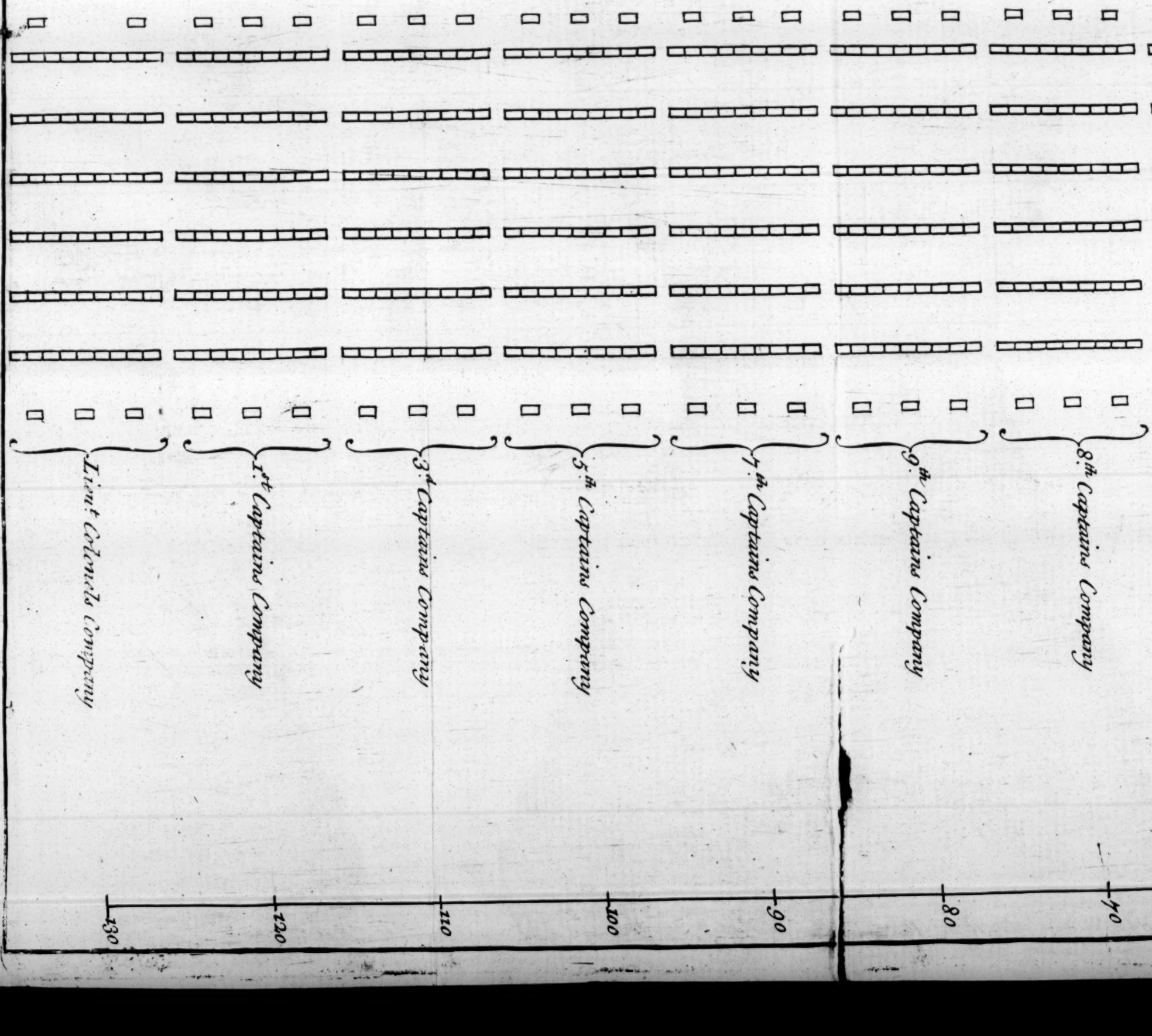
BRITISH MUSEUM 30 67 DEC

A Plan of a Battalion of Foot Drawn up according to Seniority of Companies, w
They are supposed by this Plan just Drawn up to Form the Battalion, having their own C
at their proper Distance of 4 Paces. There is 3 Foot allow'd to each Man; and the Companies

Explanation.

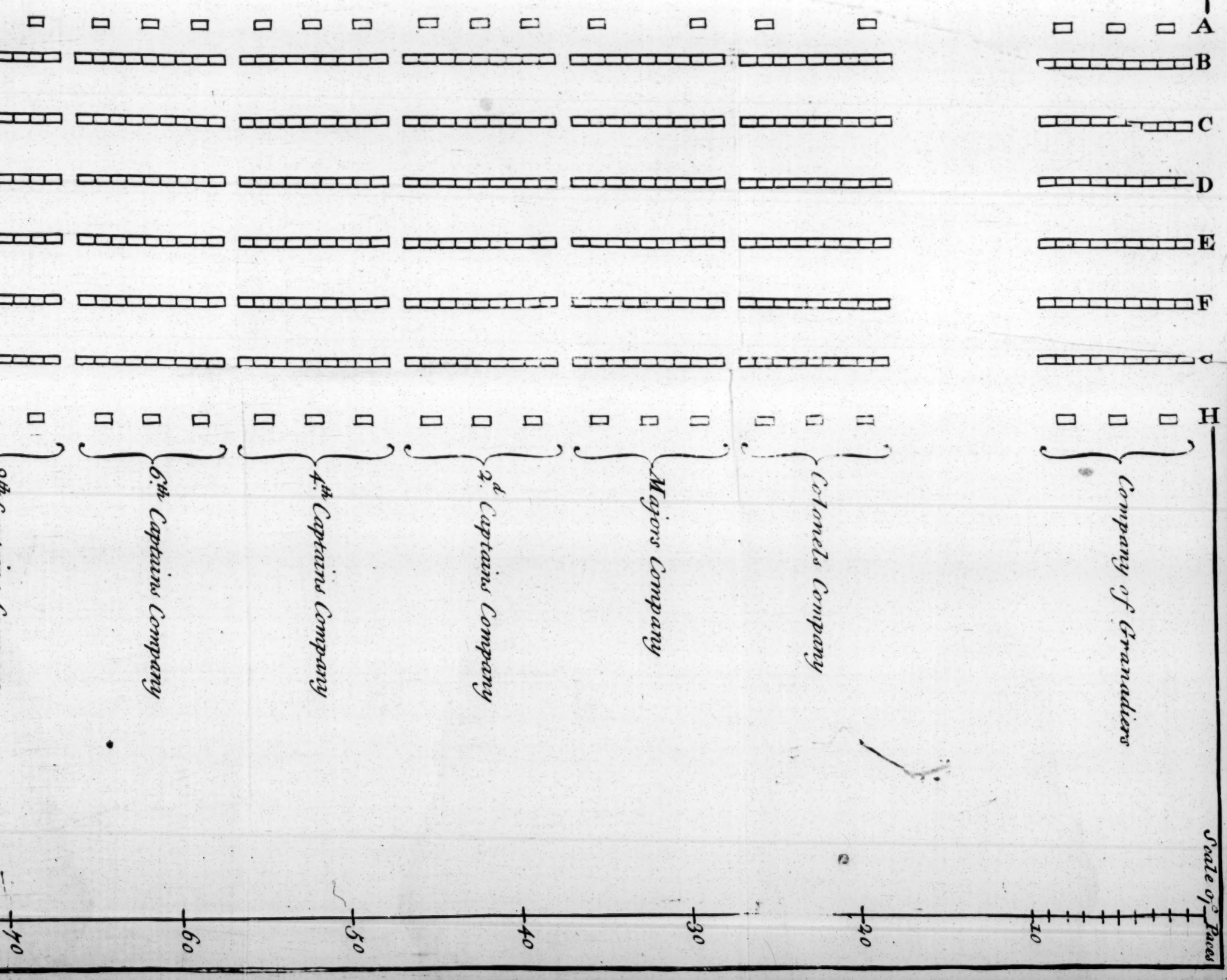
A. *The Rank of Officers.*
B. *Front Rank of the Regiment.*
C. *Second Rank.*
D. *Third Rank.*
E. *Fourth Rank.*
F. *Fifth Rank.*
G. *Sixth Rank or the Rear.*
H. *Rank of Serjeants.*

The Front of the



anies, with an Interval of 3 Foot between each, that they may be the easier Distinguished.
ir own Officers in their Front and their Serjeants in their Rear; with their Files Close and 5 Ranks
mpanies are supposed to consist of 51 Private Men and 3 Corporals, in Rank and File, each.

f the Regiment.



when they march ſix deep, they are then to fall in between the third and fourth. In this Order the Companies are to march whenever they march with ſhoulder'd Arms, except at Reviews; the Difference of which ſhall be ſhewn in its proper Place.

When the Companies come to the Parade, or Place where they are to form into Battalion, they are to draw up according to Seniority, thus: The Colonel's Company on the Right, the Lieutenant-Colonel's on the Left, the Major's on the Left of the Colonel's, the eldeſt Captain's on the Right of the Lieutenant-Colonel's, and ſo on from Right to Left, 'till the youngeſt comes in the Center. See the annexed Plan.

As the Companies draw up, the Subalterns are to move up to the Front, the Lieutenants placing themſelves on the Right of their Captains, and the Enſigns on their Left, towards the Flanks of their Companies. The Serjeants are to form themſelves in the Rear of the Rear-rank, and the Drummers are to march about thirty Paces in the Front, where the Drum-major is to form them into a rank entire, oppoſite to the Center, and facing the Battalion; in which Poſition the whole are to remain, 'till the Major, or Officer who is to exerciſe the Battalion, orders the Officers to their Poſts. But before I proceed to this Part of the Ceremony, I ſhall lay down ſome Rules, whereby that tedious, and, in my Opinion, Unſoldier-like Method of compleating the Files of the whole Battalion to the Right and Left may be avoided.

Let it be a ſtanding Rule for the Companies to leave an Interval of a Pace between them, when they draw up in Battalion, and to march in with their Files complete, ordering their odd Men, if they have any, to fall in the Rear of the Rear-rank, where the Adjutant, or the Serjeant-major, ſhould immediately join them together, form them into Files, and draw them up in the Intervals between the Companies, which they may do in an Inſtant, by beginning on the Right, and joining thoſe of two or three Companies, or as many as will make a File, and then placing them in the firſt Interval; and ſo on till they are all form'd.

As the Companies draw up, the Captains, or Officers who command them, ſhould immediately face their Men, and order them to cover their File-leaders, and ſee that they do it; after which, they are to face to their proper Front.

If this Method be duly obſerv'd (which, from its being ſo eaſy and plain, can admit of no Difficulty) it will effectually anſwer the End propos'd, that of ſaving both the Trouble and Time, which the other will of courſe take up; a Fault which ought to be avoided, that the Soldiers may not be kept too long under Arms, before they proceed to the Exerciſe, in order to have it well perform'd. Beſides, the old Method of completing the Files of the whole Battalion to the Right and Left, has, in my Opinion, more the Air of Militia than Soldiers.

The Intervals which remain between the Companies, after the odd Men are form'd, may be cloſed by facing the Companies to the Right and Left inwards, or by ordering the Flank Men of thoſe Companies where the Intervals happen, to divide the Ground between them, which is by much the eaſieſt and ſhorteſt Way.

The Company of Granadiers is always to draw up on the Right of the Colonel's, and to leave an Interval between them equal to the Front of the Company, that when the Files are open'd, they may join the Battalion.

When the Battalion draws up ſix deep, the Granadiers are to do the ſame; and when the Battalion is drawn up four deep, for the puniſhing of the Soldiers, by making them run the Gauntlet, the Granadiers are to do ſo too; but if the Battalion does it on Account of its being weak, then the Granadiers generally draw up three deep.

ARTICLE II.

As ſoon as the odd Men are form'd, and the Intervals clos'd, the Major is to order the Officers to take their Poſts in Battalion; which is done by Seniority of Commiſſion, thus: The eldeſt Captain is to place himſelf on the Right of the Battalion, the ſecond Captain on the Left, the third Captain on the Left of the eldeſt, the fourth on the Right of the ſecond Captain, and ſo on 'till the youngeſt Enſign comes in the Center.

The Captains and Subalterns are to dreſs in the ſame Line, about two good Paces before the Front Rank of Men, and to divide the Ground equally between them, ſo as to cover the Front of the Battalion.

There muſt be a Serjeant placed on the Right and Left Flank of each Rank, who are to dreſs them as often as there is an Occaſion; the reſt of the Serjeants are to range them-

themſelves in the Rear of the Battalion, about four Paces from the Rear-rank of Men.

When a good many Serjeants are abſent, or wanting, they ſhould place but three on the right Wing, and three on the left, giving to each Serjeant an entire Rank to dreſs. Thus, to thoſe on the Right, the firſt, third, and fifth Ranks; and to thoſe on the Left, the ſecond, fourth, and ſixth Ranks.

The Drummers are to be divided into three Diviſions, the Drum-major with the firſt Diviſion are to poſt themſelves on the right of the Colonel's Company, the ſecond Diviſion on the Left of the Lieutenant-Colonel's, and both to dreſs in a Line with the Front-rank of Men. The third Diviſion of Drummers and the Hautboys are to poſt themſelves in the Rear of the Enſigns in the Center.

The Officers of Granadiers, with the Serjeants and Drummers, remain with their own Company, and the Officers and Serjeants dreſs with thoſe of the Battalion. The Captain poſts himſelf in the Center, the eldeſt Lieutenant on the Right, and the ſecond Lieutenant on the Left of the Company. The Drummers place themſelves on the Right, and in a Line with the Front-rank of Granadiers.

When the Battalion is drawn up, the Colonel's Poſt is in the Center, and about four Paces before the Enſigns with the Colours. The Lieutenant-Colonel's Poſt is a little to the Left of the Colonel's, and about three Paces from the Rank of Officers, that the Colonel may be a Pace advanced before him.

When there is no General, or ſuperior Officer preſent to ſee the Exerciſe perform'd, the Colonel does not take his Poſt at the Head of the Battalion, but remains in the Front, without taking his Half-pike in his Hand, to give the Major the neceſſary Orders about the Exerciſe, *&c.* In this caſe the Lieutenant Colonel is to poſt himſelf at the Head of the Battalion with his Half-pike in his hand; but if the Colonel is abſent, he then remains in the Front in the ſame manner as before mentioned for the Colonel, the ſole Command then devolving on the Lieutenant-Colonel.

Whenever the Regiment is drawn out, no Officer muſt be abſent without Leave from the commanding Officer; but each ſtand at the Poſt aſſign'd him in the Rules of Exerciſe, with his Arms in his Hand, expecting ſuch Orders as he may receive, either to exerciſe the whole Battalion, a part of it, or a ſingle Company, as the commanding Officer

ſhall direct; which he is always to perform with his Half-pike or Partiſan in his Hand.

ARTICLE III.

The Officers having taken their Poſts in the Front of the Battalion, and the Ranks and Files being dreſſed, the Colours are then to be ſent for; which is uſually perform'd in the following Manner.

The Major is to order one of the Granadier Drummers to beat the Drummers Call; upon which the Enſigns who are to carry the Colours, and the Drum-major with one Half or two Thirds of the Drummers, are to repair to the Head of the Company of Granadiers, where the Drummers are to be form'd into Ranks in the Rear of the Enſigns, facing outwards. A Lieutenant, 2 Serjeants, and 24 Granadiers are to march with the Enſigns, and guard the Colours to the Regiment, who are generally taken from the Left of the Company, and march with their Firelocks reſted on their Left Arms, without fixing their Bayonets 'till they receive the Colours. The Words of Command to the Granadiers (and which are given by the Lieutenant) are as follow:

I. Poize your Firelocks - - - - - - - - 2 } Number of
II. Reſt your Firelocks on your Left Arms-1 } Motions.

When this is done, the Lieutenant places himſelf two Paces before the Enſigns, and marches to the Colonel's Quarters, or Place where the Colours are lodg'd; the Drummers, with the Drum-major at their Head, marching in the Rear of the Enſigns, beat the Troop, and the Granadiers, four in a Rank, march immediately after the Drummers, one Serjeant marches on the right Flank of the Guard, and the other in the Rear of the Rear-rank, with their Halbards advanced.

Note, In ſending for the Colours, the Compliment then paid by the Battalion, is that of ſhoulder'd Arms; but when the Colours are brought to the Regiment, they are receiv'd with reſted Arms, and the Drummers, who remain, beat a March, which is the Reaſon that one Third of the Drummers, at leaſt, remain with the Battalion. The ſame Compliment is paid to the Colours when they are ſent from the Battalion;

Battalion; but when the Enſigns go for the Colours, and return without them, the Battalion is only to be ſhoulder'd.

As ſoon as the Lieutenant comes to the Place where the Colours are lodged, he is to draw out his Detachment three deep, by ordering the Rear-half-files to draw up on the Left of the Front-half-files, and then order the Granadiers to fix their Bayonets, as follows.

I. Poize your Firelocks	2	Number of Motions.
II. Reſt on your Arms	3	
III. Draw your Bayonets	2	
IV. Fix your Bayonets	4	
V. Recover your Arms	2	
VI. Reſt your Firelocks on your Left Arms	1	

After theſe Motions are perform'd, the Enſigns are to take the Colours, and the Lieutenant marches back to the Battalion in the ſame Order that he came from it, the Enſigns carrying the Colours advanced, and letting them fly.

As ſoon as the Lieutenant comes to the Battalion, he muſt draw up his Detachment on the right or left Flank, (according to which Flank he comes to firſt) and halt his Men; but the Enſigns with the Colours, followed by the Drummers, are to move on 'till they advance a little before the Officers of the Battalion, and then wheel to the Right or Left inward, according to the Flank they are on, and march along the Front of the Officers 'till they come to their Poſts in the Center, which they are to fall into, the Enſigns with the Colonel's Colours taking the Right, the Enſign with the Lieutenant-Colonel's Colours the Left, and the Major's (if they have three Colours) the Center. When the Enſigns fall into their Poſts, the Drum-major is to wheel the Drummers to the Front, and march them about ten Paces forward, then halt; and after he has order'd them to ceaſe Beating, he is to ſend them to their reſpective Poſts.

When the Enſigns with the Colours and the Drummers have wheel'd inwards, in order to march to the Center, the Lieutenant is to order the Granadiers to face to the Right, (if they are drawn up on the Left of the Battalion) and march along the Ranks to their former Ground, the Lieutenant with the Front-rank of Granadiers marching between the Officers and the Front-rank of the Battalion; but if they are drawn up on the right of the Granadier Company, he

he is then to face his Detachment to the Left, and march it along the Front of the Granadiers only, and as ſoon as they come on their former Ground, he is to order them to halt, and immediately proceed to unfix the Bayonets, by the following words of Command.

I. Poize your Firelocks - - -	1	Number of Motions.
II. Reſt on your Arms - - - -	3	
III. Unfix your Bayonets - -	2	
IV. Return your Bayonets -	4	
V. Poize your Firelocks - -	3	
VI. Shoulder your Firelocks -	3	

After this, the Major is to order the Battalion to ſhoulder their Arms.

When the Parade is at any conſiderable Diſtance from the Place where the Colours are lodged, it is uſual for the Field-Officers Companies to aſſemble there, and carry them with them to the Place of Exerciſe, that no Time may be loſt in the ſending for them. In this caſe, the Captain-Lieutenant marches at the Head of the firſt Diviſion, or Front-half-files, and the Enſign who carries the Colonel's Colours, at the Head of the ſecond Diviſion, or Rear-half-files; the Soldiers having their Arms ſhoulder'd, and the Drummers, (who fall in between the firſt and ſecond Ranks of the firſt Diviſion) beating a March. The Lieutenant-Colonel's and Major's Companies, if there are three Colours, are to obſerve the ſame method in carrying their Colours with them; and if the proper Officers belonging to thoſe Companies are abſent, others muſt be order'd to them for that Purpoſe.

When the Colours are brought in this Manner, they are to remain with the Companies 'till the Officers are order'd to take their Poſts at the Head of the Battalion, at which Word of Command, the Enſigns are to march with them to the Center.

As ſoon as the Colours are to be ſent back, (or lodged, according to the Military Phraſe) the Drummers Call is to be beat at the Head of the Granadiers; on which the Enſigns with the Colours, and the Drum-major, with the ſame number of Drummers, are to repair thither immediately, and draw up as before. The Lieutenant of Granadiers is then to order the ſame Detachment, or an equal number of Granadiers to fix their Bayonets, and reſt them on their Left Arms: And as ſoon as the Major has order'd the Battalion to

to preſent their Arms, he is to march back the Colours to the Place where they are to be lodg'd, the Drummers beating the Troop as before. The Enſigns are to carry the Colours back in the ſame manner they brought them, that is, advanced and flying; and as ſoon as they arrive at the Place and the Detachment is drawn up, they are to furl the Colours and lodge them. When this is done, the Lieutenant is to order the Granadiers to unfix, and return their Bayonets, and reſt their Firelocks on their left Arms; after which he is to march back in the ſame Manner he carried the Colours to the Battalion, unleſs he is order'd to diſmiſs his Men as ſoon as the Colours are lodg'd; in which caſe, when the Bayonets are return'd, inſtead of Poizing, he is to order them to reſt their Firelocks, then club, and diſmiſs them with the Ruff of a Drum.

As ſoon as the Colours are brought to the Battalion, the ſeveral Diviſions are to be told off, and the Officers appointed to them, that they may know on which they are to march or wheel. After which each Diviſion is to be ſubdivided into two equal Parts, that on the Right of each Diviſion being called Right-half-ranks, and that on the Left of each, Left-half-ranks, of which the Men are to be thoroughly appriz'd, leſt a Miſtake ſhould happen in the Doubling to the Right or Left in the Evolutions.

ARTICLE IV.

After the Diviſions are told off, the Major is to proceed to the Opening of Files by the following Words of Command.

To the Left open your Files.

At this, both the Officers and Soldiers face nimbly to the Left on their right Heels, with this Exception, that the File on the right of the Granadiers, with the Lieutenant on the right of that Company, and the File on the right of the Battalion, and the eldeſt Captain ſtand ſtill.

The Serjeants on the right Flank of the Battalion, and the firſt Diviſion of Drummers, face at the ſame time to the Right on their left Heels, in which Poſition the whole are to remain 'till the next Word of Command. But before we proceed, it will be neceſſary to give Directions for the proper Diſtances of Ranks and Files, according to the ſeveral Occaſions, that what is now treating of may be clearly underſtood by the Reader.

The

The ſeveral Diſtances of Ranks.

In the Drawing up of a Battalion for Exerciſe, or a Review, the Ranks are to be at four ordinary Paces Diſtance from one another.

When they are to fire, either by Ranks, Platoons, the whole Battalion, or in the Square, the Ranks are to be moved up to half Diſtance, which is two Paces.

In all Wheelings, either by Diviſion or the whole Battalion, the Ranks are to be cloſed forward to cloſe Order, which is to one Pace Diſtance.

Diſtances of Files.

When a Regiment is to exerciſe or to be reviewed, the Files are to be opened, the Diſtance of which between one another, is one Pace, or the Length of an out-ſtretch'd Arm; but that this may appear more plain, as ſoon as the Files are open'd, and the Men faced to their proper Front, order thoſe of the Front-rank to ſtretch out their right Arms to the Right, and if they can touch the left Shoulders of their Right-hand Men, they have then their true Diſtance; the doing of which now and then, will give them a juſt Notion of the proper Diſtance. As the Men of the Rear-ranks are to be govern'd by, and dreſs with thoſe in the Front, who are called their File-leaders, there is no Occaſion for their doing it.

When they are to fire, the Files are to be at half a Pace Diſtance, that the Men may have room to handle their Arms in firing and loading; which Diſtance is the half of an out-ſtretch'd Arm; that is, when the Hand is ſet bent againſt the Side, the Elbow is to touch the Right-hand Man.

In Marching or Wheeling, the Files muſt be ſo cloſe, that the Men almoſt touch one another with their Shoulders. Theſe being all the Diſtances of Ranks and Files which is neceſſary to be known for the performing of every Part of the Service now practis'd, I ſhall proceed to the ſecond Word of Command in the Opening of Files.

MARCH.

As ſoon as this is given, the Diviſion of Drummers on the Left lift up their right Feet together, and march very ſlow (without opening their Diſtance from one another)

ther) in a direct Line to the Left. The Serjeants on the left Flank of the Battalion, carrying their Halbards with both Hands before them, the Spears upwards, move at the ſame Time to the Left, beginning alſo with the right Feet; and as ſoon as they have open'd to a proper Diſtance (which is a Pace) from the left-hand File of the Battalion, that File is then to move; and ſo one File after another, till the whole are open'd, taking care to keep their proper Diſtance as already directed.

The left-hand File of the Company of Granadiers move at the ſame time with that on the Left of the Battalion, each File of the ſaid Company doing the ſame when that before it has got its Diſtance; and when the File on the Left of the Granadiers comes within a large Pace of the File on the Right of the Battalion, it is to ſtand, on which, all the Granadiers are to do the ſame, and to remain in that Poſition 'till the whole Battalion have open'd. If the Interval between the Granadiers and the Battalion was only equal to the Front of the Company when the Files were cloſed, that Space will be entirely taken up when open'd, without leaving any other Interval between them than what ſhould be, which is a Pace.

The Drum-major with the firſt Diviſion of Drummers, and the Serjeants on the Right Flank of the Battalion, who faced to the Right, are to move at the ſame time with the left-hand File of Granadiers, beginning with their left Feet, and march very ſlow to the Right of the Company of Granadiers, which when they have paſs'd, they are to ſtand, 'till the Word *Halt* is given to the Whole. The Serjeants are to carry their Halbards before them, as thoſe on the Left are directed.

In opening of Files, each File muſt move at once, all the Men in it beginning with the ſame Feet, and taking them up and ſetting them down together. For this End, the Men in the Front-rank, who are called the File-leaders, muſt take great Care not to begin, 'till thoſe before them are at a proper Diſtance, the other five Ranks being to obſerve their Motions, and keep an equal Pace with them, that the Whole may move like one Man. For the doing of this in exact Time, and with the more Eaſe, the following Rules, if obſerv'd, will make it appear both regular and beautiful; as alſo give to each File its proper Diſtance.

Rules

Rules for the Opening of Files.

In the Opening and Closing of Files, or Marching all together to the Right or Left to change their Ground, they should begin with the Feet next the Front.

When they face to the right, the Men should do it on their left Heels; and when they face to the Left, they should do it on their right Heels. My Reason for it is as follows:

By their falling back, their Feet to the Front will be in an exact Line; whereas if they moved up, as was practis'd formerly, and, I believe, still used, it will not be so, occasion'd by one Man stepping further out than another, from their not being all of an equal Height, and consequently make the Front appear uneven. Besides, it is a standing Rule, that the Men are to begin to march with the Feet they faced on; so that by moving up, they must begin with the Feet next the Rear, which will not, in my opinion, appear so graceful as beginning with those next the Front. But as these little Niceties are not very essential, it may be done either way, as the commanding Officer shall direct, till one Method is prescrib'd to the whole; which would be very proper, and not leave every one to act according to their own crude Notions or Caprice.

As soon as the Men of the first File on the Left of the Battalion lift up their right Feet a second time, the Men of the second File are to lift up their right Feet; and when those of the second File lift up their right Feet a second Time, the Men on the third File are to begin with their right Feet. All the other Files are to follow the same Directions 'till the whole have open'd.

In the doing of this, they are to take but short Steps, and to move on very slow, but with an equal Pace, lifting up and setting down of their right and left Feet with one another, thus: All who are in Motion, must lift up and set down their right Feet together, and do the same with their left.

The bringing of a Battalion to such Exactness, as to perform it in due time, will, I am afraid, appear so difficult, that it will deter a great many from attempting it; but let those who are of this opinion, only try, and they will find it much easier in the Execution than they imagined.

The common Objection against it, is, that it looks too much like Dancing, and makes the Men appear with too stiff an Air. I own it may have this Effect in the Beginning; but

but a little Time and Practice will bring the Men to perform it in ſo eaſy and genteel a Manner, that the Objection will vaniſh. But as the Evolutions are perform'd in exact Time, why is not the ſame Objection rais'd againſt them; becauſe we are accuſtom'd to the one and not to the other. If this is the Caſe, then Time will reconcile this alſo. Beſides I think it juſt as reaſonable, that the firſt Movements of a Battalion, which is the opening of Files, ſhould be perform'd with as much Regularity and Exactneſs as thoſe which come laſt. A great many other Reaſons may be brought to ſupport this Argument, were there an Occaſion for it, ſuch as the bringing of the Men to walk with a bolder Air, giving them a freer Uſe of their Limbs, and a Notion of Time; which, in my Opinion, are ſufficient to ſilence thoſe who oppoſe it; and therefore I ſhall not trouble the Reader any further, but proceed to the Point in Hand.

The Men of the five Rear-ranks muſt keep in a ſtraight Line with their File-leaders, and neither cloſe nor open their Ranks in Marching; and all carry their Arms high and firm on their Shoulders, looking up and keeping their Bodies ſtraight.

The Officers are to carry their Half-pikes or Partiſans downwards, and the Enſigns to advance the Colours.

No Officer is to move 'till the File oppoſite to him does; and when the Men of that File ſtep forward with their right Feet, he is to do the ſame with his, keeping an equal Pace and in a direct Line with them; by the Obſervance of which Rule, the Officers will, when they Halt, have their proper Diſtance between them; provided it was equally divided before the Files were open'd, which will ſave them the Trouble of moving afterwards.

The Serjeants in the Rear muſt obſerve the ſame Rule; only they muſt carry their Halbards as directed for thoſe on the Flanks.

As ſoon as the ſecond File on the Right of the Battalion, which is the laſt to open, ſteps forward, the Major is to proceed to the following Word of Command.

HALT.

On the giving of this Word of Command, the Officers and Soldiers are to face briskly to the Right on their right Heels, thoſe Feet being then foremoſt, if the foregoing Rules are duly obſerved; but leſt they ſhould not,

a Stroke

a Stroke of a Drum, or any other Signal, may be given when they are to Stand, that they may have Time to place their right Feet, either in a Line with their left, or a little before them; and after a Pauſe of half a Minute, the Major is to give the Word *Halt*; by which Means, the whole will perform it like one Man. As ſoon as they are faced, they are to dreſs the Ranks and Files.

ARTICLE V.

When the Ranks and Files are dreſs'd, the Officers are to take their Poſt of Exerciſe in the Rear of the Battalion. If by Beat of Drum, it is to be perform'd in the following Manner.

Firſt, the Major is to direct the Orderly Drummer to beat a Ruff (one being to attend for that Purpoſe) to give the Officers Notice. After that a Flam, or double Stroke; at which the Lieutenant Colonel (unleſs he commands the Regiment in the Abſence of the Colonel) and the reſt of Officers, face to the Right about on their left Heels. At the ſecond Flam, they are to advance their Half-pikes, and the Serjeants on the Flanks their Halbards. At the third Flam, the Officers, Serjeants on the Flanks, the three Diviſions of Drummers, and the Hautboys, are all to march to their Poſts, beginning with their left Feet.

The Officers are to march thro' the Battalion, and when they have got eight Paces beyond the Serjeants in the Rear, they are to ſtand; but the Lieutenant Colonel is to march four Paces beyond the Officers and then ſtand.

The Serjeants on the Flanks are to march in a direct Line to the Front, and as ſoon as the two Serjeants who were placed on the Flanks of the Front-rank have marched about forty Paces they are to ſtand, on which the other Serjeants are to do the ſame, taking care to divide the Ground on the Flanks equally amongſt them.

The Drummers are to march and form themſelves in a Rank entire behind the Major, on the Right of whom the Hautboys are to place themſelves.

When the Major finds that the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers, and Hautboys have got to their Poſts of Exerciſe, he is to order another Flam to be beat; at which the Officers, Drummers, and Hautboys face to the Left-about on their left Heels. The Serjeants on the right Flank are to face to the Left on their left Heels, and the

Serjeants

Serjeants on the left Flank are to face to the Right on their right Heels. As ſoon as they have faced, the Officers are to plant their Half-pikes, the Enſigns their Colours, and the Serjeants their Halbards on their Right; in which Poſition they are to remain, with their Arms in their Hands, 'till they are order'd to their former Poſt after the Exerciſe is over. The Drummers are to have their Drums always brac'd and ſlung during the Time the Battalion is under Arms, and to remain at the ſeveral Poſts aſſign'd them.

As ſoon as the Exerciſe is over, the Officers, Serjeants Drummers, and Hautboys, are to be ordered to their former Poſts, in the following Manner.

Firſt a Ruff of a Drum to warn them; then a Flam, at which the Officers are to advance their Half-pikes, the Enſigns their Colours, and the Serjeants their Halbards; after which the Serjeants on the right Flank are to face to the Left on their left Heels, and the Serjeants on the Left are to face to the Right on their right Heels. At the ſecond Flam, the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers, and Hautboys march to their former Poſts: and as ſoon as they have all got to their Ground, the Major orders the Drum to beat a third Flam; at which, the Officers plant their Half-pikes, and the Enſigns their Colours, and the Serjeants, Drummers, and Hautboys face to the Left-about on their right Heels, after which the Serjeants plant their Halbards.

The Officers are to perform every Part of the foregoing Ceremonies together, both in Advancing their Half-pikes and Planting them, Facing, Marching, and Halting, for the doing of which, they are to take every Motion from the Officer on the Right.

When the Officers are to take their Poſts of Exerciſe by Word of Command, it is to be done as follows.

I. *Officers take your Poſts in the Rear of the Battalion.*

At this Word of Command, they are to perform what is directed by the firſt Flam.

II. *March.* When this is deliver'd, they are to do what is order'd to be perform'd by the ſecond and third Flams, and to remain in that Poſition 'till the following Word of Command is given to the Battalion.

Take Care. At which they are to face and plant their Arms as is directed by the fourth Flam.

In taking their Poſts by Word of Command when the Exerciſe is over, it is to be done as follows.

I. *Officers*

I. *Officers, take your Poſts in the Front of the Battalion.*

At this they are only to ſtand ready, as is directed by the Ruff.

II. *March.* When this Word is given, they are to perform all the Ceremonies which are directed to be done by the firſt, ſecond, and third Flams.

ARTICLE VI.

As ſoon as the Officers, &c. are returned to their Poſts, the Files are to be cloſed by the following Words of Command.

I. *To the Right cloſe your Files.*

The eldeſt Captain, and the Right-hand File of the Battalion, and the eldeſt Lieutenant, and the Right-hand File of the Company of Granadiers ſtand, as before directed in Opening. All the reſt face at once to the Right on their left Heels; except the ſix Serjeants, and the firſt Diviſion of Drummers (on the Right of the Granadiers) who face to the Left on their right Heels. As ſoon as they are faced, the Enſigns advance the Colours, and the Serjeants their Halbards, then the Major proceeds.

II. *March.* At this Command, they all lift up the Feet they faced on together, and march ſlow 'till the Files are cloſed to their former Diſtance, which is to an half Pace.

The Serjeants and the firſt Diviſion of Drummers are to march along the Ranks of the Granadiers, 'till they come to the right Flank of the Battalion, and then ſtand, facing to the Left.

The Officers march with their Arms downwards, the Enſigns with their Colours, and the Serjeants with their Halbards advanced; and all obſerve the ſame Rule in Cloſing as in Opening, by keeping an equal Pace, and directly in a Line with the File next them, and ſtanding when they do; by obſerving of which they will have no Occaſion to divide their Ground when they halt.

The Men are to follow the Directions, in lifting up and ſetting down of the ſame Feet together; and when they cloſe to their proper Diſtance, they are to ſtand, placing the Feet they faced on a little before the other; after which the Major gives the following Word of Command.

III. *Halt*

III. *Halt.* At this, all face to their proper Front on the ſame Feet they juſt before faced on, and immediately ſtraiten their Ranks and Files.

If the Battalion is to be diſmiſs'd, as ſoon as the Files are cloſed, the Colours are to be lodg'd in the Manner already directed; after which, the Major orders the Officers, Serjeants and Drummers to their Companies, and then orders the whole to club, by theſe Words,

I. *Reſt your Firelocks.* II. *Club your Firelocks.*

As ſoon as theſe Motions are perform'd, the Companies may be order'd to march off from the Right or Left to their Barracks, or Place where they are to be diſmiſſed.

Whenever the Men march with clubb'd Arms, the Officers are to advance their Half-pikes, and the Serjeants their Halbards, the Captain and Enſign are to march in the Front, (but the Enſign a little behind the Captain, and the Lieutenant in the Rear of the Company or Detachment: The Drummers are to march between the Enſign and the Front Rank of Men, beating the Troop.

All the Officers of Granadiers march in the Front of the Company, either to or from the Parade, or with ſhoulder'd or clubb'd Arms, the Captain being one Pace advanced before his Lieutenants. Two Serjeants march on the Flanks, and one in the Rear of the Rear-rank, (who is generally the eldeſt:) and when they march with clubb'd Arms, the Serjeants are to advance their Halbards. The Drummers are to march, when they beat the Troop, in the Rear of their Officers, as thoſe of the Battalion; but when they march with ſhoulder'd Arms, they are always to fall in between the firſt and ſecond Ranks of the firſt Diviſion.

When the Regiment draws out, the Major and Adjutant ſhould be always on Horſeback, it being impoſſible for them to perform their Duty on Foot, in the Manner it ought to be. They are likewiſe to exerciſe the Regiment on Horſe-back; but no other Officer is to do it mounted, unleſs ſuch, who in their Abſence, are appointed to do their Duty.

When the commanding Officer orders any of the other Officers to exerciſe the Battalion, or a Part of it, they are to do it on Foot with their Half-pikes or Partiſans in their Hands. This ſhould be frequently done for the Inſtruction of the Officers, that, upon the Abſence of the Major and Adjutant, they may have a number ſufficiently qualified to act in thoſe Poſts.

Whoever exerciſes a Battalion, or any Number of Men, ſhould place himſelf oppoſite to the Center, and at ſuch a Diſtance that he may take in the whole at one View; but if that Diſtance is too far off for his Voice, he may place himſelf nearer, tho' ſtill oppoſite to the Center.

As the performing of the Exerciſe well, depends a great deal on the giving of the Words of Command; thoſe who exerciſe, ſhould deliver the Words clear and diſtinct, that the Men may not miſtake one Command for another.

Whoever would attain to any Perfection in it, muſt ſtudy the Compaſs of his Voice, that he may not overſtrain it, leſt it cauſe an immediate Hoarſeneſs; as alſo the laying of the Emphaſis in the right Place, and where to make the proper Stops, or Pauſes, when the Command is too long to be pronounced at one Breath. Beſides, Stops, or Pauſes, when judiciouſly made, are of great Service to the Men, in giving them time to think on the Word of Command before it is fully deliver'd; and conſequently, preparing them for the performing of it with Life, Vigour, and Exactneſs. But as the coming to this Knowledge will prove tedious to young Officers, without ſome further Aſſiſtance than that of mentioning it, I have placed Comma's where the Stops or Pauſes ſhould be made; which, if obſerv'd, will aid and aſſiſt an indifferent Voice, and give Beauty and Force to a good one; and enable every one to give the Words of Command with more Eaſe to themſelves, and Clearneſs to the Men. The reſt muſt depend on Practice, Precept alone not being ſufficient to arrive at Perfection in any Art.

Directions for the Poſition of a Soldier under Arms.

I. A Soldier having his Firelock ſhoulder'd, muſt ſtand with a ſtraight Body, holding up his Head without moving, and always looking towards the commanding Officer, or he who exerciſes the Battalion; nor to uſe any Motion but what the word of Command when given, directs.

II. His Feet are to be at one Step Diſtance, the Heels in a ſtrait Line, and the Toes turn'd a little outward.

III. The Firelock muſt lie on the left Shoulder, and the left Hand on the Butt-end, the Thumb being placed in the Hollow thereof, preſſing the Guard hard againſt the Breſt, that the Muzzle may be mounted; the Lock muſt be turn'd a little outward, till the under Part of the Butt-end is brought oppoſite to the Middle of the Body, that the Firelock may be more eaſily born. IV.

IV. The left Elbow muſt be turn'd a little outward from the Body, but without any Conſtraint to the Arm; and the right Arm to hang in an eaſy Poſture down the right Side, with the Palm of the Hand turn'd to the Thigh.

CHAP. II.

The Manual Exerciſe of the Foot; with an Explanation.

Take Care.

ON the giving of this Command, there muſt be a profound Silence obſerv'd thro' the whole Battalion; nor muſt any of the Soldiers make any Motion with their Heads, Bodies, Hands, or Feet, but ſuch as are requir'd for the Performing of the following Words of Command.

I. *Join your Right Hands to your Firelocks.* 1 Motion.

The Firelock being carried in the forementioned Poſition upon the left Shoulder, you muſt turn the Lock upward with your left Hand, and at the ſame time taking hold with your right behind the Cock, placing the Thumb on the lower Part of the Stock, and the Fingers on the upper, keeping both Elbows ſquare, that is, in an equal Line, but not conſtrain'd; as is frequently done by raiſing them above the Level. The Muzzle of the Firelock muſt be kept at the ſame Height as it was when ſhoulder'd.

Note, The firſt Motion of every Word of Command is to be perform'd immediately after it is given; but before you proceed to any of the other Motions, you muſt tell, *One*, *Two*, pretty ſlow, by making a Stop between the Words; and on the pronouncing of the Word *Two*, the Motion is to be perform'd.

II. *Poize your Firelocks.* 1 Motion.

At this Word of Command, with both Hands and a quick Motion bring up the Firelock from your Shoulder, thruſting it from you at the ſame time with your right Hand (and letting your left fall down your left Side) turning the Lock outward, the Thumb inward, directly oppoſite to your Face, and your Feet in the ſame Poſition as when ſhoulder'd.

III. *Join your Left Hands to your Firelocks.* 2 Motions.

Turn the Firelock with the Barrel towards you, and at the ſame time ſeize it with the left Hand, juſt over the Lock; ſo that the little Finger may touch it, holding the Firelock with both Hands, and extending your Arms as much as you can without Conſtraint; then tell 1, 2, and with a quick Motion bring the Firelock down to your right Side, the Butt-end as low as the Middle of your Thigh, the Muzzle pointing a little forward, the Stock in the left Hand with the Thumb upward, your right on the Cock, the Fore-finger before the Tricker, and the others behind the Guard. At the ſame time that you bring down the Firelock, you muſt ſtep a little Back with your right Foot, the Toe pointing to the Right, the right Knee ſtiff, and the left a little bending, keeping your Body very ſtrait. The Firelock muſt be held on the right Side at a little Diſtance from the Body, and both the Body and Face muſt preſent themſelves to the Front as much as poſſible without Conſtraint.

IV. *Cock your Firelocks.* 2 Motions.

Bring up the Firelock with both Hands before you, keeping your Thumb on the Cock, and the Fore-finger on the Tricker; and at the ſame time bring up the right Foot, placing the Heel within an Half-foot of the Hollow of the left, and the Toe pointing to the Right. The Firelock muſt be brought up cloſe to the Breaſt, that you may bend the Cock with the more Eaſe at the ſecond Motion; then tell 1, 2, and cock, and at the ſame time thruſt the Firelock briskly from you with both Hands directly before the Center of your Body, keeping the Muzzle upright.

V. *Preſent*

V. *Preſent.* 1 Motion.

In Preſenting, take away your Thumb from the Cock, and move your right Foot a little back, the Toe turn'd a little to the Right, the Body to the Front, and place the Butt-end in the Hollow betwixt your Breaſt and Shoulder, keeping your Fore-finger before the Tricker (but without touching it) and the other three behind the Guard, the Elbows in an equal Line (which is call'd Square) the Head upright, the Body ſtrait, only preſs'd a little forward againſt the Butt-end of the Firelock, the right Knee ſtiff, and the left a little bending: The Muzzle ſhould be a little lower than the But, in order to take Aim at the Center of the Body.

VI. *Fire.*

As ſoon as this Word of Command is given, draw the Tricker briskly with the Fore-finger, which was placed on it before; and tho' the Cock ſhould not go down with that Pull, you are not to attempt it a ſecond time, being only to draw the Tricker but once at Exerciſe.

VII *Recover your Arms.* 1 Motion.

Bring up the Firelock with a quick Motion before you, placing the right Heel near the Hollow of the left Foot; obſerving the ſame Poſition of Hands, Body and Firelock, as is directed by the ſecond Motion in Explanation 4.

VIII. *Half-cock your Firelocks.* 2 Motions.

Bring your Firelock cloſe to your Breaſt, and half-bend the Cock; then tell 1, 2, and thruſt it from you with both Hands to the former Poſition.

IX. *Handle your Primers.* 3 Motions.

Fall back quick with the right Foot behind the Left at a moderate Pace Diſtance, placing the Heels in a Line with one another, the left Toe pointing directly to the Front, and the Right towards the Right of the Rank, the left Knee bending a little to the Front, and keeping the right

Knee ſtiff; at the ſame time bringing down your Firelock with both Hands to a Level, the Muzzle pointing directly to the Front. Tell 1, 2, and quitting the Firelock with the right Hand, take hold of the Primer, placing your Thumb on the Spring-cover. Tell again 1, 2, and bring it within an Hand's Breadth of the Pan.

X. *Prime.* 2 Motions.

Hold the Firelock firm in the left hand, and with the right turn up the Primer and ſhake as much Powder into the Pan as is neceſſary. Then tell 1, 2, and bring it back to its former Place behind the Butt, and remain in that Poſture 'till the following Word of Command.

XI. *Shut your Pans.* 4 Motions.

Let fall the Primer and take hold of the Steel with the right Hand, placing the Thumb on the upper Part, and the two Fore-fingers on the lower. Tell 1, 2, and ſhut the Pan. Tell, 1, 2, and ſeize the Firelock behind the Lock with the right Hand. Then tell 1, 2, and bring your Firelock to a Recover, as in Explanation 7.

XII. *Caſt about to Charge.* 2 Motions.

Turn the Firelock with both Hands, 'till the Barrel comes outwards; then tell 1, 2, and let go the right Hand, bringing down the Firelock with the left, take hold of the Muzzle with the right Hand, ſtepping one Pace forward at the ſame time with the right Foot, tho' not directly before the left, but placed a little to the Right, that the Body may preſent itſelf the better to the Front. This Motion muſt be perform'd in ſuch a Manner, that the bringing down of the Firelock, ſtepping forward with the right Foot, and taking hold of the Muzzle, be done at the ſame Inſtant of Time. Hold the Barrel downward in a full Hand, placing the right Thumb upwards, near the Rammer, keeping the Body ſtrait, and the right Knee a little bent, holding the Firelock, with out-ſtretch'd Arms, directly before your Body, the Muzzle ſtanding to the Front.

XIII. *Handle.*

XIII. *Handle your Cartridges.* 3 Motions.

Bring the Firelock with both Hands ſtrait to your Body; tell 1, 2, and quit the Firelock with your right Hand (holding it with your left about the Middle in a Balance, the Muzzle pointing a little forward) and at the ſame time take hold of one of your Cartridges; then tell 1, 2, and bring it within an Inch of the Side of the Muzzle, the Thumb upwards.

XIV. *Open your Cartridges.* 2 Motions.

Bring the Cartridge to your Mouth and bite off the Top; then tell 1, 2, and bring it again to the former Place near the Muzzle.

XV. *Charge with Cartridge.* 2 Motions.

Bring the Cartridge juſt above the Muzzle, and turning up the Hand and Elbow, fix it in it at the ſame time; then tell 1, 2, and ſlap your two Fingers on the Cartridge briskly to put it quite into the Barrel, and remain ſo with your right Elbow ſquare, 'till the following Command.

XVI. *Draw your Rammers.* 4 Motions.

Seize the Rammer with the Fore-finger and Thumb of the right Hand, holding the Thumb upwards: tell 1, 2, and draw it out as far as you can reach; tell 1, 2, and take hold of it cloſe to the Stock, turning the Thumb downwards, then tell 1, 2, and draw it quite out, holding it between the Thumb and the two Fore-fingers, the Arm ſtretched out and in a Level with the right Shoulder, the ſmall End of the Rammer towards you, and the other in a direct Line to the Front.

XVII. *Shorten your Rammers.* 3 Motions.

Move the little Finger, which ſupports the Rammer, and turn it briskly with the thick End downwards, holding it full in your right Hand, the Thumb upwards, keeping your Arm ſtretch'd out in a Line with your Shoulder. Tell 1, 2, and place the thick End againſt the lower Part of your

Breaſt; then tell 1, 2, and ſlip your Hand down the Rammer within a Hand's-breadth of the Lower End, keeping it in a Line with the Barrel, the Thumb upwards, and the Elbow turn'd a little out from the Body.

XVIII. *Put them in the Barrels.* 6 Motions.

Bring the Rammer a little above the Muzzle, and place the thick End on the Cartridge; tell 1, 2, and thruſt down the Cartridge as far as your Hand will permit; tell 1, 2, raiſe your Hand and ſeize the Rammer about the Middle; tell 1, 2, and thruſt it down till your Hand touches the Muzzle; tell 1, 2, and ſeize it again at the Top; then tell 1, 2, and thruſt it down as far as it will go, holding the Rammer faſt in your Hand, with the Thumb upwards.

XIX. *Ram down your Charge.* 2 Motions.

Draw your Rammer as far out as your Arm unforced will permit: then tell 1, 2, and ram down the Cartridge with a moderate Force, but a quick Motion, holding your Rammer as before.

XX. *Recover your Rammers.* 3 Motions.

Draw the Rammer with a quick Motion, until half of it be out of the Barrel; tell 1, 2, quit the Rammer and ſeize it cloſe to the Muzzle with the Hand turn'd, the Thumb downwards: then tell 1, 2, and draw it quite out of the Barrel, holding it with the thick End towards your Shoulder, obſerving the ſame Poſition as in Explanation 16.

XXI. *Shorten your Rammers.* 3 Motions.

Turn the ſmall End of the Rammer down; tell 1, 2, and place it againſt your Breaſt. Then tell 1, 2, and ſlip your Hand down the Rammer 'till it comes within a Foot of your Breaſt; obſerving farther as in Explanation 17.

XXII. *Return your Rammers.* 6 Motions.

Bring the ſmall End of the Rammer, with a gentle Turn, under the Barrel, and place it in the Stock; tell 1, 2, and thruſt it in as far as your Hand will permit; tell 1, 2, raiſe your

our Hand, and ſeize the Rammer in the Middle; tell 2, and thruſt it down again till your Hand touches the Muzzle; tell 1, 2, raiſe your Hand, and place the Palm of it on the upper End of the Rammer; then tell 1, 2, and thruſt it quite down.

XXIII. *Your Right Hands under the Lock.* 4 Motions.

[Note, *This was formerly perform'd by two Words of Command; but there being only four Motions in both, I have omitted the firſt, and included them under the ſecond Word of Command.*]

Hold the Firelock firm to your Breaſt with your left Hand, and throw off your right, extending it in a Line with your Shoulder; tell 1, 2, and take hold of the Firelock with a full Hand, placing the Thumb even with the Muzzle; tell 1, 2, and thruſt the Firelock from you with both Hands, obſerving the ſame Poſition as is ſhewn in the ſecond Motion in Explanation 12. Then tell 1, 2, and face on your left Heel to the Left, and turning the Muzzle up at the ſame time you are to ſeize the Firelock under the Cock with your right Hand, keeping it from your Body, and your Hands as low as your Arms, without Conſtraint, will permit.

XXIV. *Poiſe your Firelocks.* 1 Motion.

Come briskly to your proper Front, by facing to the Right on your left Heel, and at the ſame time bring the Firelock before you with your right Hand, letting your left fall down by your Side, (extending the right Arm, as in Explanation 2. is directed) ſo that the bringing up of the Firelock, letting the left Hand fall, and the ſetting down of the right Foot muſt be done at the ſame time.

XXV. *Shoulder your Firelocks.* 3 Motions.

Bring the Firelock with the right Hand oppoſite to the left Shoulder, turning the Barrel outwards, and the Guard inward, keeping the Muzzle ſtrait up, and at the ſame time ſeize the Butt-End with your left Hand, placing the Thumb in the Hollow thereof; tell 1, 2, and bring the Firelock with both Hands down upon the left Shoulder, without moving your Head, and keeping both Elbows ſquare. Then tell

1, 2,

1, 2, and quit your right Hand, letting it fall down your right Side, and ſinking your left Elbow at the ſame time. Obſerve the Poſture as deſcrib'd in Explanation 1.

XXVI. *Reſt your Firelocks.* 4 Motions.

Join your right Hand to your Firelock, as in Explanation 1. Tell 1, 2, and come to your Poize, as in Explanation 2. Tell 1, 2, and ſeize your Firelock with the left Hand, as in Explanation 3. Then tell 1, 2, and come down to your Reſt, as is directed by the ſecond Motion of Explanation 3.

XXVII. *Order your Firelocks.* 3 Motions.

Keep the right Hand in the ſame Poſition, and raiſe the Muzzle in a perpendicular Line, with the Left; tell 1, 2, and quit the Firelock with your right Hand, ſinking it with the left, and ſeize it at the ſame time with the right Hand near the Muzzle, the Thumb upwards. Then tell 1, 2, quit your left Hand, and place the Butt-end of the Firelock with your right on the Ground, on the Outſide of your right Foot even with the little Toe. This Motion muſt be done briskly, and in ſuch a Manner, that the right Foot and the Butt-end of the Firelock come to the Ground at the ſame time. The Heels muſt be in a ſtrait Line, the Toes turn'd outward, and that part of the right Arm, from the Hand to the Elbow, muſt run along the outſide of the Firelock, and the left hanging down by the left Side.

XXVIII. *Ground your Firelocks.* 4 Motions.

Turn the Firelock with the right Hand 'till you bring the Barrel towards you, and the Lock pointing to the Rear, and, at the ſame time, making an Half-face to the Right, lift up your right Foot, and place it againſt the flat Side of the Butt, the Toe pointing directly to the Right. Tell 1, 2, and ſtep directly forward a moderate Pace, with the left Foot, ſlipping down the right Hand at the ſame time, to the Middle of the Barrel, lay the Firelock on the Ground in a ſtrait Line to the Front, the Lock upwards; tell 1, 2, raiſe yourſelf up again, bringing back your left Foot to its former place, and keep your Body half-faced to the Right; then tell 1, 2, and turn your right Foot on the Heel, over the Butt-end, bringing your Body at the ſame time to its proper

oper Front, letting your Arms hang down by your Side an eaſy Poſture.

XXIX. *Take up your Firelocks.* 4 Motions.

Turn the right Foot, on the Heel, to the Right, bringing it over the Butt-end of the Firelock and placing it behind it; at the ſame time, turn your right Hand, with an eaſy Motion, to the Right, making an Half-face with your Body to the Right alſo. Tell 1, 2, and ſtep forward with the left Foot a moderate Pace, taking hold of the Firelock with the right Hand about the Middle of the Barrel; tell 1, 2, and raiſe up your ſelf and Firelock, bringing back your left Foot at the ſame time to its former Place. Then tell 1, 2, ſlip your right Hand up as high as the Muzzle, turning the Barrel towards your right Shoulder, and at the ſame time raiſe up your right Foot, and place it on the Inſide of the Butt; obſerving the ſame Poſition as directed by Explanation 27.

Note, That at the laying down and taking up of the Firelocks, the Soldiers are to hold up their Heads, and keep their right Knees as ſtiff as poſſible; and not ſtep too far with their left Feet, that they may with the more Eaſe recover themſelves.

XXX. *Reſt your Firelocks.* 3 Motions.

Turn your right Thumb inwards, and ſlip your right Hand down the Barrel, as far as your Arm, without Conſtraint, will permit. Tell 1, 2, raiſe the Firelock with the right Hand before you, and at the ſame time take hold of it with the left juſt under the right; then tell 1, 2, let go your right Hand and place it under the Cock, ſtepping back with the right Foot at the ſame time. Obſerve the ſame Poſition of Body, Feet, and Firelock, as is directed in Explanation 3.

XXXI. *Club your Firelocks.* 4 Motions.

Keep the Firelock firm in your left Hand, and caſt it about with the right, bringing up the right Foot at the ſame time, and taking hold of the Firelock with your right Hand as low as you can reach, without Conſtraint, placing the Guard oppoſite to your Eyes, the Muzzle and left Thumb down-

downwards, and the Lock from you; tell 1, 2, let go th left Hand, and raiſe the Firelock with your right oppoſit to the left Shoulder, ſeizing it at the ſame time with th left Hand within an Inch of the Muzzle, keeping you Arms ſtretched out, and the Firelock in a perpendicula Line, with the Butt upwards; tell 1, 2, and bring it to you left Shoulder with the Lock upwards, keeping your El bows ſquare. Then tell 1, 2, and quit the Firelock wi your right Hand, bringing it down nimbly to your righ Side, and letting your left Elbow fall down at the ſam time; obſerving the ſame Poſition of Body as is directed ſhoulder'd Arms.

XXXII. *Reſt your Firelocks.* 4 Motions.

Turn the Firelock with your left Hand inwards, takin hold of it at the ſame time with the right, an Handful abov the left, keeping the Elbows ſquare; tell 1, 2, and bring th Firelock with both Hands before the Center of your Bod in a perpendicular Line, raiſing the Butt high, and extend ing your Arms; tell 1, 2, let go your left Hand, ſinkin the Firelock with the Right 'till the Guard comes oppoſit to your Eyes, ſeizing it near the Lock at the ſame tim with the left Hand, the Thumb downwards, and the righ Thumb upwards. Then tell 1, 2, let go the right Hand and turn the Firelock with your left, bringing the Butt-en down, and come to your Reſt, by placing your right Han under the Cock, and at the ſame time ſtepping back wit your right Foot.

XXXIII. *Secure your Firelocks.* 3 Motions.

Come briskly to your Poize. Tell 1, 2, and bring th Firelock oppoſite to your left Shoulder, turning the Barre outward, and keeping the Muzzle directly up, ſeizing it a the ſame time with the left Hand about four Inches abov the Cock. Then tell 1, 2, quit your right Hand, an bring the Firelock with your left under your left Arm placing the Lock a little below the Elbow, the Barrel downward, and the Muzzle within a Foot of the Ground.

XXXIV.

XXXIV. *Shoulder your Firelocks.* 5 Motions.

Bring the Firelock with a quick Motion before you with e left Hand, the Muzzle upward, and the Lock to the ront, and at the ſame time ſeize it under the Cock with the t hand; tell 1, 2, and throw it from you with the t Hand, letting your left go at the ſame time, come to r Poize; tell 1, 2, bring it oppoſite to your left Shoul- , and clap your left Hand on the Butt: tell 1, 2, and ce it on your left Shoulder; then tell 1, 2, and quit your t Hand, as is ſhewn more at large in Explanation 25.

XXXV. *Poize your Firelocks.* 2 Motions.

This is perform'd as in Explanations 1 and 2.

XXXVI. *Reſt on your Arms.* 3 Motions.

Sink the Firelock with your right Hand as low as your m, without Conſtraint, will permit, ſeizing it at the ſame e with your left Hand about the Height of your Chin, left Elbow turn'd out, and the Muzzle upright. Tell 2, quit the Firelock with your right Hand, and ſink it a perpendicular Line near the Ground with your left, izing it at the ſame time with your right Hand near the uzzle. Then tell 1, 2, and bring the Butt to the Ground, pping your left Hand at the ſame time up to your Right, d keep your Elbows ſquare.

XXXVII. *Draw your Bayonets.* 2 Motions.

Seize your Bayonet with your right Hand; then tell 1, 2, nd draw it out briskly, extending your Arm before you the eight of your Shoulder, holding the Point of the Bayonet pwards, and your Thumb on the Hollow of the Shank, hat when you fix it on the Muzzle, the Notch of the Sock- et may come even with the Sight of the Barrel.

XXXVIII. *Fix your Bayonets.* 4 Motions.

Place the Socket of the Bayonet upon the Muzzle of the Firelock; tell 1, 2, and thruſt it down as far as the Notch will permit you; tell 1, 2, turn the Bayonet from you, and

fix

fix it; then tell 1, 2, quit the Handle of the Bayonet, and ſeize the Firelock juſt under it with your right Hand, placing the Palm on the back of the Left.

XXXIX. *Reſt your Bayonets.* 3 Motions.

Raiſe the Firelock with your right Hand, in a perpendicular Line as high as your Forehead, and ſlipping down your left at the ſame time, ſeize the Firelock about the Middle of the Barrel. Tell 1, 2, quit the Firelock with your right Hand, and raiſe it with the left, turning the Barrel towards you, and at the ſame time ſeize it with your right Hand under the Lock, obſerving the ſame Poſition as directed by Explanation 7. Then tell 1, 2, and come to your Reſt, as in Explanation 3.

XL. *Charge your Bayonets Breaſt high.* 3 Motions.

Bring the Firelock ſtraight up before you as in the Recover, with this Difference, that you muſt turn the Lock outward in the bringing of it up; tell 1, 2, hold the Firelock faſt with the left Hand, and clap the Palm of the right on the Butt-end, the Thumb and Barrel pointing to the Right. Then tell 1, 2, fall back with the right Foot a moderate Pace, and in a direct Line behind the left, and at the ſame time come to your Charge, by bringing down the Firelock to a Level, and ſupporting it with your left Arm by raiſing up your Elbow from your Body, the Stock lying between the left Thumb and Fore-finger, and the Butt-end in a full right Hand, the Thumb on the upper Part of it with the Barrel upwards, and the Bayonet pointing directly to the Front about Breaſt high. The right Knee muſt be kept ſtiff, and the Toe pointing directly to the Right; but the left Knee muſt bend a little forward, with that Toe to the Front.

XLI. *Puſh your Bayonets.* 2 Motions.

Puſh your Firelock with both Hands ſtraight forward, without raiſing or ſinking the Point of the Bayonet, bringing the Butt-end before the left Breaſt; then tell 1, 2, and bring it back to its former Place.

XLII.

XLII. *Recover your Arms.* 2 Motions.

Seize the Firelock with your right Hand behind the Cock, then tell 1, 2, and come to your Recover, as in Explanations 4 and 7.

XLIII. *Reſt your Bayonets on your Left Arms.* 2 Motions.

Turn the Lock to the Front, then tell 1, 2, and ſtepping with the right Foot to the Right, let go the left Hand, ſinking the Firelock at the ſame time with the right, take hold of the Cock and Steel with the left, the Cock lying on the middle Finger, and the Steel on the lower Joint of the Thumb, the under Part of the Stock reſting on the Bend or Middle of the left Arm, the Barrel upwards, and the Butt ſloping downwards towards the middle Space between your Thighs, keeping both Hands as low as you can without Conſtraint. The Butt and Muzzle muſt be kept at an equal Diſtance from your Body, the Firelock running in a Triangular Line.

XLIV. *Reſt your Bayonets.* 3 Motions.

Slip your left Hand, without moving the Firelock, and take hold of it above the Lock, placing the Thumb upwards. Tell 1, 2, and bring the Firelock to a Recover, as in Explanations 4 and 7. Then tell 1, 2, and come briskly to your Reſt, as in Explanation 3.

XLV. *Shoulder your Firelocks.* 4 Motions.

Bring your Firelock to your Poize, as in Explanation 24. Tell 1, 2, and clap your left Hand on the Butt. Tell 1, 2, and lay it on your left Shoulder. Then tell 1, 2, and bring down your right Hand, as in Explanation 25 is directed.

XLVI. *Preſent your Arms.* 4 Motions.

Theſe four Motions muſt be perform'd, as is directed in Explanation 26.

XLVII.

XLVII. *Face to the Right.* 3 Motions.

Bring the Firelock to a Recover, as in Explanation 47. Tell 1, 2, and face on the Left Heel to the Right a Quarter of the Circle, keeping the Firelock recover'd. Then tell 1, 2, and come nimbly to your Reſt, ſtepping back a little with the right Foot; as in Explanation 3.

In the performing of the ſecond Motion, which is the Facing, the Soldiers muſt take care not to move their Left Heels from the Ground, but only to turn on them, that they may keep their Ranks and Files ſtraight; as alſo to place their Right Feet in a Line with their Left, keeping their Firelocks in the true Poſition of a Recover, 'till they perform the third Motion, which is the Reſt.

XLVIII, XLIX, L. *Face to the Right.* 3 Motions each.

Each of theſe Words of Command muſt be perform'd at Three Motions, as is above directed in Explanation 47; which compleats the Circle in four Times.

LI. *Face to the Right-about.* 3 Motions.

This is perform'd at three Motions, as in the foregoing Explanation, only they face half the Circle to the Right.

LII. *To the Left about as you were.* 3 Motions.

This is done on the Left Heel, as in the above Explanation 51, only they face half the Circle to the Left, which brings them to their proper Front.

LIII, LIV, LV, LVI. *Face to the Left.* 3 Motions each.

Theſe Facings muſt be perform'd in the ſame Manner as thoſe to the Right, on the Left Heel; with this Difference only that they face to the Left.

LVII. *To the Left about.* 3 Motions.

This is half the Circle to the Left.

LVIII. *To*

LVIII. *To the Right about as you were.* 3 Motions.

You are to face half the Circle to the Right, which brings you to your proper Front, and compleats the Facings.

LIX. *Poize your Firelocks.* 1 Motion.

Come briskly to your Poize, as in Explanation 24 and 25.

LX. *Reſt on your Arms.* 3 Motions.

This muſt be perform'd as in Explanation 36 is directed.

LXI. *Unfix your Bayonets.* 3 Motions.

Slip the Bayonet up with your Right Hand; tell 1, 2, and turn it towards you. Then tell 1, 2, and ſlip it quite off of the Muzzle, thruſting it from you at the ſame time, and holding it in that Poſition, as is ſhewn in the ſecond Motion of Explanation 37.

LXII. *Return your Bayonets.* 4 Motions.

Turn the Point of the Bayonet down, bringing it between the Firelock and your Body, and entering the Scabbard. Tell 1, 2, and thruſt it quite in. Tell 1, 2, and bring your right Hand before you a little to the Right of your Firelock. Then tell 1, 2, and ſeize the Firelock near the Muzzle, as in the 3d Motion of Explanation 36 is directed.

LXIII. *Poize your Firelocks.* 3 Motions.

The firſt Motion is perform'd as directed by the firſt Motion of Explanation 39. Tell 1, 2, and raiſe the Firelock with your left Hand, ſeizing it at the ſame Time under the Lock with the right, keeping the Lock outward. Then tell 1, 2, and come to your Poize, by thruſting it from you with the right Hand, and dropping your left.

LXIV. *Shoulder your Firelocks.* 3 Motions.

This is perform'd as in Explanation 25.

When the Battalion is to make Ready at three Words of Command, it is to be perform'd in the following Manner.

I. *Make Ready.*

At this they are to perform all that is contain'd in the first four Words of Command of the Manual Exercise.

II. *Present.*

At this Command they are only to perform what is directed by the fifth Word of Command of the said Exercise.

III. *Give Fire.*

This is perform'd as in Explanation 6 is directed; after which they are to go on with the Exercise 'till they have prim'd and loaded, and when they come to the shouldering of the Firelock they are to finish, which includes the twenty fifth Word of Command.

The End of the Manual Exercise of the Foot.

CHAP. III.

The Granadier Exercise, with an Explanation, beginning when they are under Arms, viz. the Firelock shoulder'd.

THE Granadiers must observe the same Directions, for the Position under Arms, as are given to those of the Battalion: But they having an Occasion for Match for their Granades, the Match must be placed in the Left Hand, one End of it between the first and second Fingers, and the other between the two last, both Ends standing a Finger's Length above the Back of the Hand.

The

The reſt of the Match is to hang down by the Inſide of the Butt-end of the Firelock. The Match is not to be lighted without expreſs Orders for it.

When the Granadiers ſtand in a Body, with the Men of the Battalion, they muſt then perform the ſame Motions that they do, becauſe they do not then meddle with their Granades; and conſequently, there muſt be no Difference either in the Time or Motions of the Exerciſe of the Granadiers, and thoſe of the Battalion, except in the Uſe of the Slings and Granades: I ſhall therefore refer to the Explanation of the Battalion Exerciſe, except in thoſe Things which peculiarly belong to the Granadiers.

WORDS of COMMAND.

Granadiers, Take Care.

Tho' this is not reckon'd a Word of Command, but only look'd upon as a Warning, to prepare them for the Exerciſe, yet (whenever the Granadiers exerciſe apart from the Battalion) they have annexed two Motions to it, which, it muſt be own'd, have a very good Effect, both on the Spectators and Performers, by preparing the latter to go thro' their Exerciſe with Life, Vigour, and Exactneſs, in which the principal Beauty of Exerciſe conſiſts. The Motions are as follows: Firſt, the Granadiers bring up their right Hands briskly to the Front of their Caps; then tell 1, 2, and bring them down with a Slap on their Pouches, with all the Life imaginable; in which Motions, neither their Heads, Bodies, nor Firelocks are to move.

I. *Join your Right Hands to your Firelocks.*
1 Motion.

This is perform'd as in Explan. 1, of the Foot Exerciſe.

II. *Poize your Firelocks.* 1 Motion.

As in Explanation 2.

III. *Join your Left Hands to your Firelocks.*
2 Motions.

This is done as in Explan. 3; with this Difference, that you muſt take the Sling in your left Hand at the ſame time you ſeize the Firelock, placing it between the Stock and your Hand.

IV. *Cock your Firelocks.* 2 Motions. As in Explanation 4.

V. *Preſent.* 1 Motion. As in Explanation 5.

VI. *Fire.* As in Explanation 6.

VII. *Recover your Arms.* 1 Motion. As in Explanation 7.

VIII. *Handle your Slings.* 2 Motions.

Turn the Firelock with both Hands 'till the Lock comes outwards, without changing any other part of your Poſition. Then tell 1, 2, ſtep out with your right Foot to the Right, placing it a moderate Pace from the Left, and, at the ſame time, quitting the Firelock with the left Hand, extend your Sling to the Left, the Thumb upwards, keeping the Sling in a Line with the Firelock; and remain ſo till the next Command.

IX. *Sling your Firelocks.* 3 Motions.

Bring the Sling with the left Hand oppoſite to the right Shoulder, and the Firelock with the right Hand oppoſite to the left Shoulder, by croſſing of both Hands at the ſame time, bringing the left Hand within the Right, keeping the Muzzle directly up, the Barrel to the Left, and the right Hand juſt under the left Elbow. Tell 1, 2, bend the Firelock back, and bring the Sling over your Head, placing it juſt above your right Shoulder, and the Firelock oppoſite to the Point of the Left. Then tell 1, 2, draw the Sling with your left Hand, and let go the Firelock with the right at the ſame time, that it may hang by the Sling on the right Shoulder, the Muzzle upwards, and dropping both Hands down by your Sides at the ſame Inſtant of Time.

X. *Handle your Matches.* 3 Motions.

Bring both Hands directly before you with half-ſtretch'd-out Arms, about the Height of your Shoulders, taking hold of the lower End of the Match at the ſame time with the right Hand, placing the Thumb under, and the two Fore-fingers above. Tell 1, 2, and bring the Match with the right Hand over the back of the left, placing it between the Thumb

Thumb and two Fore-fingers of the ſaid Hand. Then tell 1, 2, thruſt out your left Hand with the Match ſtraight forward, by extending the arm at full Length, and at the ſame time bring your right Hand down to your right Side.

XI. *Handle your Granades.* 3 Motions.

Keep your left Hand extended to the Front, as before, and face nimbly to the Right on the left Heel, ſtretching out your right Arm at the ſame time the Height of your Shoulder, pointing directly to the Rear. Tell 1, 2, and clap your right Hand briskly on your Pouch, ſeizing (if there ſhould be Occaſion) your Granade. Then tell 1, 2, and bring up your right Hand to its former Poſition, placing the Thumb againſt the Fuze, and continue in this Poſition till the following Word of Command.

XII. *Open you Fuze.* 3 Motions.

Keep your left Hand extended to the Front, and bring the Granade with your right Hand to your Mouth. Tell 1, 2, and open the Fuze with your Teeth. Then tell 1, 2, thruſt your Arm nimbly from you to its former Place.

XIII. *Guard your Fuze.* 1 Motion.

Cover the Fuze with your Thumb, without making any other Motion.

XIV. *Blow your Matches.* 2 Motions.

Bring the Match with your left Hand before your Mouth; then tell 1, 2, and blow it off with a ſtrong Blaſt, thruſting back your Hand at the ſame time to its former Place.

XV. *Fire and throw your Granades.* 3 Motions.

Meet the Granade with your left Hand, oppoſite to your right Thigh, inclining your Body to the right Side, bending the right Knee, and keeping the left ſtiff, and fire the Fuze at the ſame time. Tell 1, 2, ſlowly, that the Fuze may be well lighted, and throw the Granade with a ſtiff Arm, ſtepping forward, at the ſame time, with the right Foot, placing it in a Line with the left, extending both Arms in a di-

rect Line to the Front, keeping the left uppermoſt, and the Body upright. Then tell 1, 2, and bring your right Hand down to your Side, keeping your left in its former Poſition.

XVI. *Return your Matches.* 3 Motions.

Bring both Hands before you, as directed by the firſt Motion of Explanation 10. Tell 1, 2, and bring the Match back to its former Place, between the two laſt Fingers of the left Hand. Then tell 1, 2, and let both hands fall down by your Sides.

XVII. *Handle your Slings.* 3 Motions.

Seize the Sling with both Hands at the ſame time, taking hold of it with the right Hand about the Middle, and as low as you can reach without bending your Body, with the left. Tell 1, 2, and with the left Hand bring the Butt forward, ſlipping your left Elbow under the Firelock, by bringing of it between the Firelock, and the Sling; take hold of the Firelock at the ſame time with the left Hand, letting the Stock lie between the Thumb and the Fore-finger, the Butt-end pointing a little to the Left with the Barrel upwards. Then tell 1, 2, bring the Firelock to lie on the left Shoulder, and the Sling on the Right, the Barrel upwards, and the Butt-end pointing directly to the Front, keeping the Firelock to a true Level.

XVIII. *Poize your Firelocks.* 4 Motions.

Bring the Sling over your Head with the right Hand, and the Firelock ſtraight before you with the left, the Muzzle upright, and the Barrel turn'd to the Front. Tell 1, 2, and caſt the Sling briskly with your right Hand towards the Left, between the Firelock and your Body, turning the Lock outwards at the ſame time with your left Hand. Tell 1, 2, and place your right Hand under the Cock, the Thumb upwards. Then tell 1, 2, and thruſt the Firelock from you to your Poize, letting the Left Hand fall down to your Side.

XIX. *Half-cock your Firelocks.* 3 Motions.

Seize the Firelock with your left Hand, turning the Barrel towards you, as in Explanation 3. Tell 1, 2, bring the Firelock

Firelock cloſe to your Breaſt, and half-bend the Cock. Then tell 1, 2, and thruſt the Firelock from you, as in Explanation 8 of the Battalion Exerciſe.

Note, As the reſt of the Exerciſe is the ſame with that of the Battalion, I ſhall only ſet down the Words of Command with the Explanations referr'd to.

20. *Handle your Primers.* Explanation 9.
21. *Prime.* Explan. 10.
22. *Shut your Pans.* Explan. 11.
23. *Caſt about to charge.* Explan. 12.
24. *Handle your Cartridges.* Explan. 13.
25. *Open your Cartridges.* Explan. 14.
26. *Charge with Cartridge.* Explan. 15.
27. *Draw your Rammers.* Explan. 16.
28. *Shorten your Rammers.* Explan. 17.
29. *Put them in the Barrel.* Explan. 18.
30. *Ram down your Charge.* Explan. 19.
31. *Recover your Rammers.* Explan. 20.
32. *Shorten your Rammers.* Explan. 21.
33. *Return your Rammers.* Explan. 22.
34. *Your Right Hands under the Locks.* Explan. 23.
35. *Poize your Firelocks.* Explan. 24.
36. *Shoulder your Firelocks.* Explan. 25.
37. *Reſt your Firelocks.* Explan. 26.
38. *Order your Firelocks.* Explan. 27.
39. *Ground your Firelocks.* Explan. 28.
40. *Take up your Firelocks.* Explan. 29.
41. *Reſt your Firelocks.* Explan. 30.
42. *Club your Firelocks.* Explan. 31.
43. *Reſt your Firelocks.* Explan. 32.
44. *Secure your Firelocks.* Explan. 33.
45. *Shoulder your Firelocks.* Explan. 34.
46. *Poize your Firelocks.* Explan. 35.
47. *Reſt on your Arms.* Explan. 36.
48. *Draw your Bayonets.* Explan. 37.
49. *Fix your Bayonets.* Explan 38.
50. *Reſt your Bayonets.* Explan. 39.
51. *Charge your Bayonets Breaſt high.* Explan. 40.
52. *Puſh your Bayonets.* Explan. 41.
53. *Recover your Arms.* Explan. 42.
54. *Reſt your Bayonets on your Left Arms.* Explan. 43.
55. *Reſt your Bayonets.* Explan. 44.
56. *Shoulder your Firelocks.* Explan. 45.

57. *To the Front Preſent your Arms.* Explanation 46.
58. *Face to the Right.*
59. *To the Right.* } Explan. 47.
60. *To the Right.*
61. *To the Right.*
62. *To the Right-about.* } Explan. 51, and 52.
63. *To the Left about about as you were.*
64. *Face to the Left*, 4 times, *&c.*
65. *Poize your Firelocks.* Explan. 59.
66. *Reſt on your Arms.* Explan. 60.
67. *Unfix your Bayonets.* Explan. 61.
68. *Return your Bayonets.* Explan. 62.
69. *Poize your Firelocks.* Explan. 63.
70. *Shoulder your Firelocks.* Explan. 64.

The Granadiers having diſtinct Words of Command for the Firing and Throwing of their Granades, beſides thoſe which are given to the Battalion when they make Ready at three Words of Command; I ſhall therefore ſet them down in the Order as they are to follow:

Take Heed to make Ready and Fire at Three Words of Command.

I. *Make Ready.*

This muſt be done by performing the Motions from Explanation 1ſt to the 4th incluſive.

II. *Preſent.* As in Explanation 5.

III. *Give Fire.* As in Explanation 6.

After which they are to perform the Motions of the 7th Word of Command, which is the *Recover*, and remain ſo 'till the following Command is given:

Take Care to Fire and Throw your Granades at Three Words of Command.

I. *Make Ready.*

This muſt be done by performing all the Motions in the Granadier Exerciſe, from Explanation 8th to the 13th incluſive.

II. *Blow*

II. *Blow your Matches.* As in Explanation 14th of the ſaid Exerciſe.

III. *Fire and Throw your Granades.*

This is done as in Explanation 15. After which they are to go on with the Exerciſe 'till they have perform'd the 36th Word of Command.

The End of the Manual Exerciſe of the Granadiers.

CHAP. IV.

Evolutions of the Foot.

THE Evolutions of the Foot, which were formerly practiſed, being found not only of very little Uſe, but likewiſe of ſuch a Length, that they had not Time to perform the more eſſential Parts of the Service, (the Firings) without over-fatiguing the Soldiers; for which Reaſon, the greateſt part of them have been diſuſed, and only ſuch retained, as are thought abſolutely neceſſary: I ſhall therefore inſert no more of them here than what were practiſed by the Foot during the late War in *Flanders*. But if any one is deſirous to ſee the whole, he may find them in a Book of Exerciſe printed in 1690, by Order of King WILLIAM and Queen MARY.

Note, When the Evolutions are to be performed, the Officers are to be at their Poſts of Exerciſe in the Rear, and the Files open.

Have a Care to perform your Evolutions.

As ſoon as this Notice is given, there muſt be a profound Silence obſerved throughout the Battalion; and the Soldiers are immediately to ſtraiten their Ranks and Files; thus: In order to ſtraiten their Ranks, they muſt take Care that they are exactly in a Line with thoſe on their Right and Left,

and

and to place themſelves in ſuch a Poſition, that neither the Head nor Body is ſeen before or behind the one the other. Their Heels muſt be placed in a ſtrait Line, without which the Ranks can never be brought even. To ſtraiten the Files, thoſe in the Front-rank are to divide the Ground equally between them, and thoſe of the other five Ranks who ſtand in File, muſt always ſtand with their Faces againſt or oppoſite to the Middle of the Neck of their File-leader. They are all to carry their Firelocks firm upon their Shoulders, and to raiſe the Muzzles high, that they may not touch or claſh againſt one another in their Facings.

Theſe Directions muſt be obſerved as a ſtanding Rule ſince they are to do it after the performing of every Word of Command, if there is an Occaſion, without any farther Orders for ſo doing from the Major, or Officer who exerciſes the Battalion.

I. *Rear Half-Files, to the Right double your Front.——March.*

The three laſt, or Rear-ranks, (which are the fourth, fifth, and ſixth) are to march up and double the Front Half-files to the Right, thus: The fourth Rank double into the firſt, the fifth into the ſecond, and the ſixth into the third.

Upon the Word, *March*, being given (between which and the other Part of the Word of Command, there ſhould be a conſiderable Stop or Pauſe made, that the Men may have Time to reflect on what they are order'd to perform) the fore-mentioned Ranks are to ſtep at once forward with their left Feet, marching ſlowly, and counting their twelve Paces, which laſt Pace brings them to the Right of thoſe they are to double.

They are to march very ſlow, and take great care that the Whole move like one Man; which they may eaſily do, by keeping Time in the lifting up and ſetting down of the ſame Feet together, as is more fully explain'd in the 4th Article, Chapter I. on Opening of Files.

In order to keep their Ranks even in Marching, they muſt always caſt their Eyes to the Right and Left, but more particularly to the Right, without turning their Heads; which if obſerv'd, will facilitate their keeping an equal Pace with one another, and thereby render the Performance regular and beautiful.

The

They are to march with their Heads and Bodies upright, rrying their Arms high and firm on their Shoulders.

In all Movements to the Front, they are to begin with e Left Feet.

Theſe Directions muſt be look'd upon as ſtanding Rules, which will ſave me the Trouble of Repeating, and the Reader that of hearing the ſame Thing over again.

II. *To the Left as you were.*

The Ranks that doubled, face at once to the Left on eir right Heels, by ſtepping half a Pace backwards with e left Feet, and ſtand thus 'till the following Command.

III. *March.*

The foremention'd Half-files lift up their left Feet, maing the half Pace a whole one, and march back to their rmer Ground, their right Feet making the 12th and laſt tep, which they are to ſet down in the ſame Place they ere before, keeping their left Feet a little behind their ght, in which Poſition they are to remain 'till the folowing Word of Command.

IV. *Halt.*

The foreſaid Half-files are to face to the Right-about, n their right Heels, and immediately dreſs their Ranks nd Files, as above directed.

V. *Rear Half Files, to the Left double your Front.——March.*

The foreſaid Half-files ſtep forward with their left Feet, and double to the Left of their Leaders, as they did before to the Right; and to obſerve the ſame Directions in their Marching, as are given in Explanation 1.

VI. *To the Right as you were.*

Thoſe who doubled, face to the Right on their left Heels, by ſtepping half a Pace backwards with their right Feet.

VII.

VII. *March.*

The ſaid Half-Files lift up their right Feet, making the half Pace a whole one, and march to their Former Ground; their left Feet making the 12th and laſt Pace, which they are to ſet down in the ſame Place they were before, keeping their right Feet a little behind their left; in which Poſition they are to remain 'till the following Word of Command.

VIII. *Halt.*

The foreſaid Half-Files face to the Left-about on their left Heels, and ſtraiten their Ranks and Files.

IX. *Front Half-Files, to the Right double your Rear.*

The firſt, ſecond, and third Ranks face to the Right-about on their right Heels, and ſtand thus ready to march and double at the following Command.

X. *March.*

Thoſe who faced, ſtep at once towards the Rear, with their right Feet, marching ſlowly 'till the third Rank doubles into the ſixth, the ſecond into the fifth, and the firſt into the third; and by counting of 12 Paces, their left Feet makes the laſt, which they are to place by the right Feet of thoſe they double, facing full to the Left of the Battalion, and the Muzzle of their Firelocks (which they are to carry high on this Occaſion) pointing in a Line to the Right, and to remain ſo till the following Command.

XI. *Halt.*

The foreſaid Front Half-Files face to the Right on their left Heels, by falling back with their right Feet.

XII. *Front Half-Files, as you were.---March.*

The Half-Files that doubled ſtep forward with their left Feet, and march ſlowly, in 12 Paces, to their former Ground, taking care to place their Heels in thoſe Places they ſtood on

on before; (which will be eaſily perceived, particularly where the left Heel was, by its being marked in the former Facings) after which they are to ſtraiten their Ranks and Files.

XIII. *Front Half-Files, to the Left double your Rear.*

The foreſaid Half-Files face to the Left about on their left Heels, and ſtand ready to march on the following Command.

XIV. *March.*

Thoſe who faced ſtep with their left Feet towards the Rear, and counting 12 Paces, march ſlowly till they come to the Left of thoſe they doubled before to the Right; and their right Feet making the laſt Step, they are to place them cloſe to the left Feet of thoſe they doubled, turning, at the ſame time, their Faces and Bodies full to the Right of the Battalion, and the Muzzle of their Firelocks pointing to the Left, remaining in that Poſition 'till the following Command.

XV. *Halt.*

The foreſaid Half-Files face to the Left on their right Heels, by falling back with their left Feet.

XVI. *Front Half-Files, as you were, March.*

The foreſaid Half-Files ſtep forward with their left Feet, and march to their former Ground, as in Explan. 12 is directed.

Note, As the Foot are always to be drawn up three deep, that is, in three Ranks, when they are to go upon Action, or thro' their Firings, the Uſe of the Doubling of the foreſaid Front and Rear Half-Files, is ſelf-evident; ſince it is by thoſe Movements that a Battalion is brought from ſix to three deep, and therefore neceſſary for the Men to perform them now and then.

XVII. *Half-Ranks, to the Right double your Files by Diviſion.*

As every Diviſion is ſub-divided into two, the Half on the Right of each Diviſion is called the Right Half-ranks, and that on the Left, is the Left Half-ranks.

At this Word of Command, the Left Half-ranks fac to the Right on their left Heels.

XVIII. *March.*

The Half-ranks that faced lift up their left Feet together and ſtep in a direct Line to the Rear a moderate Pace; afte which, they are to face together to the Left on their le Heels, and then march, beginning with their left Feet, in ſtraight Line to the Right, 'till the Right-hand Men o thoſe who double come oppoſite to the Right-hand Me that ſtood, at which they are all to ſtand; taking Care t place their left Feet foremoſt, and directly in a Line with th left Feet of thoſe whom they are to double; looking ful to the Right of the Battalion.

XIX. *Halt.*

The foreſaid Half-ranks face to the Left on their lef Heels; and immediately ſtraighten their Ranks and File

XX. *Half Ranks that doubled, to the Left as you were.*

The foreſaid Half-ranks face to the Left on their lef Heels, and remain ſo till the following Word of Command.

XXI. *March.*

Thoſe who faced lift up their left Feet together, and march in a ſtraight Line to the Left, till they come oppoſite to the Ground they firſt ſtood on; at which they are to make a ſhort Stand, and to face at once nimbly to the Right on their right Heels; after which they are to make another ſhort Stand, and then march forward, beginning with their left Feet, into their former Ground.

I believe it is unneceſſary to mention the Care which muſt be taken, that the Soldiers all face at the ſame time, lift up and ſet down the ſame Feet, and begin and end their March together, after what has been already ſaid on that Subject; but unleſs theſe Things are punctually obſerved, the Beauty of the Evolutions will be loſt, by their appearing confuſed and irregular; whereas, on the contrary, when they are perform'd in exact Time, they have not only an admirable Effect on the Spectators, but likewiſe on the Performers, by preparing them, in ſuch a Manner, for the performing of every Movement that may be required in Ser-

ervice, that the Orders, without any Difficulty, are exe-uted as ſoon as given.

XXII. *Half Ranks, to the Left double your Files by Diviſion.*

The Right Half-ranks, or thoſe who ſtood, face at once to the Left on their right Heels.

XXIII. *March.*

The Half-ranks who faced lift up their right Feet toge-ther, and ſtep a moderate Pace directly to the Rear; after which they are to face to the Right on their right Heels, and then march, beginning with their right Feet, in a ſtraight Line to the Left, 'till they come oppoſite to the Left-hand Men who ſtand, placing their right Feet foremoſt and di-rectly in a Line with the right Feet of thoſe Men whom they are to double, looking full to the Left of the Battalion.

XXIV. *Halt.*

The foreſaid Half-ranks face to the Right on their right Heels, and immediately ſtraiten their Ranks and Files.

XXV. *To the Right as you were.*

The Half-ranks that doubled, face to the Right on their right Heels.

XXVI. *March.*

The foreſaid Half-ranks ſtep at once with their right Feet, and march in a ſtraight Line to the Right 'till they come op-poſite to the Ground they ſtood on before, and then making a ſhort Stand, they are to face nimbly to the Left on their left Heels, and after a ſhort Pauſe they are to march up to their former Ground.

Ranks doubling of Files may be perform'd by the Half-ranks of the whole Battalion, the Uſe of which was to en-large the Intervals to make room for Battalions or Squa-drons to paſs thro' them; but as the Doubling of the Files in that Manner in Time of Action, would take up too much Time,

Time, they have fallen upon a quicker and more ſafe way of doing it, by wheeling back two or three Platoons, or as many as are requiſite; and as ſoon as the Troops have paſſed, the Platoons are immediately wheel'd up again; for which Reaſon the Doubling of the Half-ranks of the whole Battalion hath been diſuſed, by being found of no Service. But as the Half-ranks of every Diviſion doubling their Files is of ſingular Uſe, in the marching of any Number of Troops, for the paſſing of Defiles, Bridges, or Paſſes not broad enough to march off by Half-ranks, as is above ſhewn, by the Doubling; and as ſoon as they have paſſed, they are to move up again; for which Reaſon they have been continued in the Evolutions now practiſed.

After the Doubling of the Half-ranks, the Officers are to be order'd to take their Poſts in the Front of the Battalion.

XXVII. *To the Right and Left, cloſe your Files to the Center by Diviſion.*

Each Diviſion faces to the Right and Left inwards to its Center, thus: The Right Half-ranks face to the Left on their right Heels, and the Left Half-ranks to the Right on their left Heels, the Half-ranks of each Diviſion facing one another. The Officers are to face with the Men, and on the ſame Foot they do, according as they are poſted on the Right or Left Half-ranks.

XXVIII. *March.*

At this Word of Command, the Officers and Soldiers are to lift up their Feet together, beginning with thoſe they faced on, and marching ſlowly towards the Center of each Diviſion, they are to cloſe within half a Pace of one another, and then ſtand, placing the Feet foremoſt they faced on.

The Officers and Serjeants are to march and keep an equal Pace with the Files oppoſite to them, and to ſtand when they do.

XXIX. *Halt.*

At this Command, they are all to come nimbly to their proper Front on the Heels they before faced on, *viz.* The right Half-ranks on their right Heels, and the others on their left Heels.

XXX.

XXX. *Rear Ranks, Cloſe to your Front, March.*

The Front Rank ſtands, the other five ſtep at once forward with their left Feet, and, marching very ſlow, cloſe their Ranks within a Pace of one another, and then ſtand.

Before we proceed to the following Words of Command, which are for Wheeling, it will be proper to lay down general Rules for the performing of them.

General Rules for Wheeling.

The Circle is divided into four equal parts.

Wheeling to the Right or Left, is only a Quarter of the Circle.

Wheeling to the Right or Left about, is one Half of the Circle.

When you wheel to the Right, you are to cloſe to the Right ſo near as to touch your Right-hand Man, (but without preſſing him) and to look to the Left (without turning the Head) in order to bring the Rank about even.

When you wheel to the Left, you are to cloſe to the Left, and look to the Right, as above directed.

This Rule will ſerve for all Wheeling by Ranks; as when a Battalion is marching by Sub-diviſions with their Ranks open, then each Rank wheels diſtinctly by its ſelf when it comes to the Ground on which the Rank before it wheel'd, but not before.

It will likewiſe ſerve as a Rule for the Front Rank in all Wheelings, whether that of the whole Battalion, or Grand or Sub-diviſions: But the Rear-ranks, when they are clos'd forward, being to wheel directly in the Rear of, and at the ſame time with, the Front-rank, muſt incline a little to the Left when they wheel to the Right, in order to keep directly in a Line with their File-leaders. The ſame Rule muſt be obſerved by the Rear-ranks, when they wheel to the Left, by inclining a little to the Right, for the Reaſon above-mentioned, that of keeping in a Line with their File-leaders.

In Wheeling, the Men are to take particular Care, neither to open nor cloſe their Ranks, and to carry their Firelocks high and firm on their Shoulders.

In Wheeling, the Motion of each Man is quicker or ſlower, according to the Diſtance he is from the Right or Left, thus: When you wheel to the Right, each Man moves

quicker than his Right-hand Man; and in Wheeling to the Left, each moves quicker than his Lef-hand Man; the Circle that every Man wheels being larger, according to the Diſtance he is from the Hand he wheels to, as may be ſeen by deſcribing of ſeveral Circles within one another at three Foot Diſtance from each, which is the Space every Man is ſuppoſed to take up.

XXXI. *To the Right wheel by Diviſion, March.*

At this Command they all ſtep forward with their left Feet, and wheel to the Right a Quarter of the Circle.

The Right-hand Man of the Front Rank of every Diviſion muſt turn on his right Heel, without taking it out of its place; and caſting his Eye to the Left, without turning his Head, bring his Body and left Foot about with the Rank, according as it moves quicker or ſlower. All the Men in the Front Rank are to caſt their Eyes to the Left in the ſame Manner, that they may neither advance before nor keep behind their Left-hand Men; but to govern their Steps in ſuch a Manner, that by adding to, or abating from them, they may keep their Bodies in a direct Line with the Left-hand Man of their Diviſion; by the due Obſervance of which Rule, the Front Rank will be always kept ſtraight in Wheeling, and, conſequently, contribute a great deal towards the Rear Ranks doing the ſame; but unleſs the Front Rank wheels ſtrait, it is impoſſible that the Rear Ranks ſhould.

Let them obſerve further, as directed by the general Rules for Wheeling.

All Wheelings are to be done ſlow; and even thoſe Men on the extream part of the Ranks, are not to exceed a moderate Pace.

The Officers are to wheel on the Head of their ſeveral Diviſions, and the Serjeants on the Flanks and in the Rear.

As ſoon as the Diviſions have wheel'd a Quarter of the Circle, the Major is to proceed to the next Word of Command.

XXXII. *Halt.*

At this they are to ſtand, and immediately dreſs their Ranks and Files.

XXXIII

XXXIII. *To the Right Wheel, March.*

All the Diviſions wheel a Quarter of the Circle again to the Right, which brings the Battalion to face to the Rear. The Directions in Explan. 31, muſt be punctually obſerved.

XXXIV. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32.

XXXV. *To the Right Wheel, March.*

As in Explan. 31, and 33; by which they face to the Left of the Battalion.

XXXVI. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32, and 34.

XXXVII. *To the Right Wheel, March.*

This Wheel compleats the Circle at four Times, and brings them to their proper Front.

XXXVIII. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32, is directed.

XXXIX. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.*

By this Word of Command, all the Diviſions are to wheel one Half of the Circle to the Right.

XL. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32.

XLI. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.*

This Wheel compleats the Circle at Twice, and brings them to their proper Front.

XLII. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32.

XLIII. *To the Left Wheel, March.*

The Diviſions are to wheel to the Left a Quarter of the Circle, as they did before to the Right; with this Difference, that the Left-hand Man of the Front Rank of each Diviſion muſt keep his left Heel in its place, (as the Right-hand Men did their right Heels when they wheel'd to the Right) and,

by caſting his Eye to the Right, bring his Body and right Foot about with the Rank, according as it ſhall move quick or ſlow.

All the Men of the Front Rank are to caſt their Eyes to the Right, as they did before to the Left, and for the ſame reaſon, to keep their Bodies in a ſtraight Line with the Right-hand-man, that the Rank may be kept even in Wheeling.

The Rear-ranks are to incline a little to the Right when they wheel to the Left; (as they did to the Left when they wheel'd to the Right) obſerving further as in Explan. 31. is directed, as alſo the general Rules for Wheeling.

XLIV. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32.

XLV. *To the Left Wheel, March.* As in Expl. 43. is directed.

XLVI. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32.

XLVII. *To the Left Wheel, March.* As in Explan. 43.

XLVIII. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32.

XLIX. *To the Left Wheel, March.*

As in Explan. 43. which compleats the Circle at four times.

L. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32.

LI. *Wheel to the Left-about, March.*

This Wheel is one Half of the Circle to the Left.

LII. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32.

LIII. *Wheel to the left-about, March.*

This Wheel brings the Diviſions to their proper Front, and compleats all the Wheelings that are now practiſed in the Evolutions.

When you would ſhorten them, it may be done by Wheeling only twice to the Right, and then to the Right-about, and the ſame to the Left.

LIV.

LIV. *Halt.* As in Explan. 32.

As the leaving of Intervals between the Diviſions, when they are to wheel, is never done upon Service, but always perform'd with them cloſed within a Pace of one another, I am at a Loſs to know the Reaſon why it is not done ſo in the Evolutions; ſince the performing of it this Way is altogether as eaſy as the other, and, in my Opinion, much more beautiful, by having a greater Reſemblance of real Service: And as no other Part of the Evolutions is now practis'd, but what is of real Uſe upon Action, or to form a Battalion for it, the ſame Rule holds for the laying this aſide alſo, and ſubſtituting the other in its room, that of wheeling with the Diviſions cloſed to their proper Diſtance. This I only offer as my Opinion; but leſt my Notion ſhould be wrong, I did not inſert it in the Evolutions, as may be ſeen by the above Method.

LV. *Rear Ranks, to the Right-about as you were.*

The Front Rank ſtands. The other Five, which had cloſed forward, face to the Right-about on the left Heels, and wait for the following Word of Command to march back to their former Diſtance.

The ſecond Rank muſt raiſe the Muzzle of their Firelocks very high, that they may not claſh againſt thoſe of the Front rank in Facing.

LVI. *March.*

They are to begin with the Feet they faced on, the Rear-rank moving firſt; and when they have marched three Paces, the fifth Rank is to begin; and as ſoon as that Rank has march'd three Paces, the fourth Rank is to move; the third and ſecond Ranks obſerving the ſame Rule, are all to march ſlowly, each Rank counting the following Paces, *viz.* the rear or ſixth Rank to march 15 Paces, the fifth Rank 12, the fourth Rank 9, the third Rank 6, and the ſecond Rank 3 Paces, which brings them all to their former Diſtance of four Paces between each Rank; after which they are to ſtand, placing the left Feet foremoſt.

If the lifting up and ſetting down of the ſame Feet together is duly obſerved, they will all come to their Ground at the ſame Inſtant of Time.

LVII. *Halt.*

The 'foreſaid Ranks face to the Left-about on their left Heels, and immediately ſtraiten their Ranks and Files.

LVIII. *Files, to the Right and Left Outwards, Open to your former Diſtance.*

The Right Half-ranks of every Diviſion face to the Right on their left Heels, and the Left Half-ranks face to the Left on their right Heels; by which Facing, the Half-ranks of every Diviſion ſtand Back to Back.

The Officers are to face as the Half-ranks do on which they are poſted, thus: Thoſe on the Right Half-ranks face to the Right, and thoſe on the Left Half-ranks face to the Left, all doing it on the ſame Feet, and at the ſame Time with the Soldiers. If there are three Officers on a Diviſion, thoſe in the Center of the Diviſions ſtand ſtill without facing. The Serjeants are to follow the ſame Directions.

LIX. *March.*

The Right and Left-hand Files of each Diviſion lift up the Feet they faced on together, and march ſlowly to their former Ground, and then ſtand, placing the ſame Feet foremoſt, which are thoſe next the Front.

No File is to move 'till the Fire before it has got to its proper Diſtance. See the Directions for the Opening of Files in the fourth Article of the firſt Chapter; to which I ſhall likewiſe refer the Officers for theirs.

LX. *Halt.*

At this Word of Command, both Officers and Soldiers face to their proper Front. The Half-ranks on the Right face to the Left on their left Heels, and the Half-ranks on the left face to the Right on their right Heels, and immediately ſtraiten their Ranks and Files.

LXI. *Reſt your Firelocks.* As in Exp. 26. of the Foot Exerciſe.

LXII. *Order your Firelocks.* As in Explan. 27.

LXIII. *Ground your Firelocks.* As in Explan. 28.

LXIV.

LXIV. *Face to the Right about.*

They all face to the Right about on their left Heels, and wait for the following Command.

LXV. *March.*

At this they are to lift up their left Feet together, and march between the Files of Arms till they have got beyond the Rear-rank; after which they are not oblig'd to keep their Ranks and Files, but may mix with one another; however, they muſt do it in ſuch a Manner, that they may be ready to repair to their Arms on the firſt Order; which may be done by Beat of Drum, or any other Signal, as the commanding Officer ſhall think proper.

The Officers are not to march to the Rear with the Men, but after they have fix'd their Half-pikes in the Ground, they may walk about in the Front.

The Enſigns are to do the ſame with the Colours, and to place one of the Men, with his Sword drawn, Centinel over them. The Serjeants are likewiſe to fix their Halbards in the Ground.

LXVI. *To your Arms.*

As ſoon as this Word of Command is given, the Men are all to run to their Arms, drawing their Swords, and holding them in their right Hands with the Points up.

The Officers are to repair to their Poſts at the ſame time.

LXVII. *Return your Swords.* 3 Motions.

They are to turn the Point of their Swords downwards, and, looking to the Left, enter them in the Scabbards. Tell 1, 2, and thruſt them quite in. Then tell 1, 2, and bring their right Hands back to their right Sides.

LXVIII. *Take up your Firelocks.*

As in Explan. 29. of the Foot of Exerciſe.

LXIX. *Reſt your Firelocks.* As in Explan. 30. *Ibid.*

LXX. *Shoulder your Firelocks.* As in Explan. 45. *Ibid.*

The End of the Evolutions.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Directions for Paſſing in Review.

ARTICLE I.

BEFORE the Regiment is to paſs in Review, the Companies ſhould be drawn out, and a ſtrict Inſpection made into the Mens Arms, Ammunition, Cloaths, and Accoutrements, and a Report made of the ſame, by the Officer commanding each Company, to the Colonel, or Officer commanding the Regiment, that he may know the true State of the Whole, and give neceſſary Directions in Time for the repairing of ſuch Things as may be then out of Order.

If Time and Place will admit of it, it is uſual for the Colonel to make this Inſpection himſelf along with the other Officers; or at leaſt to order either his Lieutenant-Colonel or Major to do it, and to make him a Report of the whole.

ARTICLE II.

The Regiment muſt be told off by Grand and Sub-diviſions, and the Officers appointed to them, the Colours ſent for, and the Files open'd before the General comes; that after he has viewed them ſtanding, they may immediately proceed to the Exerciſe, or whatever he ſhall be pleaſed to order.

When Notice is given of the General's coming, the Major is to order the Men to ſhoulder their Arms, from which Poſition they are always to reſt their Arms, when that Compliment is to be paid; and as ſoon as he approaches near the Flank of the Battalion, the Major is to order the Soldiers to reſt their Arms by the following Words of Command.

To

To the Front Preſent your Arms.

At the performing of the fourth and laſt Motion of the above Command, all the Drummers are to beat a March, and the Major is to take his Poſt immediately on the Right of the Battalion, and the Adjutant on the Left, dreſſing in a Line with the Rank of Officers.

As the General paſſes along the Front, the Officers are to ſalute him with their Half-pikes or Partizans; and to time it in ſuch a manner, that each may juſt finiſh his Salute, and put off his Hat when he comes oppoſite to him. The Enſigns who carry the Colours are to drop them, (if the General is to be ſaluted with Colours) bringing the Spear pretty near the Ground, juſt when the Colonel drops the Point of his Half-pike, pulling off their Hats at the ſame Time, and not to raiſe the Colours till he has paſſed them.

As the Major and Adjutant are to be on Horſeback, they are to ſalute with their Swords; and when the Major has finiſhed his Salute, he is to repair oppoſite to the Center of the Regiment, that he may be ready to order the Men to face when the General goes round the Battalion: And as it is impoſſible for the Words of Command to be diſtinctly heard by the Whole when the Drums are beating, the Drummers ſhould have Directions to ceaſe as ſoon as the General comes to the left Flank of the Battalion, (ſuppoſing he began at the Right) and not to begin Beating 'till the Word of Command is given to face to the Left; and when he comes to the left Flank of the Rear-rank, they ſhould ceaſe again 'till the Battalion has faced a ſecond Time to the Left. The ſame Rule ſhould be obſerved when he comes to the right Flanks of the Rear and Front Ranks.

If the above Directions are duly obſerv'd, the Facings, which on theſe Occaſions are generally very ill perform'd, may be done with the utmoſt Exactneſs. It is therefore incumbent on the Major, if he would ſhew the Regiment to Advantage, not to neglect this Precaution; ſince the performing of the firſt Motions well, generally makes ſo good an Impreſſion, that every one is prepoſſeſſed in Favour of what is to follow, and will rather excuſe than condemn the little Slips or Miſtakes that may be committed: Whereas, if a bad Impreſſion is at firſt given, every little Failing will be judged a Crime, ſince Prejudices of this kind take too ſtrong a Poſſeſſion of the Mind to be eaſily removed.

By

By the above Directions it is presumed, that the Gene who Reviews, begins at the Right, which they always d unless the Situation of the Ground, or the drawing up the Regiment won't admit of it; which is a Fault th should be carefully avoided. For this End, the Ground which you are to be review'd, and the Avenues leading to should be consider'd, and the most advantageous Part of pitched upon for the Regiment; taking care to draw up t Front towards the Place by which the General is to approac and leaving the right Flank open, that he may come to without any Difficulty. If this Precaution is neglected, t Officer who commands the Regiment will be thought eith careless or ignorant in his Profession, unless it plainly a pears that Necessity, and not Choice, obliged him to it.

When the Case happens that the General comes to t Left of the Battalion first, and passes along the Front to t Right, the Drummers are to cease beating when he comes that Flank, 'till the Regiment has fac'd to the Right, as b fore directed, that the Words of Command for the Faci may be distinctly heard.

When the Battalion is order'd to face, the Officers, Se jeants, Drummers and Hautboys, are to do the same, and t to remain at their Posts, without going through the Battali to the Rear when the General passes along it, or saluting hi any more than once standing.

The Serjeants in the Rear are to pull off their Hats, wit out bowing their Heads, when the General passes them holding their Halbards in their right Hands as the Office do their Half-pikes.

N. B. When the Officers pull off their Hats, after Sal tings, they are not to bow their Heads.

ARTICLE III.

As soon as the Ceremony of viewing the Regiment stand ing is over, the General then acquaints the Colonel what he would have perform'd, as the going through the Manua Exercise, Evolutions, and the Firings, or a Part of each; al which depends intirely on the Directions he shall be pleased to give, and therefore no certain Rule can be prescribed. And tho' the Generals are not ty'd down to any set Form in Re viewing, yet they commonly proceed in the following man ner.

First, They view the Regiment standing.

Secondly,

econdly, They order the Manual Exerciſe and Evolu-
s to be performed.
hirdly, To go through ſome Part of the Firings; and,
ourthly, To march by him, either in Grand-Diviſions,
Sub-Diviſions, or by ſingle Companies.

ARTICLE IV.

s the firſt Part, that of viewing the Regiment ſtanding,
been fully treated of in the Second Article, I ſhall men-
ſome Things relating to the Second (that of the Exer-
) which could not be ſo properly introduced before.

When the Officers are order'd to take their Poſts of Exerciſe in the Rear, the Colonel is not to go to the Rear, but to march ſtraight forward, and place himſelf by the General with his Half-pike in his Hand, during the Exerciſe; and as ſoon as that is over, and the Officers order'd to the Front, he is then to return to his Poſt.

In the Abſence of the Colonel, the Lieutenant-Colonel is to proceed in the ſame Manner, in placing himſelf by the General during the Exerciſe, and performing all the other Parts of the Colonel's Duty in the Command of the Regiment: But the Lieutenant-Colonel's Poſt is never ſupplied by any other Officer when he is abſent, or commands the Regiment.

When the Command falls to the Major, by the Abſence of the Colonel and Lieutenant-Colonel, he is then to take the Colonel's Poſt at the Head of the Regiment, and ſalute with his Half-pike; but when the Regiment is to perform the Exerciſe, he is to mount on Horſeback to do it, the Command of the Regiment not being ſufficient to excuſe him from that Part of his Duty before a General, unleſs an Impediment in his Voice, or ſome other juſt Reaſon, obliges him to decline it; and even in that Caſe he is to make an Apology to the General for his not doing of it himſelf, and deſire Leave that another Officer may perform it; and when granted (which, I believe, is ſeldom refuſed) he then remains on Foot, and acts in every Reſpect as Colonel.

In the Abſence of all the Field-Officers, the eldeſt Captain takes the Command, and places himſelf in the Colonel's Poſt at the Head of the Regiment, and acts in every Reſpect as the Colonel ſhould do, were he preſent.

When the Officers take their Poſts in the Rear, the Drummers and Hautboys are to march beyond the General, and not

not the Major, as was directed by the fifth Article of
firſt Chapter.

The Major, or Officer who gives the Word of Co
mand, is not to find Fault, or preſume to chaſtiſe any
the Soldiers in the General's Preſence for any Neglect
their Exerciſe; neither ought it to be done before the C
lonel, without his Permiſſion, in order to make them m
their Duty, and inſtruct them in the performing of it bett
theſe Things being only allowable at common Exerc
and not in the Preſence of our ſuperior Officers: F
which Reaſon there ſhould be nothing ſaid or heard but
Words of Command for what the Men are to perform

ARTICLE V.

After the Manual Exerciſe and Evolutions, they perfo
the third Part before mentioned, that of the Firings;
Directions for which, with the Uſe and Service of e
Sort, being fully treated of in the two following Chapte
I ſhall ſay Nothing further of it here; but proceed to
fourth and laſt Part of the Ceremony of Reviewing, tha
marching by the General, either by Grand-diviſions, Su
diviſions, or ſingle Companies.

When a Battalion is divided into three equal Parts or D
viſions, each Diviſion is then called a Grand-diviſion.

Sub-diviſions are formed by dividing each Grand-diviſ
into three, four or five equal Parts, according to the Nu
ber of Files in each Grand-diviſion. When the Rear-ha
files are doubled, the Sub-diviſions then form Platoons.

By Companies, is the marching of each Company by i
ſelf, with its own Officers, Serjeants, and Drummers.

The Company of Granadiers is not included or told off
the Grand or Sub-diviſions; but keep in a Body by them
ſelves on the Right of the Battalion, except when they ar
to fire, and then they are divided on the Right and Left.

Before the Regiment marches off, the Files are to b
cloſed, either to the Right, Left, or Center. After which
the Ranks are to be cloſed to cloſe Order, and then ordered
to wheel by Grand or Sub-diviſions. Upon the Ranks be
ing cloſed, the Officers are to fall back on the Heads of the
ſeveral Diviſions. The Granadiers are to perform all their
Movements with the Battalion.

he Battalion is to march off from the Right, before re ordered to wheel, the Colonel goes to the Right, oſts himſelf at the Head of the Captains on that Wing; e Lieutenant-Colonel is to poſt himſelf at the Head of aptains on the Left. The Hautboys are to repair at me Time, and place themſelves on the Right of the ivision of Drummers.

en they are to march by Grand-diviſions, and are 'd to the Right, they are to march in the following Or-

The Company of Granadiers with their own Offi- at their Head.

The Hatchet-men of the Battalion form'd into Ranks.

. The Staff-Officers, *viz.* Chaplain, Adjutant, Quar- aſter, Surgeon, and Mate.

. The Hautboys in a Rank.

The Colonel alone.

. All the Captains on the Right, on the Head of the Grand-diviſion.

I. All the Lieutenants on the Right in the Rear of the Diviſion.

III. All the Enſigns on the Head of the Center Grand- ion.

K. All the Lieutenants on the Left on the Head of the Grand-diviſion.

. All the Captains on the Left, in the Rear of the ſaid nd-diviſion.

II. The Lieutenant-Colonel alone, in the Rear of the tains.

heSerjeants are to be divided equally to the threeGrand- ſions, and to march on the right and left Flanks.

he Drummers are to fall in between the third and fourth ks of each Grand-diviſion.

he Ranks being cloſed forward to wheel, they are in ching to open to their former Diſtance of four Paces: which End, the Rear-ranks are not to move 'till thoſe heir Front have got to their proper Diſtance, and then the Men in the next Rank are to ſtep at once forward with their left Feet.

In Marching, the Major is to Salute on Horſeback at the ead of the Granadiers, being ſome Paces advanced before Captain; but if he commands the Regiment, he is then march on Foot in the Colonel's Poſt, and Salute with his alf-pike.

The

The Officers are to march with their Half-pikes dow ward, and when they come within 20 Paces of the Gene they are to bring them to their Shoulders, and to time th Salute ſo as to finiſh and pull off their Hats a little bef they come oppoſite to him.

All the Officers who march in the ſame Rank, are to very exact in performing their Motions together; and in der to have them done at the ſame Time, they are to be verned by, and to take them from the Officer who marc on the Right of the Rank they are in.

After the Officers have ſaluted, they are not to bow th Heads in paſſing by the General, but to march with th Hats off 'till they have paſſed him about eight Paces, then to put them on; and when they have got twenty ces from him, they are to bring their Half-pikes from th Shoulders, and march with them downward, as befor

The Enſigns are to carry the Colours advanced, and drop them when the other Enſigns drop the Spear of th Half-pikes, and to march with the Colours down till th have paſſed the General about ſix or eight Paces. They to pull off their Hats when they drop the Colours, and put them on 'till the other Enſigns do theirs.

The Serjeants are to march with their Halbards on th left Shoulders, holding the Spear in their left Hands; and paſſing by the General, they are only to pull off their H without bowing their Heads.

The Grand Diviſions being ſub-divided as before direc ed, if the Battalion is to march by Sub-Diviſions, the Of cers are to march as follows.

All the Captains on the right Wing are to march at t Head of the firſt Sub-Diviſion.

The Lieutenants of that Wing are to be divided on, an to lead the remaining Sub-Diviſions of the firſt Grand-D viſion.

The Enſigns are to be divided on, and to lead the Sub-D viſions of the Center Grand-Diviſion, the Enſigns with th Colours being poſted at the Head of the Center ſub-diviſion

The Lieutenants on the Left Wing are to be divided on and to lead the Sub-Diviſions of the Left Grand-Diviſion

The Captains on the Left are to march in the Rear of th laſt Sub-Diviſion.

The Field-Officers, Staff-Officers, Hautboys and Hatch et-men, are to march in their former Poſts; and the Ser jeants are to be divided equally on the Sub-Diviſions.

The

The Drum-Major and the firſt Diviſion of Drummers to march with the firſt Sub-Diviſion; the Center Divi- of Drummers with the Colour Sub-Diviſion; and the ond Diviſion of Drummers with the laſt or left Sub-Diviſion, falling in between the third and fourth Ranks, as before directed.

The Granadiers are to march as before.

When they are to march thus, the Battalion is to wheel by Sub-Diviſions, the Officers placing themſelves at the Head of the Sub-Diviſions they are to lead, as ſoon as the Ranks are cloſed forward, in order to wheel with them.

In Marching, the Ranks are to open to their former Diſtance, as before directed, and where there are more Officers than one in a Diviſion, they are to obſerve the Direction about the Timing of their Salute, that they may do it together.

Reviewing by Companies.

As ſoon as the Files are cloſed, the Officers, Serjeants, Drummers, and Hatchet-men are to be ordered to their ſeveral Companies; but as the Order in which the Companies are to be drawn up, won't admit of the cloſing of the Ranks, and wheeling by Companies, as they did by Grand and Sub-Diviſions, they always march off by Companies, and wheel, after they have marched about ten or twelve Paces to the Front. The Order in which the Companies are to march, is as follows.

I. The Captain.

II. The Lieutenant and Enſign in a Rank, four Paces in the Rear of the Captain.

III. The Serjeants in a Rank, four Paces in the Rear of the Subalterns, with their Halbards advanced, in the ſame Manner as Pikes were formerly.

IV. The Drummers in a Rank, four Paces in the Rear of the Serjeants.

V. The Corporals and private Soldiers, four in a Rank; and if any odd Men remain, they are to form the Rear-Rank.

The Field-Officers are to march at the Head of their own Companies and Captains.

The Staff-Officers and Hautboys are always to march before the Colonel's Company.

The

The Hatchet-men may either fall into the Ranks, march before their Captain, as the Colonel or commanding Officer ſhall direct.

As ſoon as they have paſſed by the General, either by Grand or Sub-diviſions, or by ſingle Companies, they are to draw up on their former Ground (unleſs ordered to the contrary) and to remain there 'till the General acquaints the Colonel, or Officer, commanding the Regiment, that he has no further Commands for them; after which the Colonel gives Orders to lodge the Colours, and diſmiſs the Battalion.

ARTICLE VI.

When a Regiment is order'd to march off from the Left either by Grand or Sub-diviſions, the Colonel marches at the Head of the Captains, who lead the left Diviſion, the Staff-Officers, Hatchet-men and Hautboys marching before him, as formerly directed, when they march'd off from the Right.

The Lieutenant-Colonel goes to the Right, and marches in the Rear of the Captains on the Right, who fall in the Rear of the right Diviſion.

The Company of Granadiers marches in the Rear of the Lieutenant-Colonel, and the Officers belonging to the Company in the Rear of it.

This is the Method in all common Marches, either in the Line, or alone; but when the Regiment is retiring from an Enemy, or that any Danger is apprehended in the Rear, the Colonel remains there, and the Lieutenant-Colonel leads the Battalion off.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Conſiſting of Directions for the different Firings of the Foot.

ARTICLE I.

AS ſoon as the Exerciſe is over, and the Officers return'd to the Front, the next Thing which they generally proceed to, is the different Firings; for which End, the following Particulars are to be firſt performed.

Firſt, The Rear-half-files are to be doubled to the Left, in Explanation the 5th of the Evolutions.

Secondly, The Granadiers are to be divided on the Right and Left of the Battalion, in the following Manner:

The Company of Granadiers is to be divided into two Platoons, the Captain and ſecond Lieutenant placing themſelves at the Head of that on the Right, and the firſt Lieutenant on that on the Left. One Serjeant and one Drummer are to remain with the right Platoon, the other two Serjeants and Drummer are to march with the left Platoon.

When the Company of Granadiers is thus divided, and the Officers, Serjeants, and Drummers, have poſted themſelves on the Right and Left Platoons, according to the above Directions, they are to face to the Left on their right Heels, and to march to the Left, beginning with the Feet they faced on. The firſt Lieutenant with his Platoon of Granadiers is to march along the Ranks of the Battalion, 'till the Right-hand File of his Platoon, has got one Pace beyond the Left-hand File of the Battalion, and then halt, and make them dreſs with the Battalion. What is meant by Marching along the Ranks, is this: The Front Rank of Granadiers marches between the Officers and the Front Rank of the Battalion, the Center Rank of Granadiers between the Front and Center Ranks, and the Rear Rank of Granadiers between the Center and Rear Ranks of the Battalion.

As ſoon as the Left-hand File of the Right Platoon of Granadiers comes within a Pace of the Right-hand File of the Battalion, the Captain is to order them to halt, and make them dreſs with the others.

Thirdly, The Major is to order the Men to fix the Bayonets, it being the Cuſtom to perform the Firings with the Bayonets fix'd on the Muzzle; which, however, may be omitted in common Exerciſe, if the commanding Officer thinks proper; but never in Service.

Fourthly, When the Bayonets are fix'd, the Battalion is to be divided into Platoons; the Number of which muſt depend upon the Strength of the Battalion, and the particular Firings you intend to perform. Neither is a Platoon compoſed of any fix'd Number of Files; (I mean thoſe of three deep, which are commonly called Half-files, becauſe a File of Men are taken for Six, in the ordinary way of ſpeaking; whereas the true Meaning of the Word *File*, ſignifies all thoſe Men who ſtand in a direct Line behind one another, or, in the Military Phraſe, all thoſe who ſtand in a direct Line from Front to Rear: So that their being three, four or ſix deep, does not alter the Senſe, or change it from being a File) but may be more or leſs, according as the Battalion will allow of it: However, a Platoon is ſeldom compos'd of leſs than 10 Files, which are 30 Men, or more than 16 Files, which are 48 Men; becauſe a Platoon compos'd of leſs than 10 Files would not be of Weight enough to do any conſiderable Execution; and thoſe above 16 Files would be too great a Body of Men for an Officer to manage upon Service.

In dividing the Battalion into Platoons, they ſhould be compoſed of an equal Number of Files; or at leaſt not above one File ſtronger than another, and thoſe ſhould be the Flanks and Colour Platoons.

As ſoon as the Platoons are told off, there muſt be an Officer appointed to each, to command them; taking an equal Proportion of Captains, Lieutenants, and Enſigns for this Purpoſe.

The Lieutenant-Colonel, with the remaining part of the Officers, are to march, and poſt themſelves in the Rear of the Battalion, in the ſame Manner as they do at Exerciſe, the Captains, Lieutenants, and Enſigns drawing up into one Rank in the Rear of the Serjeants, and the Lieutenant-Colonel in the Rear of the Officers, and oppoſite to the Colour Platoon.

The Serjeants ſhould be divided to the ſeveral Platoons, and poſted in the Rear of them.

The Colonel, and the Enſigns with the Colours, remain in their former Poſts, at the Head of the Battalion.

The

The Reaſons for Officers being poſted in the Rear, are as llows: *Firſt*, As the Interval between each Platoon ſhould but one Pace, the Officer who commands the Platoon is fall into it when they fire; therefore, ſhould any more fficers remain in the Front, than one to each Platoon, it ould only embarraſs and expoſe them to their own Fire.

Secondly, It is of great Uſe to have experienc'd Officers in e Rear, to keep the Men up, and ſee that they do their Du- in Action; as alſo to lead the Battalion off in Order, hen they are commanded to retire; for which Reaſon they ace a Proportion of each Rank there. And *Laſtly*, ſhould ere be no Officers in the Rear when the Battalion is or- r'd to the Right-about, the Men would be apt to march too faſt, and by that Means break their Ranks, and fall o Confuſion, or not halt in due Time; which Inconve- ncies are prevented by Officers being poſted there.

The Method which is now practis'd, and which, by Ex- rience, is found to be the moſt uſeful, is, the dividing of e Platoons into ſeveral Firings; each Firing being ſeldom mpos'd of leſs than four Platoons, or more than five; hich Firings are not kept together in any one part of the attalion; but the Platoons of each Firing diſtributed, or ſpoſed into different parts of the Regiment; the Reaſons r diſpoſing of them into different parts, are theſe:

Firſt, The diſpoſing of the Platoons of each Firing into ifferent parts of the Battalion, will extend your Fire in ſuch Manner, as to do Execution in different parts of the oppo- e Regiment; the Conſequence of which may either diſa- le or diſhearten them ſo much, as, upon a nearer Approach, o oblige them to give Way, or make but a faint Reſiſtance.

Secondly, Their being divided in this Manner, ſhould the nemy and you join before thoſe Platoons have Time to oad, not any one part of your Battalion is very much eaken'd by it; however, when the commanding Officer pprehends that this may be the Caſe, he muſt avoid it, by eaving off after the firſt or ſecond Firings, that they may e all loaded by the Time they join the Enemy, in order to hrow in their Whole upon them at once.

Thirdly, Should the Platoons of each Firing be together, oo great a part of the Battalion would be expoſed in one place before the Men could load, particularly the Flank Firings.

Fourthly and *Laſtly*, The Firings being thus diſpoſed of, it makes the Exerciſe appear the more beautiful, and accuſ-

toms the Men to hear Firing on their Right and Left, without touching their Arms, 'till they have Orders for it, which the *Engliſh* are with Difficulty brought to, from a natural Deſire and Eagerneſs to enter ſoon into Action; a Quality in ſome Caſes extremely commendable, but in others the contrary; for which Reaſon the Men muſt be taught to rely entirely on the Conduct of their Officers, and to wait with Patience for their Orders, before they perform any Motion; the due Performance of which, both their Safety and Honour depend on.

If the Platoons of Granadiers are too weak, they may add from the Right and Left of the Battalion, ſome Files of Musketeers to them, before the Platoons are told off.

ARTICLE II.

For the better explaining, and the eaſier comprehending of the different Firings, and the Diſtribution of the Platoons of each Firing in ſeveral Parts of the Regiment, as mention'd in the preceding Article, I have hereunto annexed three Plans: the firſt conſiſting of 18 Platoons, compoſing three Firings of 5 Platoons each, and a Reſerve of three Platoons; the ſecond Plan conſiſts of 15 Platoons, divided into three Firings, of 5 Platoons each; the third is of 12 Platoons, divided into three Firings, of four Platoons each.

The two Platoons of Granadiers are included in the above Number, and always make a Part of the Reſerve; but when the Battalion is told off only in three Firings, they are then included in the laſt Firing.

The Platoons marked with the Letter A, are thoſe of the firſt Firing.

Thoſe marked B, of the ſecond Firing.

Thoſe marked C, of the third Firing.

And thoſe marked D, are of the Reſerve.

By which Means the different Firings may be ſeen at one View, and how the Platoons of each Firing fall into the ſeveral Parts of the Battalion; and the Whole appear ſo plain and eaſy, that, I believe, there will want no further Explication for the comprehending of it.

The Rule laid down in theſe Plans, for diſpoſing the Platoons of the different Firings in the Manner here mention'd, may be varied, if the commanding Officer thinks proper; becauſe Circumſtances of Time and Place, or the Situation of the Enemy, may require a different Diſpoſition.

PLAN

PLAN I. conſiſting of 18 Platoons.

Granadiers. D *Reſerve.*

A	*1ſt Platoon of the Firſt Firing.*	Firſt Platoons of the Three Firings.
B	*1ſt Platoon of the Second Firing.*	
C	*1ſt Platoon of the Third Firing.*	

A	*3d Platoon of the Firſt Firing.*	Third Platoons of the Three Firings.
B	*3d Platoon of the Second Firing.*	
C	*3d Platoon of the Third Firing.*	

A	*5th Platoon of the Firſt Firing.*	Fifth Platoons of the Three Firings.
B	*5th Platoon of the Second Firing.*	
C	*5th Platoon of the Third Firing.*	

Colours. D. *Reſerve.*

A	*4th Platoon of the Firſt Firing.*	Fourth Platoons of the Three Firings.
B	*4th Platoon of the Second Firing.*	
C	*4th Platoon of the Third Firing.*	

A	*2d Platoon of the Firſt Firing.*	Second Platoons of the Three Firings.
B	*2d Platoon of the Second Firing.*	
C	*2d Platoon of the Third Firing.*	

Granadiers. D *Reſerve.*

PLAN II. Of 15 Platoons.



PLAN

PLAN III. Of 12 Platoons.

Granadiers.	C	*1ſt Platoon of the Third Firing.*	First Platoons of each Firing.
	A	*1ſt Platoon of the Firſt Firing.*	
	B	*1ſt Platoon of the Second Firing.*	
	C	*3d Platoon of the Third Firing.*	Third Platoons of each Firing.
	A	*3d Platoon of the Firſt Firing.*	
	B	*3d Platoon of the Second Firing.*	
Colours.	C	*4th Platoon of the Third Firing.*	Fourth Platoons of each Firing.
	A	*4th Platoon of the Firſt Firing.*	
	B	*4th Platoon of the Second Firing.*	
	A	*2d Platoon of the Firſt Firing.*	Second Platoons of each Firing.
	B	*2d Platoon of the Second Firing.*	
Granadiers.	C	*2d Platoon of the Third Firing.*	

Before I proceed further, it will be neceſſary to expla the Platoon Exerciſe; that is, what Number of Motions the Manual Exerciſe they are to perform at each Word Command.

There are but three Words of Command uſed in Platoon Exerciſe, which are as follows.

I. *Make Ready.* II. *Preſent.* III. *Fire.*

By the firſt Word of Command, the Men are to perfo all the Motions contained in the four firſt Words of Co mand of the Manual Exerciſe; and immediately after performing of the laſt of the ſaid Motions, which is Cocki the Men of the Front Rank, are to kneel down on th right Knees, placing the But-end of their Firelocks on Ground, keeping their Thumbs on the Cocks, and th Fingers on the Trickers. The Center and Rear Ranks cl forward at the ſame Time with recover'd Arms, the Me the Center Rank placing their left Feet on the Inſide of right Feet of the File-leaders, bringing their right Feet the Right, but not in a Line with their Left, only in ſame Poſition as when they Reſt. The Men in the Re rank place their left Feet on the Inſide of the right Fee thoſe in the Center-rank, bringing their right Feet to Right as thoſe in the Center-rank did.

The placing of the Feet in this Manner, is call'd, in M litary Terms, *Locking*.

Formerly the Men in each File ſtood in a direct Line b hind one another, by which Means thoſe in the Center-ra were obliged to ſtoop, that the Men in the Rear-rank mig fire over their Heads; but by the above Poſition, that inco venient and uneaſy Poſture is avoided: For by Locking aforeſaid, the Men of the Center-rank preſent their Fir locks over the right Shoulders of their Fire-leaders; an thoſe of the Rear-rank preſent to the Right of the Cente rank Men, which brings their Firelocks, when they pr ſent, to the Intervals between the Files.

By the ſecond Word of Command, they are to Preſe their Firelocks, as in Explanation 5 is directed.

By the third Word of Command, they are to Fire, as i Explan. 6, after which they are to recover their Arms, th Front-rank riſing up, and the Center and Rear falling back to half Diſtance, it being a ſtanding Rule to move the Rank up to that Diſtance before they are order'd to make ready and

as ſoon as the Center and Rear-ranks have fallen back, are all to proceed to Half-cock, prime, load and ſhoul- performing the ſeveral Motions together, as directed in Manual Exerciſe; with this Difference, that in the Pla- toon Exerciſe, after Priming, the Men are not to bring their Fire-locks to a Recover in order to caſt about to the Left; but after they have ſhut their Pans, they are to ſeize their Fire-locks with the right Hand behind the Lock, as in the 3d motion of Explan. 11; and with both Hands, without moving their Feet from the Ground or changing their Aſ- bring their Firelocks up before them, and at the ſame e they are to quit the Butt with their right Hands, and hold of the Muzzle when it comes oppoſite to the right ulder, which they are to bring that way with their left ds; by which means, the Poſition of the Firelock will e ſame as in Explan. 12; only this Difference, that by Men being faced to the Right, the Butt will point to ront, as in the other it does to the Rear. That this may one without too much Conſtraint to the Men, and at the e time appear more graceful in the Exerciſe they may ge the Poſition of their Feet, by turning on their Heels n they ſeize the Muzzle with the right Hand, bring- the right Toe to point to the Rear, and the Left along Rank, forming a T to the Rear, as they did before to Front.

The Reaſon for their performing of it in this Manner, oth to gain Time, and to prevent the Men from being much fatigued.

Another Thing which contributes to the Loading quick, e making up of the Cartridges to ſuch an Exactneſs, , after they are placed in the Muzzle, one Thump with Butt-end on the Ground, will make them run down to Breech of the Barrel; which will ſave the Time uſually en up in Ramming. But as the ramming down of the rtridge is, in my Opinion, very neceſſary, I muſt beg ave to offer ſome Objections againſt the diſuſing it.

Firſt, Unleſs the Barrel be very clean within, which 'n't be after the ſecond or third Fire, the Cartridge, in Probability, will ſtick half-way; the Effect of which is well known to be here inſerted.

Secondly, If the Cartridge runs down too eaſy, the Pa- may get betwixt the Touch-hole and the Powder, prevent its going off; the Service of which Men ll be loſt during the Action.

Thirdly,

Thirdly and *Laſtly*, When the Cartridge is made to fit ſ
a&ly, yet the Foulneſs of the Barrel after two or three F
may prevent the Paper and Ball from going much furt
than the Muzzle, tho' not the Powder. So that, upon
levelling of the Piece, a great part of the Powder will
towards the Muzzle, and by coming out whole, weaken
Fire ſo much, that the Ball will either drop within t
or three Yards, or not have Force enough to do m
Execution.

If the above Objections are thought to be of any Wei
they may be eaſily remedied, by making uſe of the Ra
mer; for as the one is certain, and the other uncertain
think there is no Room left to chuſe which ought to
follow'd; for which Reaſon, when they are not pre
too cloſe by the Enemy, the ramming down of the C
tridge ſhould not be omitted in Service.

In dividing the Platoons into the ſeveral Firings,
Major ſhould take particular Care to let the Officers a
Soldiers know diſtinctly what Firing they belong to, w
ther of the firſt, ſecond or third, Firing, or of the Reſer
as alſo what Number each Platoon is of in the different
rings, as the firſt, ſecond, third, fourth, or fifth Platoon
the firſt, ſecond or third Firing, or of the Reſerve;
no Miſtake may happen in the Execution.

In order to know if they have rightly underſtood th
Telling off, the Major may try the Platoons of each Fir
apart, by making thoſe Platoons perform ſome Motions
gether, as Reſting and Shouldering, the ſame may be do
by the Platoons of each Firing ſingly. This, howev
ſhould be practiſed only at common Exerciſe, or before
General, who is to ſee you go through your Firings, com
into the Field.

He muſt likewiſe let them know what Firings they are
perform, and in what Manner they are to do it, whet
Standing, Advancing, or Retiring, or all three; as alſ
whether the Platoons of each Firing are to fire in their O
der, (which is one after the other) or together; and wh
Signals by Beat of Drum he intends to make uſe of, a
what they are to perform at each Signal.

The uſual Beatings made uſe of on theſe Occaſions
which are perform'd by the Orderly Drummer attending
the Major, are as follows:

At the Beating of the March, the Regiment is to marc
ſtraight forward, beginning with the Left Feet; and whe
the Drum ceaſes they are to Halt. Whe

When a Retreat is beat, the Battalion is to face to the right-about, the Men performing it on their Left Heels, and march towards the Rear: and when the Drum ceaſes, they are to face to their proper Front, by coming to the Left-about on their left Heels. But that the Men may not miſtake the Time of their facing to their proper Front, by the ſhort Pauſes which the Drummer muſt of Courſe make in the beating of the Retreat, another Signal may be added when they are to do it, ſuch as a ſhort Ruffle, by which Means the Facing will be perform'd with the more Exactneſs, and prevent the leaſt Diſorder.

At the beating of a Preparative, all the Platoons of that Firing which is to come next, are to make ready together, as explain'd in the Platoon Exerciſe.

A Flam, or double Stroak, is the Signal for the Platoons to begin to fire; the particular Directions for which, ſhall be treated of in the following Article.

ARTICLE III.

The Battalion being prepared according to the foregoing Directions, I ſhall now proceed to the Firings, and begin with thoſe in Plan the firſt, conſiſting of 18 Platoons, compoſing three Firings and a Reſerve.

To go through the Firings ſtanding.

The Major is to order the Drummer to beat a Preparative; at which all the Platoons of the firſt Firing are to make ready, as directed in the Platoon Exerciſe; and at the ſame time the Officers who command them, are to place themſelves on the Right and Left of their Platoons, facing towards the Colours; thus: The Officers to the Right of the Colours, to place themſelves on the Right of their Platoons, and the Officers to the Left of the Colours on the Left of their Platoons, being only advanced a ſhort Pace before the Front Rank of Men, that they may ſee all their Platoon, in order to make the Men level well, and do their Duty.

Then the Major orders the Drummer to beat a Flam; at which the Officer commanding the firſt Platoon of that Firing, gives the following Words of Command.

Preſent.

Preſent. Fire.

At ſoon as the Word *Fire* is given to the firſt Platoon, th Officer commanding the ſecond Platoon is to give the Wor *Preſent*, and then *Fire*. The Officer commanding th third Platoon, is to obſerve the ſame Rule, when the Wor *Fire*, is given to the ſecond Platoon; the Officers comman ing the fourth and fifth Platoons of that Firing, are to fo low the ſame Directions.

The Officers, who give the Words of Command, are ſpeak them clear and diſtinct, and not to proceed to th Word *Fire*, 'till the Men have preſented as they ought, wait too long after they have.

When the Words of Command are given with Judg ment, the Fire is generally good; ſo that the firing well ill, depends, in a great meaſure, on the Manner the Office give them.

When the Battalion is to fire, the two Diviſions of Drum mers on the Right and Left, are to poſt themſelves on th Flanks, and dreſs in a Line with the Front Rank. Whe the Colour Platoon makes ready, the Center Diviſion Drummers are to move to the Platoons on the Right an Left of it; and when that Platoon has loaded again, the are to return to their Poſts.

As ſoon as the firſt Firing is over, the Major orders ſecond Preparative to be beat; at which the Platoons of th ſecond Firing make ready, the Officers commanding thoſ Platoons, poſting themſelves in the ſame Manner, as alread directed for thoſe of the firſt Firing.

After this a Flam; then the firſt Platoon of the ſecon Firing, preſents, and fires, and the other Platoons of th Firing follow in their Order.

The ſame Method muſt be obſerv'd for the Platoons o the third Firing, as alſo for thoſe of the Reſerve; but befor the Platoons of Granadiers kneel and lock, they are t wheel to the Right and Left inwards an eighth part of th Circle, which, as being on the Flanks, they are always t do, in whatever Firing they are placed.

By Wheeling the Granadiers inward, in this Manner, throws their Fire towards the Center of the oppoſite Reg ment, and conſequently rakes a great part of their Front which, if they level well, can't fail of doing conſiderabl Execution, ſince every Ball muſt have its Effect.

Whe

When the Colour Platoon makes ready, the Colonel, nſigns with Colours, and the Hautboys, are to move to e Platoon on the Right or Left of it; and when it has ed, they are to return to their former Poſts.

As the Platoon Exerciſe directs the Men to load, as ſoon they have fired, and when loaded to ſhoulder their Fire-cks, I thought it unneceſſary to mention it at the End of ch Firing.

The Battalion having gone through their Firings Stand-ing, I ſhall, in the next place, give Directions how they are to perform them Advancing.

How to Fire Advancing.

Upon the Major's ordering the Drummer to beat a March, whole Battalion is to march ſtraight forward, beginning h their left Feet, and to move as ſlow as Foot can fall.

The Officers in the Front are to be only two Paces ad-nced before their Platoons, and to take care to keep their nk even in Marching. The Officers in the Rear are to ep their former Diſtance.

When the Drummer ceaſes Beating, which he is not to whether Advancing or Retiring, till he is order'd, the talion is to Halt; and the Officers commanding the toons are to place themſelves immediately on the Right Left of their Platoons, facing towards the Colours, before directed.

Then the Preparative is to beat, at which the Platoons of firſt Firing are to make ready. After that a Flam to in firing, which they are to perform in their Order. t in order to vary this Fire from that ſtanding, they may ke all thoſe Platoons fire together; in which Caſe, no am is to beat, but the Major gives the Word of Com-nd, *Preſent*, *Fire*.

As ſoon as they have fired, either in their Order, or to-her, the Drummer muſt be order'd to beat a March; at ich the Battalion moves forward as before, the Officers he Front marching at the Head of their Platoons, as al-dy directed; and the Platoons which have fired, are to d in Marching.

When you would begin the ſecond Firing, the Drummer ſt be order'd to ceaſe; at which the Battalion is to halt, d the Officers to poſt themſelves on the Right and Left of ir Platoons. Then a Preparative for the Platoons of the

ſecond

ſecond Firing to make ready; after that to proceed to fire as thoſe of the firſt did.

The ſame Method is to be obſerv'd for the third Fire and Reſerve; taking care that the Granadiers wheel inward, as before directed, when they are to fire.

When the Colour Platoon is to fire, the Colonel, Enſigns with the Colours and Hautboys, are to move to the Head of another Platoon; but when the Battalion fires together, they muſt then fall into the Intervals on the Right and Left of the Colour Platoon.

How to Fire Retiring.

The Battalion having gone through their Firings in Advancing, the Major is to order the Drummer to beat a Retreat; at which the Battalion is to face to the Right-about, and march very ſlow to the Rear. The Lieutenant-Colonel, at the Head of the Officers in the Rear, leads the Battalion. The Officers who were in the Front march in the Rear of their Platoons, and the Colonel in the Rear of the Enſigns with the Colours.

As ſoon as the Battalion has marched as far as is proper, the Major muſt order the Drummer to ceaſe beating the Retreat, and give the Ruffle (or any other Signal which may be thought more proper) at which the whole are to face to the Left-about.

When the Battalion is faced, the Major orders the Preparative; at which the Platoons of the firſt Firing make ready, and the Officers in the Front fall into their Poſts as before directed. After this they are to fire in the ſame Manner as they did Advancing.

As ſoon as thoſe Platoons have fired, the Drummers beat a Retreat, at which the Battalion is to face again to the Right-about, and march towards the Rear, as before.

When the Drummer ceaſes to beat the Retreat, and the Ruffle given, the Battalion is immediately to halt; then the Preparative for the Platoons of the ſecond Firing to make ready, and then to fire, as thoſe of the firſt Firing did.

In Retiring, the Meaning of the Word *Halt*, is to face to the proper Front; but in Advancing, it is only to ſtand ſtill.

As ſoon as the ſecond Fire is over, the Retreat muſt be beat for the Battalion to face to the Right-about, and march; and when the Drum ceaſes, they are to Halt; and at the

Prepara-

Preparative, the Platoons of the third Firing are to make ready, and to fire as the others.

The ſame muſt be perform'd for the Reſerve; which compleats the ſeveral Firings in Retiring.

After they have perform'd the above Firings in the manner here mentioned, it is cuſtomary to make one Fire by the whole Battalion. This may be done on the Ground they ſtood on after the laſt Fire; but it will appear more graceful, by making a Movement to the Front, before it is given. In this Caſe the Drummer muſt be order'd to beat a March, at which the Battalion is to move forward, and when the Major finds that the Platoons which fired laſt, have loaded and ſhoulder'd, he may order the Drummer to ceaſe, on which the Battalion is to halt. After that he is to order a Preparative for the Whole to make ready, or do it by Word of Command, and then give the Words, *Preſent*, *Fire*.

ARTICLE IV.

When the Foot are attacked by Horſe, whether they are drawn up in the Line of Battle, or in a Square, it is proper for them to reſerve their whole Front-rank, and fire only the Center and Rear-ranks by Platoons. In this Caſe, the Front-rank is not to fire 'till they are put to the laſt Extremity; and then not to fire till the Horſe are ſo cloſe, that they have but juſt Time to charge their Bayonets Breaſt-high after they have fired; that they may be ſure of placing in them, both their Ball and Bayonets, in almoſt the ſame Inſtant of Time. But I ſhall treat of this more at large hereafter, and purſue what is already propos'd, the Method of performing the different Firings of the Foot.

There is another Method of performing the Firings, in Advancing and Retiring, without halting the Battalion when the Platoons are to fire. Thus:

The Major is to order the whole Battalion to make ready at the ſame Time, and to march with recover'd Arms; which may be done before they begin to march, or after they are in Motion. As ſoon as you would begin the firſt Firing, there ſhould be a Signal given, which may be a Ruffle, or a Flam, upon which the Platoons of the firſt Firing are to move forward briskly ſix or eight Paces, and then kneel and lock, and to proceed immediately to fire in their Order. The reſt of the Battalion is to continue their former Pace, which muſt be very ſlow, that the Platoons which

advanced

advanced may have juſt finiſhed their Fire by the time they join them. At the next Signal (which may be given as ſoon as the Battalion have join'd the Platoons of the firſt Firing) the Platoons of the ſecond Firing are to advance and fire in the ſame Manner as the former; and ſo on through the ſeveral Firings. When the Platoons that fired have loaded, they are to ſhoulder.

As ſoon as they have perform'd their Firings in Advancing, the Major is to order a Retreat to be beat; upon which the Battalion is to face to the Right-about, and march towards the Rear. Soon after, he is to order the whole to make ready, and continue Marching with recover'd Arms. When he would begin the Firings, he is to order the Signal to be given, upon which, all the Platoons of the firſt Firing face to the Left-about, and immediately kneel and load, and then fire, as before directed. When they have all fired, they are to recover their Arms, face to the Right-about, march back quick into their former Places, and then load. The reſt of the Battalion is not to halt, but to continue Marching, though as ſlow as poſſible.

At the next Signal, the Platoons of the ſecond Firing are to halt and fire; after which they are to join the Battalion as the others did. The third and Reſerve are to be performed in the ſame Manner.

By this Method of Firing, a Battalion may advance and retire faſter than by that mention'd in the preceding Article; as alſo go through the Firings quicker: And, in Speculation, it will appear of much greater Service; but Experience will convince every one that it can only ſubſiſt in Theory, ſince the practic Part is attended with great Difficulty and Danger; to ſupport which, I ſhall offer the following Reaſons.

In Advancing towards the Enemy, it is with great Difficulty that the Officers can prevent the Men (but more particularly when they are fired at) from taking their Arms, without Orders, off from their Shoulders, and firing at too great a Diſtance. How much more difficult muſt it be to prevent their firing, when they have their Arms in their Hands ready cock'd, and their Fingers on the Trickers? I won't ſay it is impoſſible, though I look upon it to be almoſt ſo: And therefore, in my Opinion, imprudent to truſt a Thing of this Conſequence to Chance, unleſs obliged to it, by having no other Means left.

In

In the next place: By advancing the Platoons in the Front, their Intervals are liable to be cloſed, when only at common Exerciſe. How much more difficult muſt it be to keep them open in the Preſence of an Enemy? And if the Intervals are cloſed, the Platoons that have fired will be apt to throw the reſt of the Battalion into Confuſion, ſhould the Enemy advance; but if they ſhould not advance, the Confuſion muſt ſtill be conſiderable, ſince they dare not fire for fear of killing their own Men.

It is yet more dangerous in a Retreat; becauſe a Regiment ſeldom retires, but when obliged to it by a ſuperior Force; at which Time, the leaſt Diſorder is liable to ruin the whole; for which Reaſon, I believe, few or none will uſe this Method upon Service, whatever they may do in Exerciſe.

In retiring from Foot, it is very proper from Time to Time to order ſome Platoons to face to the Left about and fire, when the Enemy preſſes pretty cloſe, without Halting the Battalion; but even in that Caſe they never exceed two at a Time, and then they are not to make ready 'till they have faced.

The Firings of the ſecond and third Plans are to be perform'd in the ſame Manner as is directed for thoſe of the firſt.

As a Battalion is ſtrong or weak, it may be told off according to one of the foregoing Plans; which was the Reaſon for my Drawing more than one. As for Example: A Battalion of ſix hundred Men may be told off according to the firſt Plan, two Platoons of which will conſiſt of twelve Files each, and the other ſixteen Platoons of eleven Files each.

A Battalion of five hundred Men may be told off according to the ſecond Plan, one Platoon of which will conſiſt of twelve Files, and the others of eleven Files each.

A Battalion of four hundred Men may be told off by the third Plan, one Platoon of which will be twelve Files, and the reſt eleven Files each.

ARTICLE. V.

Firing by Ranks.

To fire by Ranks, is meant, to fire only one Rank of the Battalion at a Time, beginning firſt with the Rear Rank,

then the Center Rank, and laſtly the Front Rank. The Manner of performing it is as follows.

The whole Battalion is to make ready at the ſame Time and immediately kneel and lock, as in the Platoon Exercise. Then the Major gives the following Words of Command.

Rear Rank —— *Preſent* —— *Fire.*

As ſoon as the Rear Rank has fired, they are to recover their Arms, fall back to their former Diſtance, prime, lock and ſhoulder. After the Rear Rank has fired, the Major proceeds, *Center Rank*, *Preſent*, *Fire*. After Firing, the Center Rank recovers their Arms, falls back, primes, locks and ſhoulders. When the Center Rank has fired, the Front Rank is to do the ſame; which may be done either Kneeling, or by making them ſtand up firſt.

In the Time that Pikes were in Uſe, I preſume that it was the Method preſcribed when attack'd by Horſe, the whole Front Rank being compos'd of Pike-Men, and the Center and Rear of Musketeers. When the Musketeers were order'd to make ready, I ſuppoſe the Pikemen kneel down, as the Front Rank does now, dropping the Spears to the Ground 'till the two Ranks of Musketeers had fired and then roſe up and charged their Pikes, remaining in that Poſition till the Musketeers had loaded.

As I never had any Experience with the Pikes, they being laid aſide juſt when I came into the Service, I hope I may be excuſed, if what I have here mention'd is wrong; but the Firing by Ranks, both in the Battalion, and the Squadron was practiſed a conſiderable Time after the Pikes were gone. I preſume, from thence, that it was their Method, and maintain'd by the old Officers, who laid a great Streſs upon it as the moſt effectual Way to ſecure them againſt Horſe. But this is not to be wonder'd at, ſince it is natural for Mankind to be prejudiced in Favour of the firſt Notions they receive, or Cuſtoms which they have been long uſed to: However, it is ſeldom or never uſed in Service, though ſometimes practis'd in the Exerciſe; but another Method ſubſtituted in its Room; which is, that of ſaving the Fire of the whole Front Rank of the Battalion to the laſt, and firing the two Rear Ranks by Platoons; it being the compact Fire which does the Execution requiſite to break a Squadron; whereas the Fire of a ſingle Rank is ſo thin, that

will not eaſily ſtop their Progreſs, if their Reſolution don't fail them.

ARTICLE VI.

Parapet Firing.

This Firing is only uſed in fortified Towns when beſieg'd, in Intrenchments that are attack'd, or that you have to fire over a Hedge, or Wall, at the Enemy.

There are two Ways of performing it; the one by Ranks, and the other by Files.

By Ranks.

As the Breaſt-work, Parapet, or Hedge is before the Men, they are obliged to fire ſtanding, and therefore no more than one Rank can fire at a Time, which begins with the Front Rank, who as ſoon as they have fired, are to form in the Rear, that the Center Rank may march up and fire; and when they have fired, they are to form in the Rear alſo, that the Rear Rank may march up and do the ſame.

There are two Ways of performing it by Ranks; the one with the Files open, and the other with them cloſed.

When the Files are open, as ſoon as the Front Rank has fired, they are to recover their Arms, face to the Right about upon their right Heels, which brings them directly oppoſite to the Intervals on their Right, thro' which they are to march to the Rear, and then to face to their proper Front, by going to the Right about on their right Heels, which brings them into the Rear of their own Files, forming then the Rear, of which before they were the Front. Upon the Front Rank's marching down the Intervals to the Rear, the Center and Rear Ranks march forward, the Center into the Ground from whence the Front Rank fired, and the Rear Rank into that where the Center ſtood. When the Center Rank comes into the Ground of the firſt, they are to fire, recover their Arms, face to the Right about, march to the Rear, and face again to their proper Front. The Rear Rank is to do the ſame; ſo one Rank after another, as long as the Commanding Officer ſhall think proper. By this Means you may keep almoſt a conſtant Fire, ſince the Time between each will be very inconſiderable.

This Manner of performing it, with the Files open, is much in the ſame Nature as Counter-marching by Files.

Before they begin to fire, the Major is to order the whole Battalion to make ready, proceeding no farther than recover'd Arms, 'till the Signal is given for them to fire. As ſoon as the Ranks that have fired are form'd in the Rear, they are immediately to prime, load, and make ready; and march forward with recover'd Arms, as the Ranks before them move up to fire, without any further Word of Command than that which was firſt given: Which Directions will ſerve for all Parapet-Firing.

How to perform it by Ranks with the Files cloſed.

In this Caſe, the Battalion muſt be told off by Platoons leaving an Interval of a large Pace between each. When the whole Front-rank of the Battalion has fired, which it is to do in the ſame Manner as that with the Files open, the Men of that Rank are to recover their Arms, and face to the Left on their left Heels; but the Left-hand Man of each Platoon muſt face to the Left-about on his Left Heel, which brings him oppoſite to the Interval on the Left of his Platoon. As ſoon as they have faced, the Left-hand Man of the Platoons are to march ſtraight down their ſeveral Intervals to the Rear, all the reſt following them to the Left; and as each Man comes oppoſite to the Interval on the Left of his Platoon, he is to face again to the Left, and march down the Interval, thoſe of each Platoon following their Left-hand Man. As ſoon as the Left-hand Man of each Platoon has got one Pace beyond the Rear-rank, they are to face to the Left, and continue marching 'till they come to the Right of their own Platoons (the others following in File in the ſame Manner) and then halt, forming then the Rear-rank, of which before they were the Front. After they are form'd in the Rear, they are immediately to load, and as ſoon as loaded to make ready, and march forward as before directed.

When the Front-rank has fired and march'd clear of the Front, the Center and Rear-ranks are to march forward, the Center into the Ground of the firſt, and the Rear into that of the Center; then the Center-rank is to fire, recover their Arms, face to the Left, march down the Intervals, and form in the Rear of their own Platoons, as the Front-rank did. The Rear-rank is then to march forward, fire, and form in the Rear, as the others.

This

This is a Sort of a Counter-marching by Ranks, by ringing the Left of each Platoon to the Right, and e Right to the Left; with this Difference, that inſtead f keeping the ſame Station, each Rank in its Turn forms e Rear, and as thoſe before them fire, they move up to their former Ground.

I think I have no Occaſion to give my Opinion which f the two Ways, that with the Files open, or the other ith them cloſed, is the beſt, ſince every body will agree t the one which contains the moſt Fire, which is that th the Files cloſed, muſt have the Preference.

Parapet Firing by Files.

The Battalion muſt be told off into Platoons, as in the her Firing, and drawn up at three Paces Diſtance from the rapet, Breaſt-work, or Hedge, and the Whole order'd to ake ready together as far as recover'd Arms: And when e Signal is given for them to begin to fire, the Files on e Right and Left of each Platoon (that is, one File from e Right, and one File from the Left of each Platoon) ove forward, and when the File-leaders come up to the reaſtwork, or Hedge, they are to face to the Right and eft inwards (that is, the Right and Left-hand Men of each atoon facing towards one another) thoſe of the Center and ear following their File-leaders 'till the two Front Men in, and then they are to halt; by which the two Files of ch Platoon form a Rank of ſix Men in the Front of their atoons. As ſoon as they are thus formed in the Front, ey are to preſent and fire; then recover their Arms, ce to the Right and Left, outwards, and march back to eir own Places in the Manner they came. When the firſt les have fired, thoſe Files which ſtood next them are to arch out, and draw up in the Front of their Platoons, in e ſame manner as the others did, and fire; then recover eir Arms, and march back to their former Places. The o next Files of each Platoon are to march out, fire, and turn to their Places in the ſame Order as the others, and on till the two Center Files have fired; after which the ank-Files of the Platoons are to begin again, unleſs or-er'd to the contrary.

To avoid Confuſion in their drawing up in the Front of eir Platoons to fire, the File-leaders ſhould always form the Center, as before directed, thoſe Men of the Center

and Rear Ranks drawing up on the Outside of them; which must be done when the two Center Files move out, they being to march up straight to the Parapet, and the Men of the Center and Rear Ranks to face outward, and draw up on the Right and Left of their File-Leaders: However, it may be done otherwise with the two Center Files of each Platoon, by making the File-leaders face to the Right and Left outwards when they come up to the Parapet, bringing the Men in the Rear to form in the Center of each Rank.

As soon as the Files are return'd to their Places, after Firing, they are to face to their proper Front, prime, load, make ready, and wait with recover'd Arms to fire again in their Turn; all which must be done without any further Word of Command than what was at first given to begin, and not to discontinue it, 'till order'd so to do.

ARTICLE VII. *Street-Firing.*

It is so call'd from your being oblig'd to engage in a Street, High-way, Lane, or narrow Passage, where no more than 10, 12, 16, or 20 Files can march in Front, so that according to the Breadth of the Place, your Platoons must be stronger or weaker.

The Manner of performing it at Exercise, is thus.

The Rear Ranks are to be closed forward to close Order, and the Battalion is to wheel to the Right or Left by Platoons, in the same Manner as they do by Sub-division, only the Officers who are appointed to the Platoons remain with, and march at the Head of them; whereas, when a Regiment marches by Grand or Sub-division, the Captains march in the Front and Rear: So that when the Officers are posted to the Platoons and march at the Head of them, it ought to be call'd Marching by Platoons, in order to distinguish it from the other, which is Marching by Division; the one being form'd for immediate Action, but the other only for common Marching.

By the Wheeling of the Platoons, they fall in the Rear of one another; so that no more than one Platoon can fire at a Time.

As soon as the Platoons have wheel'd, they should march in that Position, in order to open their Ranks to two Paces Distance. Besides, the Firing will appear more grace-

hen it is begun while the Regiment is in Motion, than when ſtands ſtill: For as that which is perform'd in Motion, car-es a greater Reſemblance of real Service than the other, it uſt therefore, by ſo lively a Repreſentation of Action, raiſe e Imagination to a higher Pitch.

When the Ranks are open'd, and the whole Battalion in otion, the Major ſhould give the Signal for the Firing to gin; on which, the Officer who commands the Front atoon is to halt his Men, order them to make ready, eel and lock, then preſent and fire; and as ſoon as they ve fired, they are to recover their Arms, face from the enter to the Right and Left outwards, march down the anks of the other Platoons, and form again in the Rear of e laſt, and immediately load and ſhoulder.

As ſoon as the Word *Fire* is given to the firſt Platoon, the fficer who commands the ſecond Platoon muſt order his en to make ready, and to march up with Recover'd Arms the Ground they firſt fired on, as ſoon as the others have t on the Flanks; and when his Men have kneel'd and ck'd, he is to give the Words, *Preſent*, *Fire*; and when ed, to recover, face outwards, march along the Flanks, d form in the Rear of the firſt. The reſt of the Platoons e to obſerve the ſame Directions in making ready, march-g up to the Ground on which they firſt fired; and when ed, to march and form in the Rear.

The Platoons are to keep up pretty cloſe to one another, d to move or halt as thoſe in the Front do.

When this is to be put in Practice on real Service, the ont of the Platoons muſt not be equal to the Breadth of e Place you are to engage in; but there muſt be a ſmall ace of Ground, or Interval, left on your Flanks, that oſe who have fired may have Room to march back and rm in the Rear.

It is in this Manner, when you have not Time to raiſe a eaſt-work, that a Paſs, Bridge, Road, or Street, is to be aintain'd againſt the Enemy, by the Platoons ſuſtaining e another, and firing in their Turn; which may be con-ued as long as there is Occaſion, almoſt, without Inter-iſſion, by one Battalion only.

ARTICLE VIII. *Running-Fire.*

This Fire is never made uſe of but upon the gaining of a attle, the taking of a Town, the Celebration of the King's

Birth-day, or those of the Royal Family, or some other extraordinary Cause of Rejoicing; for which Reason the *French* call it a *Feu de Joye*.

These Firings are always perform'd in the Dusk of the Evening, both in Camp and Garison. The Ranks are to be closed no nearer than Half Distance, the Front Rank being to stand as well as the Center and Rear; and when they present, they are all to raise their Muzzles pretty high, in order to fire in the Air. The Men of each File are to fire together; that is, each File distinctly by its self; and so run pretty quick from one File to another, quite through the Regiment.

The Manner of performing it in Camp.

As soon as the Sun sets, the Army is to draw out at the Head of their Encampment; or if the Ground will allow of it, both the Lines may be drawn up in the Front of the first Line of Tents. The Train of Artillery is likewise drawn out on these Occasions, and placed at the Head of the first Line, or upon a rising Ground, if any such lies near them.

The Firing is to begin with the Train, keeping such Time between each Gun that 25 or 30 may be fired in a Minute.

It is a fix'd Rule to fire an odd Gun, as 21, 31, *&c.*

As soon as the Train have fired the Number of Guns appointed them, the Fire of the Small Arms is to begin on the Right of the first Line, running gradually on from File to File, and from Regiment to Regiment, 'till it comes to the Left of the first Line; then it is to begin on the Left of the second Line, and run on gradually in the same Manner to the Right of that Line, which finishes the first Fire of the whole Army; after which they are all to give three Huzzas, then load and shoulder.

As they are to fire three Times on these Occasions, the other two are to be perform'd in the same Manner as the first, beginning with the Artillery, from thence with the Right of the first Line, and ending with the Right of the second Line, giving three Huzzas after each Fire is quite ended.

To prevent the Fire running too quick, the Regiments in the first Line should not make ready 'till that on their Right has begun to fire; and those in the second Line not to make ready 'till the Regiment on their Left begins to fire; those in the first Line being to take it from the Right, and the second Line from the Left: For should they all make ready together,

gether, the Center or Left would be apt to fire as ſoon as began on the Right; but their not making ready 'till the egiment, from whom they are to take it, begins to fire, ill prevent their firing too ſoon, which Fault is uſually ommitted in theſe Firings; but very ſeldom that of being oo ſlow.

The Manner of performing it in Gariſon.

The Gariſon is to be drawn up on the Ramparts, extend- themſelves quite round the Town, if their Numbers ll allow of it, and to face the Parapet, over which they to fire.

The Artillery, as in Camp, is to fire firſt; then the Small ms, beginning on the Right of the eldeſt Regiment, and un gradually round to the Left. After the Fire ceaſes, whole Gariſon is to give three Huzzas, then load and ulder. The other two Fires are to be performed in the e Manner; as alſo the above Directions about the Time making ready will ſerve likewiſe in Gariſon.

Having gone through the different Firings, as propos'd, I ll give ſome Directions, in the following Chapter, how ot are to proceed when attack'd by Horſe, both in Bat- on and in the Square; but that I may keep within due unds, I ſhall confine myſelf to the Management of a gle Battalion.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Containing Directions how a Battalion of Foot is to defend itself when attack'd by Horse.

ARTICLE I.

AS Foot are ſometimes interlin'd with Horſe, detach'd from the main Body to ſecure ſome important Poſt, by which they are expos'd to the Attacks of Horſe, it will be proper to lay down ſome general Rule how a Battalion is to proceed on ſuch an Occaſion both as to the Management of their Fire in Battalion, when only attack'd in Front; and in what Manner they are to throw themſelves into a Square, when their Flanks or Rear lie open and expoſed, and how they are to fire and march when form'd in the Square.

When a Regiment is to march thro' a Country, or poſt at a Place, where there is a Poſſibility of their being attack'd by Horſe, they ſhould be prepared to defend themſelves againſt them, by dividing their Platoons in ſuch a Manner that they may have a conſtant Succeſſion of Fire, when attack'd in Front; or be ready to form the Square when neceſſary, without any new telling off.

If the Battalion is ſtrong enough to admit of it, I would recommend Plan. I. in the foregoing Chapter, conſiſting of 16 Platoons beſides Granadiers, which compoſes three Firings of 5 Platoons each, and a Reſerve of the Granadiers and Colour Platoon: And if you would add a further Strength to the Reſerve, the Front Rank of the other Firings may be kept to fire with it: But the chief Point is, that the Square is ſafer, eaſier, and quicker form'd from this Plan, than any other now in Uſe, as will appear by the ſaid Plan, when we come to treat on the forming of the Square. But leſt the Battalion ſhould not be ſtrong enough to admit of 16 Platoons, I have annex'd another of 12 Platoons beſides the Granadiers, from which the Square may be form'd in the ſame Manner as the firſt. It will likewiſe conſiſt of three Firings, of 4 Platoons each, beſides the Granadiers; in which Caſe it will be very proper to keep the whole Front Rank and the Granadiers for the Reſerve.

If Foot could be brought to know their own Strength, the anger which they apprehend from Horſe would ſoon va-ſh; ſince the Fire of one Platoon, given in due Time, is fficient to break any Squadron: Therefore, if a Battalion of Foot would manage their Fire to the beſt Advantage, and not throw it away at too great a Diſtance, which they are apt to do, from their appearing nearer than they really are, by their being ſo much above the Foot, they might baffle a conſiderable Body of Horſe, and make them deſiſt in a very ort Time from any further Attempts upon them.

But as the Horſe will have Recourſe to Stratagem to aw away your Fire, by making feint Attacks, with ſmall rties advanced before the body, in hopes to make you nd your Fire on them; the Commanding Officer, how-er, may, without any Hazard, eaſily diſappoint their eſigns in the following Manner:

Let us ſuppoſe a Battalion drawn up where the Horſe n only attack them in Front, the Flanks and Rear be-g ſecured by Moraſſes, Rivers, Hedges, or Ditches. ſuch a Situation one Battalion of well-diſciplin'd Foot ay deſpiſe the Attacks of a whole Line of Horſe, while ey continue their Attacks on Horſe-back, and oblige em to retire with conſiderable Loſs.

We will ſuppoſe then a Battalion poſted as above, and a body of Horſe, having no other Way to paſs, than through at which is occupied by the Foot, oblig'd to attack them that Situation.

In this Caſe, the Officer who commands the Cavalry will, o doubt, form them into ſeveral Lines, in order to ſuſtain ne another, not doubting but the firſt and ſecond Lines ill be forced to give Way by the Fire of the Foot; and in l Probability they may be order'd to advance with no other iew than to receive the Fire, and then retire thro' the In-rvals of the Squadrons, which are marching to ſuſtain em; imagining that two or three feint Attacks of this Kind ill be ſufficient to draw away all their Fire, and give the eſt an Opportunity to fall upon them before they can have ime to load again: But if the Fire of a Battalion is ma-ag'd according to the Directions of my firſt Plan, which is ivided into three diſtinct Firings, beſides a Reſerve, they an never be without one or more Fires, for every Attack hey can make: For if the Lines of Horſe don't leave a conſiderable Diſtance between each, they will run a great Hazard of being broke, and thrown into Confuſion by their

their own Troops, who are order'd, or oblig'd, to retire, which the three firſt Attacks, with any tolerable Conduct in the Officer who commands the Battalion, will certainly be oblig'd to; and if they leave proper Intervals between the Lines of Horſe, it will give the Foot Time, notwithſtanding the quick Motions of the Cavalry, to load, or at leaſt very near it, before they will have an Occaſion to make uſe of a ſecond Fire. But let them attack after one another, as quick as the Nature of the Thing will admit of, the Platoons of the firſt Firing will be loaded before they can poſſibly have an Occaſion to make uſe of thoſe of the third Firing; ſo that the Battalion can never be without two Firings and the Reſerve; for which Reaſon I don't think there is an Occaſion to reſerve the whole Front Rank; which Addition of Fire to each Platoon is of great Conſequence, and, in my Opinion, of infinite more Service, than it can be of when reſerv'd to the laſt; particularly ſo ſince there is a great Probability that you won't be reduced to the laſt Fire; and if you are not reduced to the laſt Fire, the Front Rank is render'd uſeleſs by reſerving it, the Fire of which might do conſiderable Execution in firing along with their Platoons. However, the commanding Officer will ſee by the Diſpoſition of the Enemy, whether it is neceſſary to reſerve the Front Rank or not. His own Reaſon muſt direct him in that Affair, the Rules laid down here being rather general than poſitive; the Variety of Circumſtances which happen in Action rendering it impoſſible to determine abſolutely on this Head.

I ſhall now return to my former Propoſition, that of diſappointing their Deſigns, in drawing away your Fire by feint Attacks.

An Officer, who has had any Experience, may diſcover the Deſigns of the Enemy by the Diſpoſition of their Troops, particularly in the Caſe we now ſuppoſe. If you find them form'd into ſeveral Lines, you may conclude it is to make ſeveral Attacks immediately after one another, and that the firſt and ſecond are only deſign'd as Feints to draw away your Fire; for which Reaſon it would be proper to order three or four ſmall Detachments, of four or five Files each taken from different Parts of the Battalion, to advance ten or twelve Paces in the Front, and when the Horſe come within thirty or forty Paces of them to fire, and then retire immediately into their Places. If this was only deſign'd as a Feint, they will retire at that Fire; but if it was not a Feint,

' it may not be ſufficient to break them entirely, yet it y do them conſiderable Damage, and put them into ſome ſorder, particularly if any of their Officers ſhould be kill- or wounded. If thoſe Squadrons ſhould advance after t Fire, they muſt be receiv'd by the Platoons of the firſt ing, which, I am convinc'd, will ſend them back faſter they came on, unleſs their Horſes are ungovernable, by that Means bring ſome of them forward contrary eir Inclinations.

he Detachments, or ſmall Platoons, ſo advanced, ld be taken out of the Platoons of the third Firing or erve, by which they will have Time to load, after return, before there will be an Occaſion to make of that Firing.

the Squadrons of the firſt Line retire at the Fire of dvanced Platoons, in order to make room for the ſe- d Line to advance, you may ſerve them in the ſame nner, by advancing the ſame Number of ſmall Platoons of the ſame Firing, there being no Fear from the nt of Time, ſince the ſecond Line can't charge 'till firſt have got clear of their Front. Beſides, if the ſe- d Line is too near the firſt, they will be in great Dan- of being broke by them; to avoid which, they will e proper Intervals between the Lines, as well as ween the Squadrons; ſo that you can't fail of Time to it in Execution, provided proper Care was taken be- hand to make the Diſpoſition propoſed.

y this Diſpoſition, every Attack will receive two Fires, r which, I believe, there is no great Danger of their ad- cing; but if they ſhould, the Platoons of the ſecond ng are ready to be made uſe of.

ome may object againſt the advancing of the little ies, as not being ſufficient to break or repulſe the adrons, and therefore give them an Opportunity to ge thoſe Parties before they can join the Battalion; as they are only ſmall Platoons, and advance but a little Way from the Front, they can fall into their ces after they have fired, in a Moment, and conſe- ntly avoid the Danger with a great deal of Eaſe.

hoſe Parties ſhould not advance before the Battalion, the Cavalry are in full march to attack you; leſt they ld diſcover your Deſign, and order their Attacks ac- dingly.

When

When the advanced Parties make Ready, the Platoons o the firſt Firing ſhould do the ſame; but great Care muſt b taken that they don't fire till the advanced Platoons a return'd, and even not then till the Horſe are within 25 o 30 Paces: For on the Keeping of your Fire depends yo Safety. If on Preſenting the Horſe ſhould make a full Ha or Wheel off, as they frequently do, the Men muſt be ca tion'd not to fire, but immediately recover their Ar without Firing, leſt they ſhould do that only by way Feint to draw away your Fire at ſome Diſtance, and th make a Real Attack, hoping to find you unprovided to r ceive them.

When Foot are once brought to that Perfection of Di pline, as to recover their Arms, after they are Preſent without Firing, in the Face of the Enemy, the Horſe w never pretend to attack them a ſecond Time, but keep th due Diſtance; but if they throw away their Fire too ſo they will take the Advantage of it, and be upon them i Inſtant; and if they can once penetrate but with one Sq dron, it will throw a Battalion of ſix hundred Men i Confuſion; after which, their Conqueſt will be eaſy.

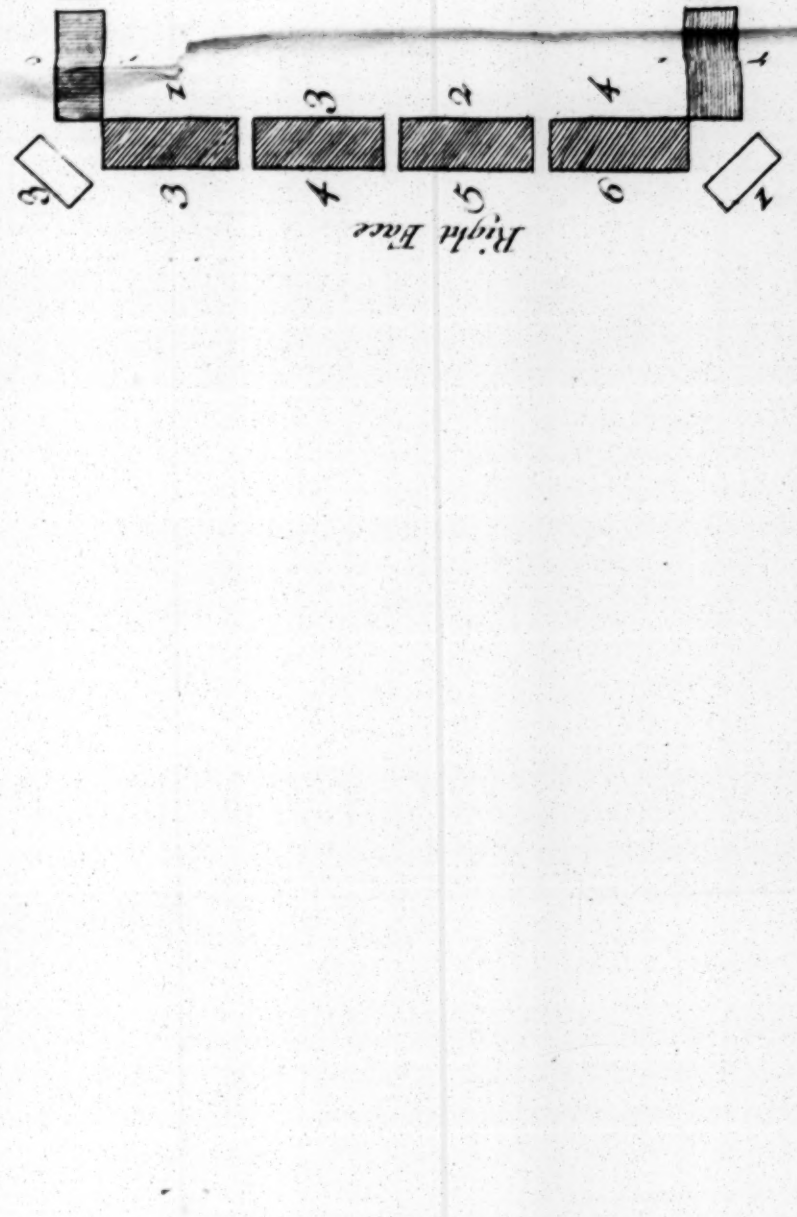
As the Situation of the Battalion, as above mention was extreamly advantageous by having their Flanks ſec ed; let us now ſuppoſe one leſs ſo, by having one Fl expoſed, beſides the Front.

We will ſuppoſe then, that one of your Flanks, as we your Front, lies open to the Enemy; and that the H have made a Diſpoſition to attack you in both. The o Expedient againſt it is, the forming of two Fronts, ma the Figure of an L, which is immediately done by Wh ing back half of the Battalion, or a ſufficient Numbe Platoons, a Quarter of the Circle.

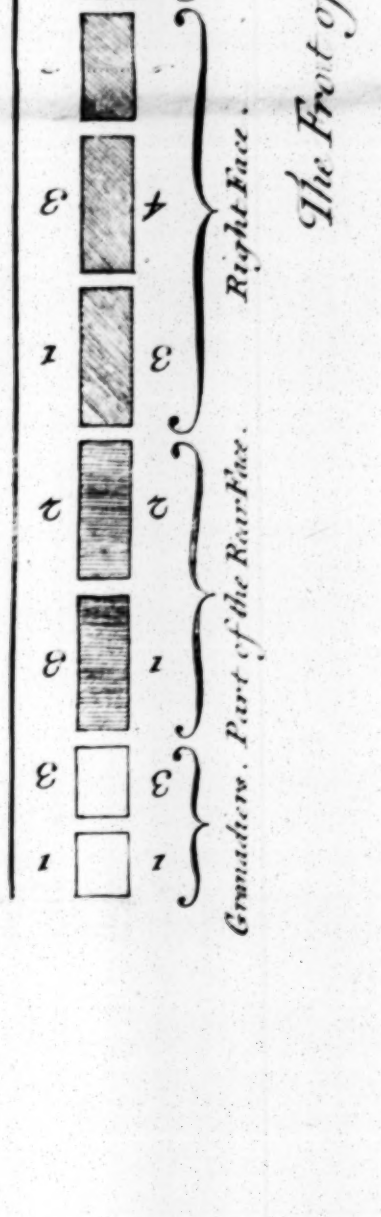
If you are to maintain that Poſt, this Diſpoſition is be than an entire Square, by having double the Fire in eac theſe Faces to thoſe in the Square.

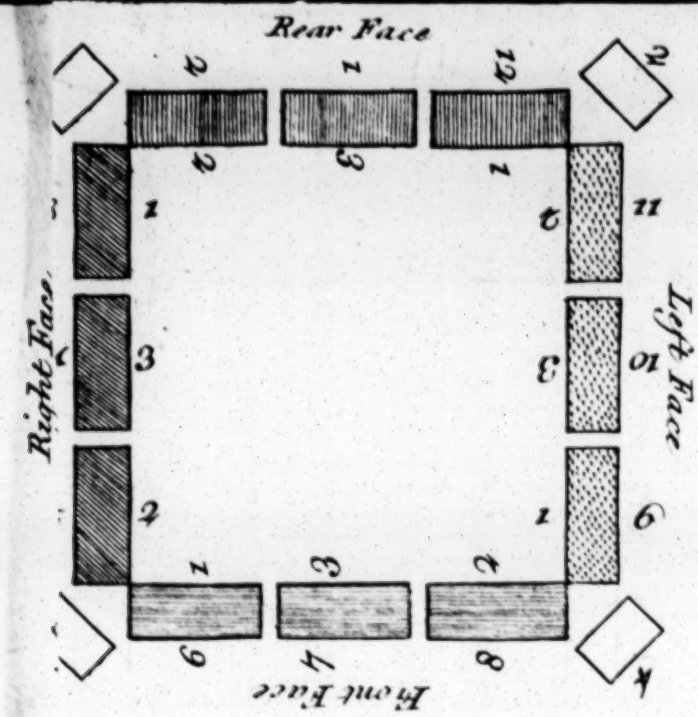
The Firing by Platoons may be preſerv'd in this Figur well as in Battalion, by dividing the Platoons of each F into two Firings, and reſerving the whole Front Rank the Granadiers for the third and laſt. If you think that Angle, where the two Faces join, is expoſed, a ſmall P toon of Granadiers may be form'd on it; and that the P toons may have nothing to obſtruct their Firing, it woul proper to ſend the Enſigns with the Colours into the R

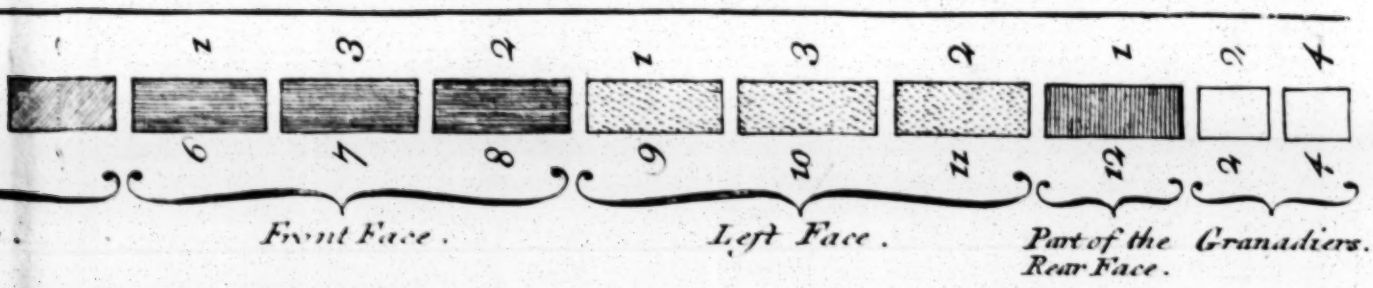
Plan 1st of Forming the Square, after the Dutch way.



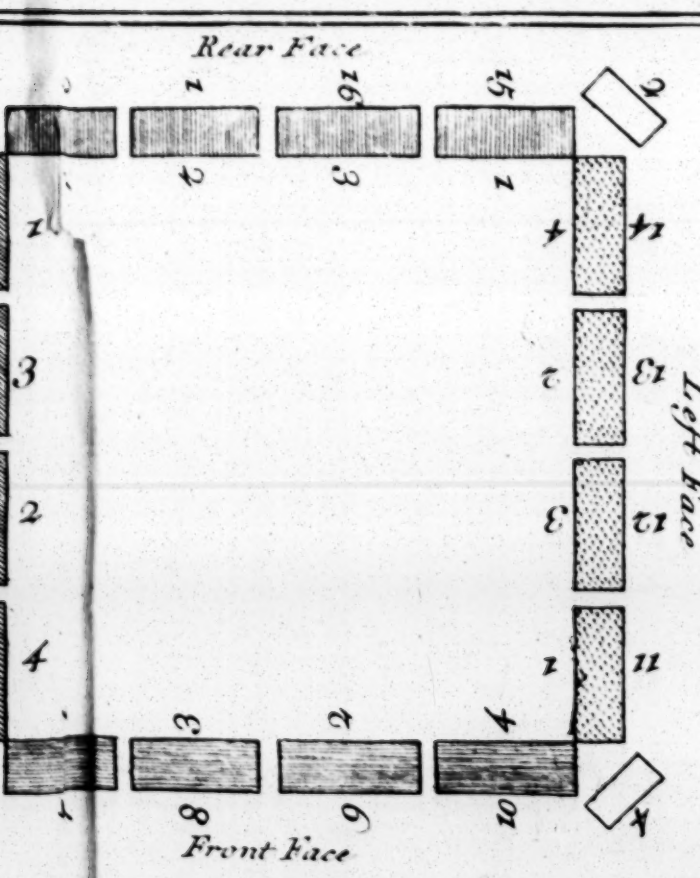
Plan 2d of Forming the Square, according to y^e Dutch manner.







Front of the Battalion.





Front of the Battalion.

The Fire of each Face muſt be manag'd according as they attack'd; and no more Platoons muſt be fired than what abſolutely neceſſary to repulſe them, preſerving the reſt th the utmoſt Care.

I own that I never heard of a ſingle Battalion being form'd o this Figure upon Action; and therefore I ſhall not in- much on it; but as the Flank of an Army is often ſe- red in this Manner, by wheeling back of Battalions and quadrons, I thought it might fall out the ſame Way with Battalion.

ARTICLE II.

I ſhall now proceed to ſhew how the Square is to be orm'd from the ſaid Plans, without altering the former Diſ- oſition of Officers, or any new Telling off; and that it nay be comprehended with the more Eaſe, I have marked he Platoons, which form each Face, different from one nother. See the annexed Plans..

The Figures in the Front, are only the Platoons num- er'd, from one to ſixteen; by which you will ſee how they all into the ſeveral Faces of the Square.

The Figures in the Rear, are to ſhew what Firing the Platoons belong to when form'd in the Square.

The Platoons number'd (1.) on the Inſide, being on the Right of each Face, when faced Square, which is outward, belong to the firſt Firing.

Thoſe number'd (2.) on the Inſide, belong to the ſecond Firing.

Thoſe number'd (3.) on the Inſide, belong to the third Firing.

Thoſe number'd (4. belong to the fourth Firing.

The Platoons of Granadiers are likewiſe ſub-divided for their Forming on the ſeveral Angles, their Numbers ſhewing the Angles on which they are to form.

I believe I need not give a further Explanation of the Plan, than what is already mentioned, for its being fully comprehended; ſo that I may proceed to give the proper Directions for the forming the Battalion into the Square, and reducing the Square into Battalion.

As the Officers are not to be chang'd (but to remain in the Poſts aſſigned them, both in the Front and Rear, for the firing in Battalion) or any new Diviſion of the Platoons, the Square may be form'd in a very ſhort Space of Time; for

for which Reaſon the commanding Officer may defer doing of it, 'till he ſees the Diſpoſition actually made to tack the Battalion in every Part.

As ſoon as he perceives this, he muſt avoid the Dan by forming the Battalion into a Hollow Square; or, cording to the *French* Way of calling it, *un Batta Quarré*, a ſquare Battalion,

Which is perform'd by three Words of Command.

I. *Form the Hollow Square.*

II. *March.*

III. *Face Square.*

In the following Pages I ſhall explain what they are perform at each.

At the firſt Word of Command, *Form the hollow Squ* or, in my Opinion, more properly ſpeaking, *Form the Squ* the two Platoons of Granadiers, Number 3 and 2, and ſix Platoons of the Battalion on the Right, Number 1, 4, 5, and 6, and ſix Platoons on the Left, Number 11, 13, 14, 15, and 16, Face all to the Right about on th left Heels, the Officers in the Front and Rear of thoſe P toons doing the ſame; as alſo the Serjeants who are poſt in the Rear of thoſe Platoons.

The two outward Platoons of Granadiers, Number 1, 4, with their Officers, as alſo the two Diviſions of Drum mers on the Flanks, face to the Right and Left inwards.

The four Platoons in the Center, Number 7, 8, 9, and 1 keep their proper Front.

At the ſecond Word of Command, *March*, the Platoo which faced to the Right-about, wheel inwards, and as ſoo as the Platoons which form the Right-face, N° 3, 4, 5, an 6, and thoſe which compoſe the Left-face, N° 11, 12, 13, and 14, have wheel'd a Quarter of the Circle, they are to ſtand; but the two Platoons on the Right of the Battalion, N° 1, and 2, and the two on the Left, N° 15, and 16, being to compoſe the Rear-face, are to continue wheeling inwards another Quarter of the Circle, by which the Right and Left Platoons of the Battalion, N° 1, and 16, join in the Center of the Rear-face.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, N° 3, and 2, which faced to the Right about, wheel at the ſame time with the Platoons of the Battalion; but inſtead of wheeling on the Extremity

mity of the Flanks, they may incline inwards 'till the anadiers in the Right, Num. 3. come oppoſite to the In-val between the Platoons, Num. 2, and 3. and the Grana-rs on the Left, Num. 2, 'till they come oppoſite to the erval between the Platoons, Num. 14. and 15, and then Wheel and March directly in the Rear of thoſe Platoons, hich, when the Square is form'd, fall into the Flanks, hich for Diſtinction we ſhall call the Rear Flanks, as the ers the Front) ſo that when they all ſtand, thoſe Platoons Granadiers will be on the Rear Angles which they are to ver.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, which ed to the Right and Left Inwards, are, at the ſame time, march in a direct Line to the Right and Left Flanks of the r Center Platoons, Num. 7, 8, 9, and 10, which ſtood; l when they come to the Flanks of thoſe Platoons, they to ſtand, being to form on the Front Angles.

The Numbers here referred to, are thoſe marked in the ont of the Battalion.

After the foregoing Word of Command is executed, the giment will appear in this Poſition.

The four Center Platoons, which compoſe the Front ce of the Square, face outward to their proper Front.

The twelve Platoons, which compoſe the three other ces of the Square, face inward, that is, into the Square.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 2, and 3, which to form on the Rear Angles, face the Platoons on whoſe ngles they are to Form.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, which to form on the Front Angles, face the Flanks of the ont Face looking along the Ranks.

The Officers and Serjeants Face as the Platoons do, on hich they are poſted.

At the third Word of Command, *Face Square*, they all ace outward; the Right, Left and Rear Faces of the quare, and the two Platoons of Granadiers, Num, 2, and going to the Left-about on their Left Heels. The two latoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, Face to their roper Front; after which the four Platoons of Granadiers Wheel back immediately and form on the Angles, as de-ribed in the Plan.

As ſoon as the Men have Faced Square, the Colonel, Major, Enſigns with the Colours, Adjutant and Drummers march into the Square; and the Drummers are to be divided

into four Diviſions, placing one in the Rear of each Fac
which the Drum-Major is to perform.

The Field-Officers can have no fix'd Poſt aſſign'd them
the Square; but are to have a watchful Eye over the Whol
and to move about from Place to Place to give the neceſſa
Directions to the ſeveral Parts as Occaſion may require.

The Enſigns with the Colours are to poſt themſelves
the Center of the Square.

The Officers who Command the Platoons remain in
Front of them without the Square; and thoſe who we
poſted in the Rear remain within the Square, in the Rear
the ſeveral Platoons; and when any of the Officers in
Front are killed or wounded, the Officers in the Rear
thoſe Platoons are to move out immediately, and take
Command.

It is evident from hence, that the Square may be form'
this manner in leſs than a Minute, if preſs'd in time; the
being no Alteration requir'd in the Diſpoſition of Office
from that of the Battalion drawn up for Action; or any ne
telling off the Platoons. Beſides, another Advantage in
Manner of Forming the Square, is, that you preſerve
Front of the four Center Platoons without moving, whi
will ſecure you 'till the Square is Form'd; a Circumſtanc
in my Opinion, of no ſmall Conſideration.

As Victory, even in a ſuperior Army, is uncertain, fro
the Variety of Circumſtances incident in Action: And wh
we imagine Fortune hovering over us with a Crown
Laurel, ſhe often eludes our Hopes, and beſtows it on
adverſe Party; we muſt not therefore depend on Her
much, but act with Caution, and be prepared againſt
Events, before we enter upon Action. And as the maki
a handſome Retreat is the moſt difficult Part of the Servic
and, next to the Gaining of a Battle, the moſt Commend
ble; it is therefore incumbent on the Commanding Offic
of every Regiment, to have the ſame Regard towards th
Preſervation of his Men, as the General has to the Whole
For which Reaſon, the Platoons of every Battalion ſhou
be told off, in ſuch a manner, and the Officers appointed
them, that when the Battalion is ordered, or forced to retir
it may be perform'd without any further Directions tha
the Words of Command, for the Marching off in Battalion
by Grand or Sub-diviſions, or in the Square; by which diffe
rent Ways the Battalion ſhould be told off, and the Officer
and Soldiers thoroughly acquainted with them before they
engage

gage, that, when order'd, they may be in no Confuſion he Performance.

How the Square is to be Reduced.

The Square may be Reduced into Battalion with as much ſe, and in as ſhort a Space of Time, as it was Form'd in; the performing of which there are only three Words of mmand.

From the Square, form the Battalion. II. *March.* III. *Halt.*

At the firſt Word of Command, *From the Square, Form Battalion*, the two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and overing the Front Angles, Wheel towards the Front 'till y dreſs in a Line with the Front Face, and then face to Right and Left outward, and ſtand.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 2, and 3, cover- the Rear Angles, Wheel 'till they come in a Line with Right and Left Faces of the Square, and then ſtand.

At the ſecond Word of Command, *March*, the Platoons the Rear Face Wheel from the Center to the Right and ft outwards, thus: Num. 1, and 2, Wheel to the Left, Num. 15, and 16, to the Right, and as ſoon as they me in a Line with the Right and Left Faces, thoſe Faces to Wheel along with them towards the Front.

The Platoons of Granadiers of the Rear Angles are to ve at the ſame time; but in Marching they are to incline wards 'till they come to the Extremity of the Flanks of Platoons, Num. 1, and 16, and then to Wheel up with m on their Flanks.

The two Platoons of Granadiers of the Front Angles, o had Wheel'd up and Faced outward, are to March to Right and Left outward in a direct Line from the Flanks the Front Face, and when they have March'd far enough the Platoons of the Battalion, and the Granadiers (who ere Wheeling up) to form between them and the Front ce, they are to Stand.

The Colonel, Major, Enſigns with the Colours and Adtant are to March at the ſame time into the Front; and e Drummers to repair to their former Poſts.

As ſoon as the Platoons, which are Wheeling up, come a Line with the Front Face, the Major is to proceed to e third Word of Command.

Halt. At this the Platoons which compos'd the Right, Left, and Rear Faces, and the Granadiers of the Rear Angles Stand; and the Granadiers of the Front Angles, who fac from the Flanks, face to their proper Front; by which th Square is reduced, and the Battalion form'd as before, wit out moving the Officers from their Platoons, either in t Front or Rear, in the Forming or Reducing the Square.

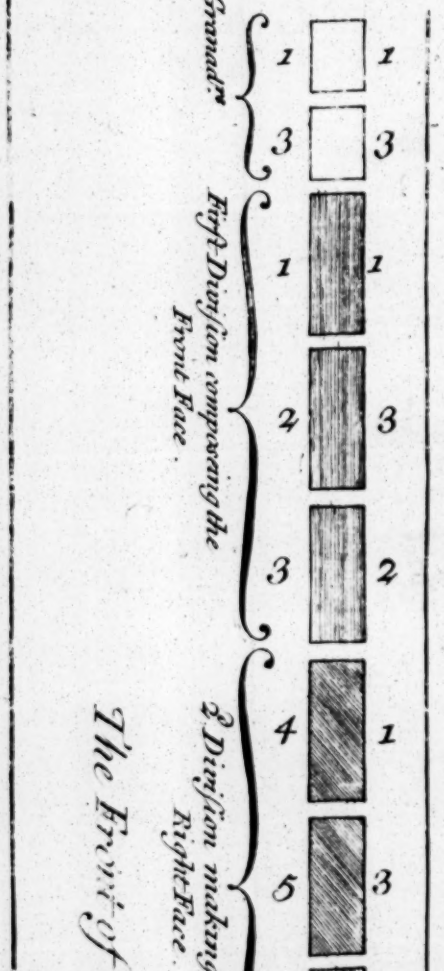
The first Plan being calculated for a Regiment consisti of 600 Men, lest it should be reduced to about 500, I ha annex'd a second Plan accordingly, told off into 12 Platoo besides Granadiers; the Forming of which into a Squa and the Reducing it again into Battalion, is to be perfor in the same manner as at first; with this Difference on that as each Face is compos'd but of three Platoons, th must be two Platoons taken from one Flank, and one P toon from the other to Form the Rear Face; which D ference is so small, that I believe it will not be objec against in Service, whatever it may in Exercise.

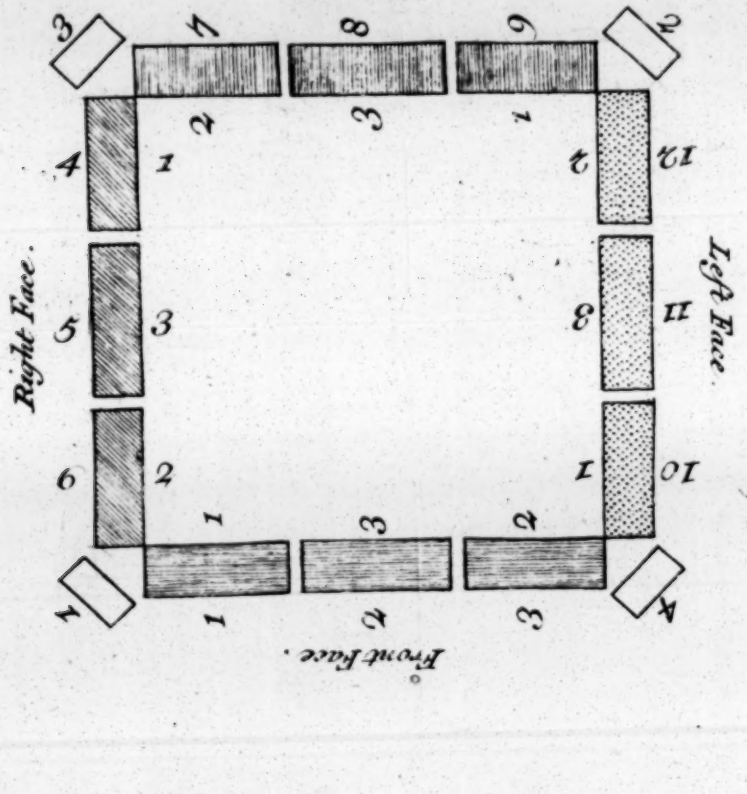
When the Strength of the Battalion will allow of it, telling off the Platoons according to the first Plan is wh would recommend, as being the most perfect both for Firings in Battalion and in the Square, and for the Regul ty and Ease in forming the Square. If the Regiment con of 600 Men, they may be told off into 18 Platoons, incl ing the 2 Platoons of Granadiers, two Platoons of wh will consist of 12 Files each, and the other 16 Platoons 11 Files each; so that by making of the two Platoons Granadiers 12 Files each, they will have, when they are t divided for the forming of the Square, a Platoon of 6 F for each Angle, which is as few as they ought to have for covering them.

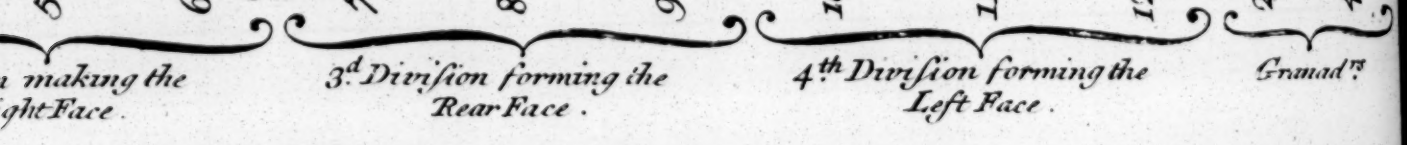
But when a Battalion consists of 500 Men, the Mode the second Plan may be follow'd, most of the Platoons which will consist of 12 Files; they may be divided into th Firings, containing 4 Platoons in each, and the Granad kept for the Reserve, which should be carefully preserv your Flanks are the least exposed to the Enemy's Attack And if you are under any Apprehension of the Enem Horse, it would be very proper to strengthen your Reser by adding the whole Front Rank of the Battalion to it, a only fire the two Rear Ranks of the three Firings by P toons.

The Manner of Forming the Square, as above descrid is the *Dutch* Way of performing it; the bare mentioning which

Plan 3.d of Forming the Square by Grand Divisions.







making the
ght Face.

3d Division forming the
Rear Face.

4th Division forming the
Left Face.

Grand Rs

ont of the Battalion

which, will recommend it infinitely more than all I am capable of ſaying of it. But as other People may not be prepoſſeſs'd in favour of it ſo much as I am, I ſhall therefore ſet down another Way of Forming the Square (and which is generally practis'd by the *Britiſh* Foot) by Diviſions; with ſome Remarks why I prefer the *Dutch* Way to this; after which I ſhall give Directions for the Firing and Marching in the Square.

ARTICLE III.

Manner of Forming the Square by 4 Grand-Diviſions.

When the Square is to be Form'd by 4 Grand-Diviſions without having gone thro' any Part of the Platoon Firing, they are to proceed in the following Manner.

The Rear Half Files of the Battalion muſt be doubled to the Left; after that the Granadiers muſt be divided on the Right and Left, and then ſub-divided for the Angles.

The Battalion muſt be divided into four Grand-Diviſions, and each Grand-Diviſion ſub-divided into three Platoons each. See the annex'd Plan, where the ſaid is told off, as here deſcrib'd.

The Captains, Subalterns and Serjeants are to be divided equally on the 4 Grand-Diviſions; after which there muſt be an Officer appointed to command each Platoon, who continues in the Front; but the remaining Part of the Officers are to fall immediately into the Rear of their ſeveral Grand-Diviſions.

When the Diviſions are told off, and the Officers appointed to them, as above directed, the Major is to proceed to the Words of Command for the Forming of the Square, which are the ſame as in the other Way of doing it.

I. *Form the Square.*

At this Word of Command, the firſt Grand-Diviſion and two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, Face to the Right and Left inwards, thus: the Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 1, and the firſt Grand-Diviſion face to the Left, and the Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 4, faces to the Right.

The other three Grand-Diviſions, and the two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 2, and 3, face, at the ſame time, to the Right-about.

The Officers and Serjeants face as the ſeveral Diviſions do on which they are poſted.

The Drummers on the Flanks fall in the Rear of the firſt and fourth Grand-Diviſions, and then face as they do; but the Center-Diviſion of Drummers falls in between the Enſigns with the Colours and the Front Rank of the ſeventh Platoon of the Battalion, being one of thoſe which compoſe the Rear Face. After this the Major proceeds.

II. *March.*

After the Word of Command, the Whole are to march and form the Square, thus.

The ſecond and fourth Grand-Diviſions wheel inward a Quarter of the Circle, and form the Right and Left Faces of the Square.

The third Grand-Diviſion, with the Colonel, Lieutenant Colonel, Enſigns with the Colours, and the third Diviſion of Drummers, march in a ſtraight Line to the Rear, 'till they come to the extreme Flanks of the Right and Left Faces, and then ſtand, which third Grand-Diviſion form the Rear Face of the Square.

The firſt Grand-Diviſion marches to the Left, till they come into the Ground where the third Grand-Diviſion ſtood, and then ſtand, being to form the Front Face of the Square.

The Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 2, wheels with the Left Face, and ſtands when they do, being to cover the Angle.

The Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 3, marches to the Right Flank of the Right Face, and ſtands, being to cover that Angle.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, being faced inwards, march in a direct Line to the Flanks of the Front Face, and then ſtand, being to cover the Front Angles.

When the ſeveral Grand-Diviſions and Platoons of Granadiers have march'd as above directed, they will appear in the following Poſition.

The firſt Grand-Diviſion, compoſing the Front Face of the Square, ſtand faced to the Left.

The third Grand-Diviſion, forming the Rear Face, face to the Rear.

The ſecond and fourth Grand-Diviſions, which form the Right and Left Faces of the Square, face into the Square.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, being to cover the Front Angles, face to the Right and Left inwards.

The two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 2, and 3, being to cover the Rear Angles, face as the Right and Left Faces do.

The Officers and Serjeants face as their reſpective Divi-ions do.

The Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, Enſigns with the Co-ours and Drummers, having march'd as before directed, all into the Square.

As ſoon as they have come to their Ground and ſtand, the Major proceeds to the third and laſt Word of Command.

III *Face Square.*

At this Word of Command, the Whole face outward, us.

The Front Face going to the Right, and the Right and eft Faces to the Left-about, the two Platoons of Grana-ers, Num. 1, and 4, face to their proper Front, and the o Platoons, Num, 2, and 3, face to the Left-about, im-ediately after which the four Platoons of Granadiers heel back and cover their ſeveral Angles.

The Officers, Serjeants, and Drummers face as their Di-ions do, and the Drum-Major is to divide the Drummers ually in the Rear of each Face.

The Officers, who were poſted in the Rear of the Third rand-Diviſion, are to move immediately into the Square; d the Officers, who were appointed to command the Pla-ons of that Diviſion, are to move out, the Rear Rank of at Face becoming then the Front.

As ſoon as they have faced Square, the Major and Adju-nt march into the Square, no Officer remaining without, t thoſe who command the Platoons.

The Firings in this are the ſame as that of the Second Plan, y being calculated for the ſame Number of Men; but if Battalion conſiſt of Six Hundred Men, the Grand-iviſions may be divided into Four Platoons each, as the ſt Plan is, and yet keep to the forming the Square by rand-Diviſion.

I ſhall now ſhew how it is to be Reduced into Battalion.

I. *From the Square, Form the Battalion.*

At this Word of Command, the whole being Faced Square, the Front Face, or firſt Grand-Diviſion, faces to the Right; the Rear Face, or third Grand-Diviſion, faces to the Left-about; the Two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 1, and 4, covering the Front-Angles, Wheel towards their proper Front, and when they come in a Line with the Front-Face they are to face to the Right and Left outward; the Two Platoons of Granadiers, Num. 2, and 3, covering the Rear-Angles, Wheel towards their proper Front, 'till they come in a Line with the Right and Left Faces, or ſecond and fourth Grand-Diviſions, and then ſtand. The Officers face with their Diviſions.

II. *March.*

At this the Whole March and Form the Battalion, thus.

The Front Face and the firſt Platoon of Granadiers March in a direct Line to the Right, and as ſoon as they have got to the Right of the Right Face, they are to ſtand; only the firſt Platoon of Granadiers is to march a little further, that the third Platoon of Granadiers may have Room to Form between them and the Right of the firſt Grand-Diviſion.

The Right and Left Faces Wheel towards their proper Front a Quarter of the Circle, and then ſtand, the ſecond Platoon of Granadiers Wheeling upon the Flank of the Left Face, or fourth Grand-Diviſion.

The third Platoon of Granadiers Marches to the Right and Forms between the firſt Platoon of Granadiers and the Right of the Battalion.

The fourth Platoon of Granadiers Marches in a ſtraight Line to the Left, and when they have left Room enough for the Left Face and ſecond Platoon of Granadiers to Form in they are to ſtand.

The Rear Face, or third Grand-Diviſion, with the Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Enſigns with the Colours March ſtraight forward to the Front, and when they come between the ſecond and fourth Grand-Diviſions and Dreſs in a Line with them, they are to ſtand.

As ſoon as they have all got into their proper Poſts, as before, the Major proceeds.

III. *Halt*

III. *Halt.*

At this Word of Command, they all face to their proper Front, thus. The firſt Platoon of Granadiers and the firſt Grand-Diviſion face to the Left, and the fourth Platoon of Granadiers to the Right; after which the Officers in the Rear may be order'd into the Front, and the Drummers to their former Poſts; which compleats the Reduction of the Square into Battalion.

The only thing that is irregular in the Forming of the Square in this manner, is in the third Grand-Diviſion, by the Rear Rank becoming the Front, and the Front-Rank the Rear, when the Square is form'd, and the Officers in the Front and Rear changing of their Poſts; but this Piece of Irregularity is of no great Conſequence upon Service, ſince the Men in the Rear Rank may be as good as thoſe in the Front, and the Officers may change in a Moment.

But the greateſt Fault conſiſts in there being no Front preſerv'd while the Square is Forming, the Whole being in Motion at the ſame time, which may be of dangerous Conſequence if the enemy's Horſe ſhould be near.

Whereas the *Dutch* Manner of Forming the Square, as explain'd in the ſecond Article, has not the Irregularity above-mention'd, nor the Danger, while it is Forming, for Want of a Front to the Enemy. Beſides it may be done quicker, and with as much Eaſe, by practiſing of it at Exerciſe, as that by Grand-Diviſions: However, thoſe who don't approve of the *Dutch* Way, (which I imagine will be but very few) may follow the other; but before they determine abſolutely, it will be but fair to try both.

I ſhall give Directions in the following Article, how they are to Fire and March in the Square at Exerciſe, ſince the doing of it upon Action muſt depend on the Manner you are attack'd, in which the Commanding Officer muſt be directed by his own Judgment and Experience.

ARTICLE IV.

Directions for Marching and Firing in the Square.

The Square being form'd, and the Platoons of each Face divided into their proper Firings, as deſcrib'd by the different Plans

Plans in the foregoing Article, they are to proceed to the Firings.

I ſhall begin with Directions for that of the firſt Plan, containing four Firings, which is one more than they are generally told off in, either in Battalion or in the Square, which renders it, in my Opinion, the more perfect, as being of greater Service than when they are divided into three.

For when they are Told off into three Firings, whether in Battalion, or in the Square, the entire Front-rank is commonly kept for the Reſerve, and the two Rear-ranks only fired by Platoons; ſo that in Reality there are four Firings, without being call'd ſo: Tho', I humbly conceive, the Effect won't be the ſame; from the Obſervation I made on the Firing by Ranks in the fifth Article of the preceding Chapter; as alſo in the firſt Article of this on reſerving the Front-rank.

Thoſe who differ with me on this Head, may divide the Square into three Firings, according to the Method of the ſecond Plan; but as the four Firings will appear better in the Exerciſe, by having one upon the marching towards each Front, I will purſue that Scheme, and give the neceſſary Directions accordingly.

The Firings may be perform'd ſtanding, or by making a Movement before each Firing.

The four Platoons of Granadiers on the Angles, and the Platoons on the Right of each Face, Num. 1, on the Inſide, belong to the firſt Firing; ſo that when the Platoons of the firſt Firing are order'd to Make ready, the four Platoons of Granadiers, and the four Platoons of the Square, Num. 1, do it together.

The ſecond Firing conſiſts of the third Platoons from the Right of each Face, Num. 2, on the Inſide.

The third Firing conſiſts of the ſecond Platoons from the Right of each Face, Num. 3, on the Inſide.

The fourth conſiſts of the Left Platoons of each Face, Num. 4, on the Inſide.

When you would go through the Firings both Standing and Marching, it would be proper to vary them from one another.

Thoſe Standing, to be perform'd in their Order; and thoſe Marching together; as is explain'd in the third Article of the ſixth Chapter.

But leſt Firing in their Order in the Square ſhould not be thoroughly comprehended by the Directions in the Article above-

above-mentioned, we ſhall here explain how it is to be perform'd.

When the Granadiers are to fire in their Order, the firſt Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 1, covering the Angle on the Right of the Front Face, fires firſt. The Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 2, on the Right of the Rear Face, fires next. The Granadiers, Num. 3, on the Right of the Right Face, fire the third. The Granadiers, Num. 4, on the Right of the Left Face, fire laſt.

When the Platoons of the Square are to fire in their Order, if it is thoſe of the firſt Firing, they are to make ready when the Granadiers do; and as ſoon as the fourth Platoon of Granadiers has fired, the Platoon, Num. 1, of the Front Face fires; then the Platoon, Num. 1, of the Rear Face fires next; after that the Platoon, Num. 1, of the Right Face; and laſtly the Platoon, Num. 1, of the Left Face.

The Platoons of the other Firings are to obſerve the ſame Method, when they are to fire in their Order, by beginning with that in the Front Face; ſecondly, that of the Rear Face; thirdly, the Right Face; and fourthly, the Left Face.

The firſt Firing conſiſts of the four Platoons of Granadiers, and the four Platoons of the Square, Num. 1, on the Inſide.

The other three Firings conſiſt of four Platoons each, one in each Face of the Square. See how they are diſpos'd of by the Plan, the Numbers on the Inſide ſhewing which Firing they belong to.

How the Square is to Fire, Standing.

At the Beating of the Preparative, the Platoons of the firſt Firing make ready, and as ſoon as the four Platoons of Granadiers come to their Recover, and cock their Firelocks, they are to march forward three Paces, then Kneel and Lock; but the four Platoons of the Square, Num. 1, who are of the firſt Firing, ſtand with Recover'd Arms, being to march forward three Paces when the Granadiers are order'd to Preſent, to open a Paſſage for them to retire into the Square when they have fired; and as ſoon as the Granadiers have got into the Square, the Platoons are to fall back into their Place, and immediately Kneel and Lock.

When the Platoons have made ready, as before directed, the Major orders a Flam; at which the Officer who commands the firſt Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 1, gives the Words,

Words, *Preſent* and *Fire*; after which they are to Recover their Arms, face to the Right-about, march into the Square, then halt and face the Angle, and immediately load and ſhoulder.

As ſoon as the firſt Platoon of Granadiers has fired, the Officer commanding the ſecond Platoon of Granadiers is to order his to do the ſame, and then march into the Square. After that the third Platoon of Granadiers is to fire, and then the fourth.

When the four Platoons of Granadiers have fired, the Platoons of the Square, of the firſt Firing, are to fire in their Order. They are to be very exact in moving forward three Paces when the Word *Preſent* is given to the Platoon of Granadiers which covers their Angle; and, when they have march'd into the Square, to fall back into their Places, and immediately Kneel and Lock.

After the firſt Firing is over, a Preparative is to be beat for the Platoons of the ſecond Firing to make ready; then a Flam for them to Fire, which they are to do in their Order.

The third and fourth Firings are to be performed in the ſame Manner.

As ſoon as the Platoons have fired, they are immediately to Load and Shoulder.

After the laſt Firing is over, the Platoons on the Right of each Face, Num. 1, are to march forward three Paces, to open a Paſſage for the Granadiers to march out of the Square, and Form on the Angles as before; and as ſoon as the Granadiers are marched out, they are to fall back into their Places. This may be deferr'd 'till the Platoons of the firſt Firing are order'd to make Ready a ſecond time; in which Caſe, as ſoon as they have made Ready, the Platoons of the Square, Num. 1, are to march forward three Paces, and ſtand there with Recover'd Arms till the Granadiers have marched out, fir'd, and return'd again into the Square, after which they are to fall back into their Places, Kneel, Lock and Fire: However, I ſhall follow the firſt of theſe two Methods, and give Directions accordingly.

They having gone thro' the Firings in the Square Standing, I ſhall now ſhew how they are to perform it Marching.

Directions for the Square to March.

The Drummers being divided in the Rear of each Face of the Square, the Major orders the Square to be ready to face and

and march towards that Front on which the Drummers there poſted ſhall beat a March; and as ſoon as they ceaſe beating, they are to Halt and face Square.

As there are four Firings told off in the Plan of this Square, they ſhould make a Movement towards each Front before each Firing, by marching 20 or 30 Paces at a time, or more or leſs, as the Commanding Officer ſhall think proper, or the Ground admit of it.

Before we proceed further, it will be neceſſary to give Directions how the ſeveral Parts of the Square are to Face and March, on the Drummers beating on the different Fronts.

When the Diviſion of Drummers in the Rear of the Front Face are order'd to beat a March, the Whole Square is to face and march towards the Front, thus: The Rear Face comes to the Right-about on their Left Heels; the Right Face goes to the Left on their Right Heels; the Left Face to the Right on their Left Heels, and the 4 Platoons of Granadiers Wheel an eighth Part of the Circle towards that Front. All the Officers, Serjeants, and Drummers, are to face as thoſe Parts do on which they are poſted.

As ſoon as they have faced, as above directed, they are all to ſtep forward together, and march in that Order, without opening or cloſing their Ranks or Files, very ſlow towards the ſaid Front as long as the March is beat, and when the Drummers are order'd to ceaſe, they are then to Halt and face Square, thus:

The Rear Face goes to the Left-about on their Left Heels.
The Right Face to the Right on their Right Heels.
The Left Face to the Left on their Left Heels; and
The 4 Platoons of Granadiers Wheel back and cover their Angles.

When the Diviſion of Drummers in the Rear of the Rear Face beats a March, they are all to Face and March towards that Front, thus:

The Platoons of Granadiers Wheel, as before, towards that Front.
The Front Face goes to the Right-about on their Left Heels.
The Right Face faces to the Right on their Left Heels.
The Left Face faces to the Left on their Right Heels.

After

After which, they are all to March towards the Rear Front, as long as the March continues beating, and when it ceaſes they are to face Square, and Stand, thus:

The Granadiers are to Wheel back and cover their Angles.
The Front Face goes to the Left-about on their Left Heels.
The Right Face to the Left on their Left Heels; and
The Left Face to the Right on their Right Heels.

On the beating of a March in the Rear of the Right Face, they are all to Face and March towards that Front.

The Granadiers are to Wheel towards that Front.
The Left Face goes to the Right-about on their Left Heels.
The Front Face to the Right on their Left Heels; and
The Rear Face to the Left on their Right Heels.

As ſoon as the March ceaſes, they are all to Face Square.

The Granadiers Wheel back and cover their Angles.
The Left Face goes to the Left-about on their Left Heels.
The Front Face to the Left on their Left Heels; and
The Rear Face to the Right on their Right Heels.

On the beating of a March in the Rear of the Left Face they are all to Face and March towards that Front.

The Granadiers Wheel towards that Front.
The Right Face goes to the Right-about on their Left Heels.
The Front Face to the Left on their Right Heels; and
The Rear Face to the Right on their Left Heels.

When the March ceaſes, they are all to Face Square.

The Granadiers Wheel back and cover their Angles.
The Right Face goes to the Left-about on their Left Heels.
The Front Face to the Right on their Right Heels; and
The Rear Face to the Left on their Left Heels.

The March is to be beat only by that Diviſion of Drummers who are poſted in the Rear of that Face towards whose Front you intend to march; which finiſhes the Direction how

how the ſeveral Parts of the Square are to face and march towards each of the four Fronts.

The Square being to march before each Firing, in order to vary it from that Standing, the Platoons of each Firing ſhould fire together; if ſo, the Major muſt acquaint them with it, and give the Words of Command himſelf; after which he proceeds in the following Manner:

Drummers of the Front Face, beat a March.

On the Drummers beating the March, the whole Square faces, as above directed, and march very ſlow towards the Front of the Front Face; and when they have march'd as far as ſhall be thought proper, he is to order the Drummers to ceaſe beating, at which all face Square and ſtand.

After this, he orders a Preparative; on which the 4 Platoons of Granadiers, and the 4 Platoons of the Square of the firſt Firing make Ready, and when they come to their Recover, the Granadiers are to advance three Paces, then Kneel and Lock; but thoſe of the Square ſtand with recover'd Arms 'till the Granadiers are order'd to *Preſent*, and then march forward three Paces, as before directed, 'till the Granadiers have fired and marched into the Square, after which they fall back into their Places, and Kneel and Lock.

As ſoon as the Granadiers have Kneel'd and Lock'd, the Major proceeds.

Platoons of the Granadiers, Preſent.——Fire.

As ſoon as the Granadiers have marched into the Square, and the Platoons of the firſt Firing fallen back, Kneel'd and Lock'd, the Major then goes on.

Platoons of the Firſt Firing, Preſent.——Fire.

The Granadiers and the Platoons of the Square of the firſt Firing may fire together, if the Commanding Officer thinks proper, by ordering thoſe of the Square to march forward three Paces at the ſame time with the Granadiers, and to kneel and Lock when they do; in which Caſe the Words of Command will be as follows:

Granadiers and Platoons of the Firſt Firing, Preſent.——Fire.

After the firſt Firing is over, the Major proceeds thus:

Drummers

Drummers of the Rear Face, beat a March.

At this the Whole Square face and march towards the Front of the Rear Face; and when they have got on their former Ground, the Drummers ſhould be order'd to ceaſe, on which they face Square. Then he orders a Preparative for the Platoons of the ſecond Firing to make Ready, Kneel and Lock, and then proceeds thus:

Platoons of the Second Firing, Preſent.——Fire.

As ſoon as the ſecond Firing is over, the Major goes on

Drummers of the Right Face, beat a March.

The Square, at this, is to face and march towards the Front of the Right Face; and when the Drummers are or der'd to ceaſe, they are all to face Square: After which a Preparative for the Platoons of the third Firing to make Ready; then the Major gives the Words of Command.

Platoons of the Third Firing, Preſent.——Fire.

When the third Firing is over, the Major orders next,

Drummers of the Left Face, beat a March.

On which the Square is to face and march towards the Front of the Left Face; and when the Square is come to the Ground on which they firſt form'd, or pretty near it, the Drummers ſhould be order'd to ceaſe Beating, upon which they are all to face Square. After that a Prepara tive for the Platoons of the Fourth Firing to make Ready; then the Major ſays,

Platoons of the Fourth Firing, Preſent.——Fire.

As ſoon as the fourth Firing is over, the Granadiers are to march out of the Square, and form on the Angles, as before directed in that Part where they fire Standing.

When the Platoons of each Firing have fired, they are to Load in marching, and then Shoulder.

This

This completes the ſeveral Movements of the Square, with a Firing after each; which Firings may be varied, if the Commanding Officer thinks proper, from the foregoing, after this manner:

After the firſt Movement, the whole Front Face, with the Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 1, may be order'd to fire together.

After the ſecond Movement, the Rear Face, with the Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 2, fire together.

After the third Movement, the Right Face, with the Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 3, fire together.

After the fourth Movement, the Left Face, with the Platoon of Granadiers, Num. 4, fire together.

This Manner of Firing may appear very well in the Exerciſe; but would prove too dangerous in Service; ſince there would be an entire Front for ſome time, without any Fire to defend themſelves: Therefore I only mention it as proper for the Exerciſe, to vary it from the other.

They may likewiſe fire by Ranks, as they do in Battalion, by ordering the Whole to make ready together, then begin with the Rear-Rank of the whole Square, and the Rear-Rank of the Granadiers; after that the Center-Rank of the Whole, and laſtly the Front-Rank.

After they have gone through the different Firings of the Square, both ſtanding and marching, they may finiſh with a Fire of the whole Square, which may be done where they ſtand, or after a Movement towards their proper Front.

As ſoon as this Fire is over, the Square ſhould be reduced into Battalion; the Officers in the Rear ordered to the Front, and to take their Poſts in Battalion; the Granadiers on the Left order'd to their Right; their Bayonets unfixed, and the Rear Half-Files to the Right, as they were; which does not only conclude this Chapter, but alſo the Directions for the different Firings of the Foot in every Part of the Service: But, as what I have hitherto mentioned is only the Rudiments of Diſcipline, I ſhall endeavour to raiſe the Subject, by treating on ſuch Parts of the Service, as will give all thoſe who are deſirous to know it, a general Notion of their Duty, on different Occaſions.

CHAP. VIII.

Conſiſting of General Rules for the Marching of a Regiment of Foot, or a Detachment of Men, where there is a Poſſibility of their being Attacked by the Enemy.

ARTICLE I.

THERE is not any thing in which an Officer ſhews the Want of Conduct ſo much, as in ſuffering himſelf to be ſurpriz'd, either upon his Poſt, or in marching with a Body of Men under his Command, without being prepared to make a proper Defence, and by not having taken the neceſſary Precautions to prevent it.

When an Officer has had the Misfortune of being Beat, his Honour won't ſuffer by it, provided he has done his Duty, and acted like a Soldier. But if he is ſurprized by neglecting the common Methods uſed to prevent it, his Character is hardly Retrievable, unleſs it proceeds from his Want of Experience; and even in that Caſe he will find it very difficult.

An Officer, who is detached with a Body of Men, ought to conſider, that the Lives of thoſe under his Command depend in a great meaſure on his Prudence; and if he has any important Poſt committed to his Charge, the Lives of many more may follow.

This Conſideration alone, without mentioning the Loſs of Reputation, is ſufficient, in my Opinion, to make us apply our ſelves to our Duty with a more than common Zeal, that we may not be ignorant in what relates to our Profeſſion, when our King and Country has an Occaſion for our Service.

The Military Profeſſion, has, in all Ages, been eſteemed the moſt Honourable, from the Danger that attends it. The Motives that lead Mankind to it, muſt proceed from a Noble

Noble and Generous Inclination, ſince they ſacrifice their Eaſe, and their Lives, in the Defence of their Country.

To anſwer this Glorious End, we ſhould endeavour at the Knowledge of our Calling, by a thorough Application to the Service.

The ſame Spirit that brings us into the Army ſhould make us apply ourſelves to the Study of the Military Art, the common Forms of which may be eaſily attain'd by a moderate Application, as well as Capacity: Neither is it below any Military Man, let his Birth be ever ſo Noble, to be knowing in the minute Parts of the Service. It will not cramp his Genius (as ſome have been pleaſed to ſay, in order, as I ſuppoſe, to excuſe their own Ignorance) but rather Aid and Aſſiſt it in great and daring Enterprizes.

Our great and warlike Neighbours the *Germans*, are ſo entirely prepoſſeſs'd in favour of this Opinion, that they oblige even their Youth of Quality to perform the Function of a Private Soldier, Corporal and Serjeant, that they may learn the Duty of each, before they have a Commiſſion: And ſure no Nation has produced greater Generals.

Our late Monarch, the Glorious King *William*, whoſe Military Capacity was Second to none, was perfectly knowing in the Small, as well as the Grand Detail of an Army. In viſiting the Out-poſts, he would frequently condeſcend to place the Centinels himſelf, and inſtruct the Officers how to do it. He was a ſtrict Obſerver of all the Parts of Diſcipline; and knew the Duty of every one in the Army, from the Higheſt to the Loweſt: And if ſo great a Prince thought it a neceſſary Qualification, I believe there will be hardly any one found of another Opinion.

I don't pretend to infer from the above Obſervations, that it is abſolutely neceſſary for our young Nobility and Gentry to paſs through thoſe little and ſervile Offices before they arrive at a Commiſſion; but I think it abſolutely neceſſary that they ſhould apply themſelves to the Service, as ſoon as they have one: For without they know the Duty of thoſe under their Command, how can they pretend to direct?

A Commiſſion, 'tis true, qualifies a Man for the Pay; but it muſt be Time and Experience, and a thorough Application to the Service, that entitles him to the Appellation of a Soldier.

He that makes himſelf Maſter of the Duty of thoſe below him, will the eaſier comprehend what is due to thoſe above him; and be a means to qualify him for a higher Poſt, and

do the duty of it with Honour and Credit when given him, with this Addition, that He was fit for the Poſt, and not, that the Poſt was fit for Him.

It is more commendable and praiſe-worthy to owe our Preferment to Merit than Favour. The Dependance on the latter, is the Reaſon why ſo many young Gentlemen neglect the former.

Money and powerful Relations will always procure them what they want; they have therefore no occaſion to apply themſelves to the Knowledge of their Duty. It is from this way of thinking that ſo many of them do ſo little Credit to their Poſts; not from the want of Genius, but Application.

I hope theſe few Obſervations won't be taken as a Reflection on the young Gentlemen who have come lately into the Army; but rather as an Admonition to avoid the Neglect complain'd of; my Deſign being purely to ſerve them, that they may be the better qualified to ſerve their Country when ſhe calls upon them.

ARTICLE II.

I ſhall now proceed to what was propoſed in this Chapter, the neceſſary Precautions proper to be taken in the marching of a Regiment, or a Detachment of Men, to prevent a Surprize, *&c.*

When a Regiment is to march through a Country, where there is a Poſſibility of meeting with the Enemy, the Commanding Officer ſhould leave nothing to Chance. Fortune may fail us, if we truſt too much to her; but a prudent Conduct never will. 'Tis true, we may be overpowered, and conquered, notwithſtanding all our Care; but never ſhamefully beat, if we act as we ought: And a Man may gain Reputation, tho' he is overcome.

The common Method of marching a Regiment is by Sub-Diviſions, and the Captains divided in the Front and Rear; but, I am of Opinion, that Form ſhould be broke through, where there is the leaſt Probability of Service, and that of marching by Platoons ſubſtituted in its Room, as deſcrib'd in the ſeventh Article, Chapter Six, on Street-Firing.

In this Caſe the Regiment will be ready to enter upon Action in whatever Shape it may be required, whether in Street-Firing, in Battalion, or in the Square: Whereas in that of marching by Sub-Diviſions, it will require ſome time after the

the Battalion is drawn up, to poſt the Officers to their Platoons.

But there is another Advantage, beſides that above-mentioned, by the Officers being divided to, and marching with the Platoons, which is, that the Men will march in greater Order by having the Eyes of ſo many more Officers on them, nor venture to leave their Ranks without Leave, for fear of being diſcovered. A Conſideration, I am ſure, of no ſmall Conſequence, ſince it will be the means to prevent a great many Men from being killed by the Country People, either in the Defence of their Goods, or out of Hatred to the Soldiers; or from their being taken by Partizan Parties, when they fall behind: But tho' they ſhould have the good Fortune to eſcape both, the Apprehenſion of being puniſhed, by quitting their Poſts contrary to Orders, too often induces them to deſert.

I believe I need not trouble myſelf in producing further Reaſons to ſupport my Opinion, thoſe already mentioned being, according to my Judgment, ſufficient to convince any Man of the Advantage it has over the other Method of marching by Sub-Diviſions.

The common Method uſed to prevent your being attack'd on the March before you have time to make a proper Defence, is, by having a Van and Rear-Guard, which Guards may be ſtronger or weaker, according to the Danger you may apprehend from the Enemy, or the Country you are to march through.

Thoſe Guards are generally commanded by Officers, and frequently by Captains. They ſhould never loſe ſight of the Regiment, or at leaſt be out of the hearing of the Drum; for which Reaſon there ſhould be a Drummer ordered to beat in the Rear-Platoon or Diviſion, as well as in the Front; but more particularly in Night-marches.

Before the Regiment marches from the Parade, or the Head of their Encampment, theſe Guards are to be Drawn out; and if your March is towards the Enemy, or that you apprehend more Danger in the Front than the Rear, your Van-Guard ſhould conſiſt of a Captain's Command, and the Rear-Guard only of a Subaltern's: However, this depends on the Diſcretion of the Commanding Officer.

As ſoon as theſe Guards are Form'd, the Officers who command them ſhould receive their Inſtructions from the Commanding Officer of the Regiment or Detachment. But as young Officers can have but a very imperfect Notion of

the Intent and Meaning of theſe Guards, without ſome further Inſight than barely the mentioning of them; I ſhall endeavour to give them a clear Idea of the Nature and Deſign of thoſe Guards, by ſetting down the Duty of each.

General Inſtructions to the Van-Guard.

The Van-Guard is to march before the Regiment. The Diſtance which they are to be advanced, cannot be abſolutely determin'd; ſince it muſt depend on the Nature of the Country you march through; ſo that in an incloſed Country it can hardly exceed two hundred Yards without loſing Sight of the Regiment, which they are by no means to do, unleſs they have Orders: And in an open or champain one, they ought not to be above three or four hundred Yards, leſt they ſhould be attack'd and cut off by a ſuperior Party, before the Regiment could come up to their Relief.

The Van-Guard is to reconnoitre, or view, every Place where any Number of Men can lie conceal'd, ſuch as Woods, Copſes, Ditches, hollow Ways, ſtraggling Houſes, or Villages, through which you are to march, or paſs near.

That the Regiment may not Halt upon every Occaſion of this Nature, the Officer who commands the Van-Guard muſt order a Serjeant, and 6 or 12 Men, to advance before him, but not to march out of his Sight, who are to reconnoitre all ſuſpected Places; and where there are more than one of thoſe Places to be looked into at a time, by having them both on the Right and Left of the Road, he is to order out another ſmall Party for that Purpoſe.

When there are any Woods or Villages which will require ſome time to view, the Officer muſt halt his Guard at ſome Diſtance from them, and remain there 'till his Advanc'd Parties have reconnoitred them thoroughly, and ſent him an Account that all is ſafe; after which he is to march on.

Upon every Halt of this kind, he is to ſend one to the commanding Officer of the Regiment to acquaint him with the Reaſon of his Halting; upon which he ſhould halt the Regiment as ſoon as they come in ſight of the Van-Guard; and when it marches again, the Regiment is to do ſo too.

The Reaſon for the Van-Guard's halting at ſome Diſtance from a Wood or Village 'till it is reconnoitred, is for fear of an Ambuſcade: for ſhould they march up too near before it is viewed, they might be drawn too far into the Snare to be able to extricate themſelves, and, by that means, draw the

Regiment

Regiment into the ſame Misfortune; whereas by Halting at ſome Diſtance, that Danger is avoided; at leaſt ſo far, that they cannot ſurprize you, by falling upon you unprepared, which is all that can be expected from an Officer.

The ſame Reaſon holds good for the Regiment's Halting, when the Van-Guard does.

When the Van-Guard diſcovers any Body of Men, it is to Halt, and the Officer is to ſend back immediately and acquaint the Commanding Officer, with it, and to know what particular Commands he has for him; and when he diſcovers any thing further, he is to do the ſame, whether it relates to their Numbers, Quality, (as Horſe or Foot) Movement and Diſpoſition, that he may take his Meaſures accordingly. Thus I have given as full an Account of the Duty of a Van-Guard as the Nature of the thing will admit of, or General Rules can direct.

General Inſtructions to a Rear-Guard.

The chief employment of a Rear-Guard is to take up all the Soldiers who ſhall fall behind the Regiment, and march them Priſoners, in order to their being puniſh'd, for leaving it; which but too many will do, without a great deal of Care, in order to Plunder or Marode

This Precaution is therefore abſolutely neceſſary; without which a great many Men may be loſt, and the Country ſuffer extremely, by being left to the Diſcretion of thoſe Gentlemen.

The Officer commanding the Rear-Guard, muſt therefore be very diligent, in examining every Place in which the Soldiers can hide themſelves, to prevent theſe Diſorders.

As the Rear-Guard is not to be at any great Diſtance from the Regiment, it will likewiſe prove a Security, in preventing their being fallen upon in the Rear, before they have Notice to prepare for their Defence: For the Moment that any Troops appear in the Rear, the Officer of that Guard muſt ſend and acquaint the Commanding Officer with it, that he may have Time to make a Diſpoſition ſuitable to the Occaſion; to gain which, the Officer of the Rear-Guard is to oppoſe them in the beſt Manner he can; but if the Superiority of the Enemy obliges him to give way before he can receive further Orders from the Commanding Officer, he muſt endeavour to join the Regiment by a ſlow and regular Retreat, in making a Stand at every Spot of Ground

that

that can be diſputed. If he finds it impracticable for him to join the Regiment, by his Retreat being cut off, he muſt endeavour to gain the neareſt Place of Security, whether Incloſures, Woods, Hollow-ways, Moraſſes, Villages or Towns, in order to ſave himſelf and Party; but this ſhould not be attempted while there are any Hopes left of his putting a Stop to the Enemy, or his joining the Regiment, ſince it will be weakened by his going off.

ARTICLE III.

Having explained, in the foregoing Article, the Nature and Deſign of the Van and Rear-Guards, I ſhall now proceed to what relates to the Body of the Regiment, or Detachment, and in what manner the Commanding Officer is to conduct himſelf for the Security of the Whole.

A good deal of Care and Judgment is required in the Marching of a Regiment in good Order, and to prevent its running out into too great a Length.

The Officers on the ſeveral Platoons, or Diviſions, muſt endeavour to avoid it, by keeping up their Diviſions to a proper Diſtance from thoſe before them; for if they once ſuffer the Diviſion in the Front to march any conſiderable Diſtance from them, they will not only fatigue their Men, but find it a very difficult Matter to regain the Ground ſo loſt; and if it proves ſo to one Diviſion, it will be much more difficult to thoſe in the Rear: For which Reaſon, the Officers can't be too exact in the Marching of their Diviſions, and the keeping of their Ranks to their true Diſtance, particularly in incloſed Countries, where the Roads are generally narrow; but if the Officers neglect this Precaution, the Regiment may run into ſuch a Length, that the Front may be attack'd and beat, before the Rear can be brought up to ſuſtain them. But leſt the Officers ſhould fail in this Part of their Duty, the Commanding Officer ſhould order the Major and Adjutant to Halt by turns every Half Hour, to ſee the Regiment paſs by, and bring him an Account in what Order they find it, that he may direct his March, by moving faſter or ſlower, acording to the Report made him.

When the Regiment is to paſs a Defile, where a Diviſion can't march entire, but are obliged to Rank off, that is, to paſs by Half or Quarter Ranks, the Officer who leads the firſt Diviſion ſhould Halt, or march extream ſlow after he has paſs'd it, 'till he has an Account that they are all over and

and come up to their proper Diſtance, upon which Notice he is to march on as before.

The Officers muſt make the Men of their reſpective Diviſions paſs the Defile as faſt as they can without Loſs of Time, and fall into their Ranks the Moment they are over; and when their Diviſions are form'd, they muſt march them as quick as poſſible, without running, 'till they join thoſe in their Front, and then march as they do.

If the above Directions are obſerved, the Regiment will not only march more ſecure, but alſo quicker, and with leſs Fatigue to the Men; but if they are neglected, it will be impoſſible for the Rear Diviſions to keep up, ſo that in Half a Day's March the Regiment may extend its ſelf from Front to Rear a Mile or two, which may prove of dangerous Conſequence.

Particular Care ſhould be taken that the Soldiers don't faſten the Tent-Poles to their Firelocks, (which is frequently done for the Eaſe of carrying them) leſt they ſhould be attack'd before they have time to untie them, and by that means rendered uſeleſs; a fatal Example of which, and of neglecting the above Precautions, I believe, will not be thought improper to be here inſerted.

A Regiment of Foot, conſiſting of above 600 Men, being order'd to march from one Quarter to another, the Commanding Officer imagined, from the Diſtance of the Enemy's Frontier Garriſons which was at leaſt ten Leagues, that he had nothing to apprehend, and therefore neglected the common Precautions uſually taken, in ordering his Van-Guard to examine all ſuſpected Places where Horſe might lye conceal'd. Beſides, he took no Care in the keeping up the Diviſions, but ſuffered the Regiment to run into a Train of a Mile long, in a very ſhort Time.

About half Way lay a little Wood, cloſe to the Road where the Regiment was to march, in which a famous Partizan with eighty Horſe lay conceal'd; which Wood the Van-Guard paſs'd without examining; and as ſoon as the Center of the Regiment came oppoſite to the Wood, the Partizan with the 80 Horſe ruſh'd out upon them, and after killing about 50 Men and Wounding as many more, the reſt threw down their Arms and ſurrender'd themſelves Priſoners: The Men, having their Tent-Poles faſtened to their Firelocks could make little or no Reſiſtance. Beſides, their Marching in a ſtraggling manner made the Conqueſt eaſy, which the Surprize did not a little contribute, by making

the

the Number of the Enemy appear infinitely more than the
were.

The Officer who commanded the Rear-Gard hearing th
Fire in the Front, and being about Half a Mile in the Rea
had time to put his Men in Order (which with his own
and thoſe he had pick'd up, amounted to 50) and ſtand upo
his Defence: And notwithſtanding the Diſaſter which ha
pen'd to the Regiment, and ſome Attempts to take him, h
ſaved both himſelf and Party, and retired back to the Tow
in good Order.

I would not have the World imagine, that I mention th
Affair, in order to reflect on the Memory of the Gentlem
who commanded the Regiment; but by way of Precauti
to others: For he was known to be a brave Man, and
very good Officer. His preſuming too far on his Safe
from the Enemy being at ſuch a Diſtance, occaſion'd t
Infatuation with which he was then ſeized, (for I can cal
nothing elſe, ſince it did not proceed from Ignorance) t
Effect of which plunged both him and the Regiment in
that Misfortune. The Diſgrace of being ſurpriz'd and tak
by a Handful of Men lay ſo near his Heart, that it put
End to his Life in a few Years; and tho' the World fa
gave him, from the Knowledge they had of his good Qu
ties, yet he could never forgive himſelf.

The above Misfortune is ſufficient to convince us that
ought not to ſlight or neglect our Duty, particularly, wh
the Lives and Safety of thoſe under our Command dep
on our Conduct.

To have the Lives of Men loſt by our Neglect, m
touch our Breaſt with unſpeakable Grief, unleſs we are v
of Humanity.

But how can we anſwer it to our King and Country? t
ſhould they, like indulgent Parents, paſs it over, how c
we reconcile it to our ſelves? The Thoughts of it will ſti
us with Remorſe, and imbitter our Lives to ſuch a Degree
to become a burthen to us. Such was the Caſe, as I was i
form'd, and which I am apt to believe from the go
Character he bore, of the unfortunate Gentleman bef
mentioned.

Had the common Precautions been obſerv'd, without c
rying of it to a Nicety, that Misfortune could not have h
p en'd, tho' the Enemy's Horſe had been of an equal Nu
b er with the Regiment: but, by the foremention'd Negle
t hat trifling, that inconſiderable Body made a bold Puſh,

ea

arried their Point; which redounded very much to their Honour, and the Diſgrace of the others.

We may draw Advantages from the Misfortunes of others, if we reflect juſtly on them. It is with that View purely the above Caſe was mention'd, and no other. Let us therefore avoid falling into the ſame Snare, by acting with Caution when we are intruſted with a Command; and tho' we can't be certain of Succeſs, with all our Care and diligence, it is a great Step towards it: For if we take proper Meaſures, our Failing will then be attributed to the Chance of War; and we may be unfortunate, tho' we don't deſerve to be ſo.

I will end theſe Reflections, and this Article, with a *French* Maxim; *La Mefiance eſt la Mere de Seureté. Diſtruſt is the Mother of Security.*

ARTICLE IV.

When a Regiment, or Detachment, marches through an inclos'd or Woody Country, the Danger which they are to apprehend muſt be from Foot, and not Horſe; and leſt a Partizan Party ſhould eſcape the Diſcovery of the Vanguard, it would be proper to have ſmall Parties, commanded by Serjeants, marching on the Flanks of the Battalion, with Orders to examine all the Hedges, Ditches and Copſes which lie near the Road, thoſe being the Places in which they generally conceal themſelves: and though the Danger from ſuch Parties cannot be very conſiderable, yet the neglecting them may occaſion you the Loſs of all your Staggers, your Baggage, and perhaps your Rear-Guard; Conſiderations, in my Opinion, of too much Weight to be ſlighted.

The Parties on the Flanks muſt by no means go too far from the Regiment, for fear of being cut off by the Enemies ſtopping behind them; for which Reaſon they muſt be very circumſpect in their examining all Suſpected Places, taking care to leave none behind them which they have not look'd to, that their Retreat may not be intercepted. Neither muſt they venture too raſhly into a Thicket or Copſe, leſt they fall into their Hands before they are aware of them, and by that means be taken Priſoners without being able to make a proper Defence, 'till reliev'd by the Regiment.

Without theſe Precautions your Parties may be taken within a hundred Yards of the Battalion, in an inclos'd or Woody Country, or have their Retreat cut off by the Enemy getting

getting between them and the Regiment. When this is the Caſe, they ſhould give Notice by the Firing off of a Piece or two, that Relief may be ſent them, and then make all the Reſiſtance poſſible 'till it comes, and not ſurrender upon any Terms, but defend themſelves to the laſt Man.

When this happens, it would be very proper to ſuſtain them immediately, by Detaching the Granadiers, or a Platoon or two from that Part of the Battalion which lies neareſt, but with poſitive Orders not to engage too raſhly, for fear of being drawn into an Ambuſcade, and only endeavour to reſcue their own Men, without attempting any thing further 'till they receive freſh Orders from the Commanding Officer how they are to proceed: For the uſual Decoy by which People are drawn into an Ambuſcade is, by laying of ſmall Parties ſome Diſtance from the Place where the Body lies conceal'd, which, at your Approach, ſhew as if they were frighten'd and retire with Precipitation before you, in hopes to draw you into the Trap; but when the Officers ſo detached, have effected what they were ſent for, that of Diſengaging their own Men, they ought to purſue it no further, without freſh Orders from the Commanding Officer; otherwiſe, they may be engaged ſo far, that the Commanding Officer ſhall find himſelf under a Neceſſity to ſuſtain them with the Whole, and by that means be drawn into an Engagement before he has throughly conſidered whether it was proper or not.

Young Officers are but too apt to commit theſe Miſtakes by exceeding their Orders; being hurried on, by the Heat and Impetuoſity of their Temper, to do ſomething that is Great and Noble, without Conſidering the Conſequences that may attend it. I own it is an Error on the right Side; but 'tis ſtill an Error: for Orders are, for the moſt Part, Poſitive, and leave us no Room to Act according to our Inclination; a Reſtraint that proves rather indulgent than hard in Caſes of Danger, into which Youth would precipitate themſelves and others, were it not check'd by the cool Reaſon of Men of Experience. Let us therefore be ſubſervient to the Commands of our Superiors, and ſubmit to their Judgment in all Things relating to the Service. We ſhall gain Honour and Reputation enough, if we adhere ſtrictly to our Orders; but Diſgrace may attend the Exceeding of them, as well as the falling Short; the one, however, is more excuſable than the other, tho' the Conſequences may prove as fatal, ſince it proceeds from a miſtaken Zeal, but the other from the Want of Courage. To blame a Man for want of Courage when Na-

tur

re has not beſtow'd it on him, is not only hard, but unjuſt; t a Man that continues in the Service when he knows mſelf defective in that Point, betrays both his King and ountry, and therefore merits the ſevereſt Puniſhment.

As ſoon as the Advanc'd Parties diſcover any Troops, ey are to acquaint the Commanding Officer immediately ith it, and whether they appear to be Horſe or Foot, hat Number, and which Way they were marching; and from time to time, in Caſe they diſcover any thing fur- er. Upon ſuch a Diſcovery, the Advanc'd Parties are to alt, and to remain there 'till they are order'd to Retire, or rced to it by the Enemy; in which Caſe, they are to retire a regular Manner, and not with Precipitation, leſt they ould intimidate the Whole by a diſorderly Flight.

Upon ſuch Notice being given, the Commanding Offi- r ſhould immediately order the Whole to Halt, and pre- re for Action, and ſend the Major, or an Officer that is ell mounted, to Reconnoitre them near, in order to diſ- ver what he can of their Numbers and Quality, and whe- er they appear to be Friends or Foes. But leſt the Cloſe- eſs of the Country won't permit him to do it without the anger of being intercepted in his Return, ſmall Parties ay be order'd to follow him at ſome Diſtance, to ſecure s Retreat; after the Performance of which, they are to in the Regiment.

The Commanding Officer muſt direct his Meaſures ac- rding to the Report he ſhall receive from the Officer who as ſent to Reconnoitre; and if it is only judg'd to be a Par- an Party ſculking about to pick up Stragglers, or to take e Baggage, he ought, no doubt, to order out a proper De- chment to Attack them; but with Directions to the Officer ho commands it, to be very cautious in the Execution, by t purſuing too far, for fear of an Ambuſcade; and that if ſhould diſcover the Body to be greater than what they ap- ehended, or find them too advantagiouſly Poſted to be ſily diſlodged, to defer the Execution 'till he acquaints him ith it, and receives his further Orders. Reſtrictions of this ind are not only Proper, but abſolutely Neceſſary; with- t which, the Party ſo detached may not be only loſt, but e Regiment thereby involved in inſuperable Difficulties.

When the Caſe happens, as above related, by their being o numerous, or too ſtrongly poſted to be Attack'd by the etachment ſo ſent; the Number of the Enemy, and their ituation ſhould be thoroughly conſider'd, and a proper Diſ-

poſition

position made to attack them to the most Advantage, which must be done if they obstruct the March of the Regiment; but if they don't, I presume, the Commanding Officer may desist from the Attempt, if he finds much Difficulty and Danger in it, and pursue his March, taking Care to Secure the Baggage (by marching it in the Front, or on the Flanks and Rear-Guard, which he may do, by ordering it to be reinforced, and keeping near the Rear of the Regiment.

This, however, must depend on his Instructions, and by them alone he must be determined; it being impossible to say what should, or should not be done, without seeing them. For if his Orders are only to march from such a Place, to such a Place, he is not to hazard his Men in looking out for Adventures; but to pursue his instructions to the best of his Power, and attack those who shall oppose his March, provided they are not too powerful a Body to encounter, or too advantagiously Posted to be forced; in which Case, he may very justly Retire to the Place from whence he came, or into any other of Safety that shall be nearer to him, acquainting the General, or Officer from whom he received his Orders with the Reasons for his so doing, and wait there for his further Directions.

ARTICLE V.

The foregoing Directions being more particularly calculated for the marching through an inclosed country, where the Danger from Foot was the chief thing to be apprehended, I shall, in the next Place, lay down the necessary Precautions for marching in an Open or Champain one.

In quitting the enclosed Country, and entering into a Plain or Open one, the Commanding Officer must take the necessary Precautions against being Surprized and Attacked by the Horse; and tho' they may be discovered at a considerable Distance, the Quickness of their Motions makes it proper that a Disposition should be thought on before there is a Necessity to put it in Practice.

As the Square is the principal Figure into which a Regiment of Foot can throw themselves against a considerable Body of Horse, they should be prepared to Form it at the first Order.

The Method I propose for their marching in an open Country, is as follows.

Upon their coming into the Plain, or open Country, the Distance between the Platoons should be no larger than what is required to Form in, when order'd to wheel to the Right

or Left; by obſerving of which, the Battalion may be form'd in a Moment, by one Word of Command, and ready to enter upon Action.

The Parties on the Flanks may join the Regiment, the Van and Rear-Guards being ſufficient.

In marching by Platoons, the Regiment will take up the leſs Ground, and become thereby more compact, and conſequently not liable to a Surprize; and while they diſcover none of the Enemy they may purſue their March in that Order; but upon the Appearance of any Troops, or Notice given them of their being near, the Battalion ſhould then march in four Grand-Diviſions. The Platoons being order'd to Double up to the Left, according to the Number into which it was told off: For if it conſiſted of 16 Platoons, beſides Granadiers, then each Grand-Diviſion will conſiſt of 4; but if only into 12, then each Grand-Diviſion will conſiſt of 3 Platoons.

The Reaſon why I mention the Battalion's being told off into 16 Platoons, or 12, is, becauſe the Grand-Diviſions are form'd from one of thoſe two in a Moment, and from thence the Square, without any Alteration in the Officers or Platoons in the forming of both; whereas a new Diviſion, both of the Officers and Platoons, is required, ſhould the Battalion be told into 13, 14, or 15 Platoons, before either the Grand-Diviſions or Square can be form'd; which Inconveniency, and Loſs of Time, is avoided, by dividing the Battalions into 16, or 12 Platoons, excluſive of the Granadiers, as may be ſeen by the Plan of forming the Square by Diviſion, in *Article* 3. *Chap.* 7.

But as that only ſhews how the Square is form'd by Grand-Diviſions, when drawn up in Battalion, I ſhall ſhew how it is to be form'd from Grand-Diviſion upon the March. I ſhall begin with 16 Platoons.

How a Battalion of 16 *Platoons is to be form'd into four Grand-Diviſions on the March, and then into the Square.*

As ſoon as the Commanding Officer gives Order for the forming the Grand-Diviſions, the firſt Platoon is to Halt, or move on as ſlow as poſſible; the ſecond Platoon marches immediately, and draws up on the Left of the firſt, the third on the Left of the ſecond, and the fourth on the Left of the third, which forms the firſt Grand-Diviſion.

The

The fifth Platoon marches ſtraight forward in the Rear o the firſt, and when it comes to a proper Diſtance, it is t Halt or March at it does, on which, the ſixth, ſeventh, an eighth Platoons draw up on the Left of the fifth, whic forms the ſecond Grand-Diviſion.

The ninth Platoon marches ſtraight on, 'till it comes to proper Diſtance off the fifth, after which, the tenth, eleven and twelfth Platoons draw up on the Left of the ninth which forms the third Grand-Diviſion.

The thirteenth Platoon is to march ſtraight on, 'till comes to a proper Diſtance off the ninth, then the fou teenth, fifteenth and ſixteenth Platoons draw up on the L of the thirteenth, which forms the fourth Grand-Diviſio

While the Grand-Diviſions are forming, the Granadie are to be divided into two Platoons, and thoſe ſub-divide into two each, to be ready to form on the Angles of t Square. After which, the Granadiers may be either kept a Body, or divided in the Front and Rear of the Gran Diviſions, or on the Flanks, as the Commanding Offic ſhall judge moſt proper for the Service.

By the above Method, the Battalion may be formed in four Grand-Diviſions, even without Halting, when th Commanding Officer thinks proper; and from thence int the Square, in the following manner.

As ſoon as the Word of Command, *Form the Square*, given, the firſt Grand-Diviſion Halts, and by that form the Front Face.

The ſecond and third Grand-Diviſions divide in the Cen ter, and wheel to the Right and Left outwards, and form th Right and Left Faces, thus: The two Platoons on th Right of each of thoſe Grand-Diviſions wheel to the Righ and form the Right Face; and the two Platoons on the Le of each wheel to the Left; and form the Left Face.

The fourth Grand-Diviſion marches on 'till they com to the Flanks of the Right and Left Faces, and then face t the Right-about on their Left Heels, which forms the Re Face; on which, all the Officers, except thoſe who Com mand the Platoons, move immediately into the Square, a directed in the forming of the Square.

The Enſigns with the Colours, being at the Head of th third Grand-Diviſion, are only to move two or three Pace forward, and then ſtand, in order to give the Platoon Room to wheel by them; by which, they fall into the Cen ter of the Square without any further Trouble.

Upo

Upon the ordering of the Square to be form'd, the Granadiers are to repair immediately to their ſeveral Angles, the firſt Platoon to divide and cover the Front Angles, and the ſecond Platoon to divide and cover the Rear Angles.

By keeping the Grand-Diviſions in the Center up to their proper Diſtance, and the Rear-Diviſion cloſe to the Third, and dividing the Granadiers on the Flanks, or in the Front and Rear, the Square may be form'd as quick, almoſt, as Thought, without running the leaſt Hazard, tho' the Enemy's Horſe ſhould be within 30 Paces: For which Reaſon, the Commanding Officer may continue his March in Grand-Diviſions 'till he finds they have made a Diſpoſition, and are actually on their March to attack him on all Sides, ſince the March will be quicker, and with leſs Fatigue to the Men, in marching by Grand-Diviſions, than in the Square. Neither do I think that a Regiment of Foot can be under a Neceſſity to throw themſelves into a Square for three or four Squadrons of Horſe, ſince they may be kept at a Diſtance by marching the Granadiers on the Flanks, and to fire on them whenever they venture too near; but if that ſhould not be ſufficient, a few Platoons from the Battalion will ſoon make them Retire.

Upon diſcovering the Enemy's Horſe, or Notice given of their Approach, the Van and Rear-Guards, as alſo the Baggage ſhould be order'd to keep near the Regiment; and if they find the Number of the Enemy conſiderable, and that the Baggage cannot be preſerved without running too great a Hazard, it ought to be abandon'd, and nothing thought of but the Security of the Regiment: However, they need not give up the Baggage 'till they are under a Neceſſity of doing it, nor defer it when they are.

When this is the Caſe, the Van and Rear-Guards ſhould be divided into the ſeveral Platoons, that they may not be expoſed to the Enemy, by being left out, when the Square is form'd.

If the Enemy ſhould not think proper to attack you, on their finding you drawn up in the Square, and ready to receive them in too warm a manner, but retire to a greater Diſtance, the Commanding Officer may then purſue his March, either in the Square, as has been ſhewn in *Article* 4. *Chap.* 7. or in Grand-Diviſions. If their Diſtance is ſuch, that he may march with Safety by Grand-Diviſions, the Square is to be reduced into them, in the following Manner.

When the Word of Command, *From the Square, Form into Grand-Diviſions*, is given, the Platoons which wheel'd up to form the Right and Left Faces, are to wheel back 'till they come to a Parallel Line with the Front Face, and then ſtand, by which the ſecond and third Grand-Diviſions will be form'd as before; for by wheeling back the two Platoons on the Left of the Right Face, and the two on the Right of the Left Face, the ſecond Grand-Diviſion will be form'd; ſo that the wheeling back of the two Platoons on the Right of the Right Face, and the two Platoons on the Left of the Left Face will form the third Grand-Diviſion.

The Men of the Rear Face are only to face to the Left-about on their Left Heels, by which Means the four Grand-Diviſions will be form'd as before, and in the ſame Space of Time as was taken up in forming the Square.

The Granadiers may be order'd to fall in the Front and Rear, or march on the Flanks of the firſt and fourth Grand-Diviſions; after which, they may march on 'till the Enemy comes again to attack them.

When the Regiment is Told off into 12 Platoons, each Grand-Diviſion will conſiſt of but three Platoons; for which Reaſon the Square muſt be form'd in this Manner.

The firſt Grand-Diviſion forms the Front Face.

The Second wheels to the Right, and forms the Right Face.

The Third marches on 'till they come oppoſite to the Right Flank of the ſecond Diviſion, and then wheels to the Left and forms the Left Face.

The fourth Diviſion forms the Rear Face, as in the other.

In reducing the Square, from hence, into Grand-Diviſions, the Right and Left Faces are to wheel back, as they did up, entire; only the Right Face muſt not wheel back ſo quick as the Left, that they may fall into their proper Places, and avoid the Confuſion which their meeting, in wheeling back, might occaſion.

This Manner of forming the Square requires a little more Time than the other; but in all other Reſpects, it is quite as regular, by requiring no new Telling off, or changing the Officers; whereas, ſhould the ſecond and third Grand-Diviſions divide in the Center, and wheel to the Right and Left outwards, to form the Right and Left Faces, as the other did, the Center Platoon of each of theſe Grand-Diviſions would

would be cut in two, and thereby occaſion a new Telling off of the Right and Left Faces as ſoon as they were form'd, which would not be quite ſo proper, if the Enemy were very near, as that of wheeling up the Grand-Diviſions entire.

But as the Difficulty ſeems to lie in the Time which is requir'd in the forming of the Right and Left Faces by Grand-Diviſions entire; and that a greater will happen, by the dividing of them in the Center, when they conſiſt but of 3 Platoons each, as has been obſerv'd; I ſhall offer therefore another Way of doing it as a Medium between both, as thus:

The Right Face may be form'd by ordering the two Platoons on the Right of the Second Grand-Diviſion, and the Right Platoon of the Third, to wheel to the Right, to form that Face.

The Left Face will conſiſt of the Left Platoon of the Second Grand-Diviſion, and the Two on the Left of the Third; ſo that by ordering them to wheel to the Left; at the ſame time that the others wheel to the Right, the Left Face will be form'd at the ſame time with the Right; by which Method the Platoons, with their Officers, will be kept entire, and the Square ſooner form'd than by Grand-Diviſions.

If the foregoing Rules are obſerved, an Officer can never be ſo far Surpriz'd on his March, but that he will be ready to act upon the Offenſive, or Defenſive, which was all that I propos'd to treat of in this Chapter; in the Proſecuting of which, I have endeavour'd to ſhew the Duty of the Whole, in ſuch a Manner, that every Officer may plainly diſcover his own; either in the proper Directions for Marching the Whole, or a particular Platoon or Diviſion, and paſſing a Defile, or the Command of the Van or Rear-Guard; or being order'd out with a Detachment to Suſtain or Relieve any of his own Parties, or to attack a Partizan Party that ſhall be diſcovered on the March, with the Precautions how they are to proceed in the Execution, for fear of further Danger than at firſt appear'd, and how they are to act when it ſo happens; but more particularly in the Conduct requir'd of the Commanding Officer, for the Security and Preſervation of the Whole, both in an open and an inclos'd Country.

It is impoſſible to ſay in what Manner he is to act when he meets with the Enemy, without knowing their Numbers, Quality and Diſpoſition. His own Judgment and Experience muſt direct him in taking proper Meaſures; for without he has both, thoſe who are under his Command, at ſuch a Juncture, are much to be pitied, let his Courage be ever ſo great.

CHAP. IX.

Conſiſting of general Rules for Battalions of Foot when they are to engage in the Line.

ARTICLE I.

THO' it may be ſuppoſed that all Colonels will keep their Regiments in ſuch Order, that they may be ready to march and enter upon Action when Commanded; however, it is abſolutely Neceſſary, that they make a thorough Inſpection into their Mens Arms and Ammunition, the Day before they expect an Engagement, leſt any thing ſhould be wanting, when their Service is required.

The Commanding Officers ſhould take particular Care to have their Regiments as ſtrong as poſſible on the Day of Action, by permitting no more Men to be out of the Ranks than what are abſolutely neceſſary for the Security of the Baggage, or are commanded out upon Duty.

As ſoon as the Battalions are form'd, they ſhould be Told off into Platoons, and the Officers appointed to them, as directed in *Article* 1. *Chapter* 6.

When the Officers are poſted to their Platoons, they ſhould view their Mens Arms and Ammunition, and make a Report of the ſame to the Officer commanding the Regiment; this Inſpection ſhould not be omitted, leſt ſeveral Men, by having loſt, or embezzled their Ammunition, may be rendered uſeleſs for want of being ſupplied in due time, which they will be apt to conceal, for fear of being Puniſhed.

In Marching up to attack the Enemy, and during the Action, a profound Silence ſhould be kept, that the Commanding Officers may be diſtinctly heard in delivering their Orders: Neither are the Officers who command the Platoons to uſe any more Words than what relate to the Performance of their Duty.

The Commanding Officer is to give the Word of Command for all the Movements which his Regiment is to perform, whether it is to Advance, Retire, or Halt; but leſt He ſhould not be diſtinctly heard by the Whole, they are to regulate their Motions by the ſeveral Beatings of the Drum; for which End, the Drummers in the Center Platoons are to be very attentive to the Words of Command, and to Beat, on the Delivering of them, according to the following Directions.

When the Battalion is order'd to march Forward, they are to beat a March; and when the Word Halt is given, they are to ceaſe.

When they are to Retire, as ſoon as the Battalion has faced to the Right-about, and the Word March is given, the Drummers are to beat a Retreat; and not to ceaſe 'till the Battalion is order'd to Halt.

The Drummers on the Flanks are to govern themſelves, both in their Beatings, and in Ceaſing to Beat, by thoſe in the Center; by which Means, thoſe Men who could not hear the Word of Command, from their being at too great a Diſtance from the Center, or the Noiſe of the Drums, will know, by the different Beatings, what they are to perform.

The Drummers in the Center muſt be ready to beat a Preparative for the whole Battalion to Make ready, if the Commanding Officer thinks proper to have it perform'd in that Manner.

ARTICLE II.

In marching up to attack the Enemy, the Line ſhould move very ſlow, that the Battalions may be in Order, and the Men not out of Breath when they come to engage.

The Commanding Officer of every Battalion ſhould march up cloſe to the Enemy, before he ſuffers his Men to give their Fire; and if the Enemy have not given theirs, he ſhould prevent their doing it, by falling upon them, with the Bayonets on the Muzzles the Inſtant they have fired, which may be done under the Cover of the Smoke, before they can perceive it: So that by the Shock they will receive from your Fire, by being cloſe, and attacking them immediately with your Bayonets, they may, in all Probability, be beat with a very inconſiderable Loſs: But if you don't follow your Fire that Moment, but give them Time to recover from the Diſ-

order yours may have put them into, the Scene may change to your Disadvantage. I therefore don't recommend this Way of Proceeding, but when the Enemy are obstinate, and persevere in not giving theirs first; it being a received Maxim, that those who preserve their Fire the longest, will be sure to Conquer: But if the Method here propos'd is duly executed, that Maxim, I believe, will be found Fallible. However, it should only be pursued in the Case spoken of, as a proper Expedient when you can't draw the Enemy's Fire from them 'till you come up close; but if you can draw away their Fire at some Distance without giving yours, and that the Execution has not disorder'd the Battalion so much but that it keeps moving on towards them, you may be sure of Success; it being certain, that when Troops see others advance, and going to pour in their Fire upon them, when theirs is gone, they will immediately give way, or at least it happens seldom otherwise. The Point then to be aimed at is, that of receiving the Enemy's Fire first; but when both Sides pursue the same Maxim, in preserving their Fire last, I don't know a more proper Expedient than the one already mentioned: For when the Fire is given near, there won't be only a great many killed and wounded, but those who remain unhurt will be put into such Disorder and Confusion by it, that it will contribute to their being beat without much Difficulty, if the Blow is followed.

When it is apprehended that the Enemy will persist in Reserving their Fire, the Commanding Officers should prepare their Men for it before they go on, and direct them how they are to give their Fire, and in what manner they are to proceed afterwards, with the Advantages that will be gain'd by the following of it, and that their own Safety, as well as the Destruction of the Enemy, depends on the due Execution.

ARTICLE III.

When any of the Battalions have forced those they attacked to give way, great Care must be taken by the Officers to prevent their Men from Breaking after them; neither must they pursue them faster than the Line advances: For if a Battalion advances out of the Line, it may be attack'd on the Flanks by the Enemy's Horse, who are frequently posted between the first and second Lines for that Purpose. The Commanding Officers must therefore remain satisfied with the Advantage of having obliged the Enemy to give way,

way, and not break the Line by advancing before it in the Purſuit; but in order to keep up the Terror of the Enemy, and to prevent their Rallying, the Granadiers may be order'd to advance 20 or 30 Paces before the Line, and to fire upon them from time to time: And while the Granadiers are thus employ'd, the Commanding Officers ſhould take great Care to keep their Regiments in good Order, that they may be ready to engage the ſecond Line of the Enemy, which they may reaſonably expect will come up to ſuſtain thoſe they had routed.

The Granadiers being detached in the Front only to prevent thoſe who were routed from Rallying, they muſt by no means advance too far from the Line, leſt they ſhould be cut off from it by the Enemy. They muſt therefore act with Precaution, and as ſoon as they perceive the Second Line of the Enemy, or a Body of their Troops, marching towards them, they are to quit the Purſuit and return to their Regiments, or halt 'till their own Line comes up, if the Enemy don't advance too faſt upon them.

Unleſs theſe Directions are punctually obſerved by every Battalion in the Line, the Advantage ſo gained may be ſnatched from them in a moment: For by purſuing the Enemy too far, they may be ſurrounded by freſh Troops, and cut to Pieces before the Line can come up to their Aſſiſtance. It is therefore the Duty of every Commanding Officer, to regulate his March according to the Motions of the Line, and not ſuffer themſelves to be too much elated on the firſt Succeſs, leſt it hurry them on too faſt without reflecting on the Danger that may attend it: For which Reaſon the whole Line muſt act like one Battalion, both in Advancing, Attacking and Purſuing the Enemy together. While they keep in a Body, they can mutually aſſiſt one another; but if they ſhould ſeparate in Purſuing thoſe they beat, the Enemy may deſtroy them one after another, with ſuch an inconſiderable Number of Troops, that were they in a Body, would fly at their Appearance. The Conſequence therefore of Separating during the Action, is of ſuch Weight and Moment, that by doing it, the Enemy may not only re-eſtabliſh their Affairs in ſuch a manner as to renew the Action, but in all probability likewiſe gain a compleat Victory, if they make a proper Uſe of the Advantage ſo given; which we are always to ſuppoſe they will, and for that Reaſon we ought not to give them an Opportunity by which they may have it in their Power.

ARTICLE

ARTICLE IV.

Whereas it is ordered by the 14th Article of War, 'that 'Whoever after Victory, ſhall, inſtead of Purſuing the Ene- 'my, quit his Commanding Officer or Poſt, to plunder and 'pillage; every ſuch Offender being duly convicted thereof, 'ſhall be reputed a Diſobeyer of Military Orders; and ſhall 'ſuffer Death, or ſuch other Puniſhment as by a General 'Court-Martial ſhall be inflicted on him.

After what has been mentioned in the above Article of War, relating to thoſe who ſhall quit their Poſts to plunder and pillage, it appears almoſt unneceſſary to enlarge on the Neceſſity of its being duly obſerv'd; His Majeſty's Commands being ſufficient to determine our Obedience, without entring into the Reaſons for which they were given: However, it may not be altogether improper, for the Information of thoſe who have not had Experience of the Danger which generally attends the Neglect of it, to ſhew that our own Safety is thereby conſulted and preſerved.

Should the Soldiers be permitted to diſperſe, and run in Search of Plunder, before the Enemy are entirely routed and reduced beyond a Poſſibility of Forming themſelves again into a Body, they may renew the Action and fall upon them while they are employed in Plundering the Baggage: the Conſequence of which would not be only certain Deſtruction to thoſe who commit it, but perhaps prove ſo to the whole Army likwiſe.

The Hiſtory of all Ages will furniſh us with numerous Examples of this Kind: and a Paſſage occurs to my Memory, which I have read ſomewhere, that is very pat to this Purpoſe.

A General of an Army finding himſelf under very great Difficulties, by being obliged to engage a Superior Force, and being apprehenſive that the Battle would go againſt Him without ſome extraordinary Means could be thought on to effect it, at laſt came to the following Reſolution. As ſoon as he drew near the Enemy, he ordered all the Baggage of his Army to be placed in their full View; after which he gave Orders, that, upon the making ſuch a Signal, they ſhould make their Retreat; which, however, ſhould not be given 'till he found that the Battle was likely to go againſt him; and as he conjectured, ſo it happened, from the Superiority of the Enemy: Upon which He ordered the Signal

be made, and his Army retired in pretty good Order, leaving the Enemy Maſters of the Field of Battle and all his Baggage; the Temptation of which, and their apprehending that they had nothing to fear from a Beaten Army, made them quit the Purſuit, and fall a Plundering. The General finding that the Bait which he had laid had taken Effect, return'd with his Troops, and fell upon them in the height of their Plundering, and by that means gain'd a compleat Victory.

Whether the above Story is true or falſe, is of no great Conſequence. The Carrying an Air of Probability in it, was ſufficient to my Purpoſe: And I believe, if the ſame Stratagem was to be made uſe of, even in this Age, it might have a very good Effect in ſaving a great Part of a Broken Army, by taking the Enemy off from the Purſuit; for ſuch is the Love of Plunder in the Private Soldiers, that were they not reſtrained from it by their Officers, no Hazard would deter them from it.

As Example is beyond precept, I beg Leave to inſert another of a more Modern Date, the Truth of which I can aſſert.

In the Year 1710, the late Earl *Stanhope*, with a Body of *Engliſh* Troops, was attack'd in *Brihuega* by the whole *Spaniſh* Army, conſiſting of above 20,000 Men, under the Conduct of the preſent King of *Spain*, and the late Duke of *Vendoſme*; to Relieve which, Marſhal *Staremberg* march'd with the Remainder of his Army, amounting to 11,000 Men; but before he came up, the Town was taken, and the Earl and his Troops made Priſoners; of which Marſhal *Staremberg* could have no Intelligence, 'till he had advanced too near to retire without Fighting. The *Spaniſh* Army looking upon their vaſt Odds, and being elated with their Succeſs the Night before in the taking of *Brihuega*, concluded on nothing leſs than the cutting of Marſhal *Staremberg* and his little Army to Pieces. With this View, the Duke of *Vendoſme* detach'd a Body of 3000 Horſe to fall upon the Rear of Marſhal *Staremberg*'s Army, at the ſame time that He attack'd Him in Front with the reſt of the Army: but the Baggage of the Marſhal's Army being placed in the Rear of his ſecond Line, ſaved him from the Danger which threatned him there; for the 3000 Horſe, inſtead of doing their Duty, carried off the Baggage. As ſoon as the Duke of *Vendoſme* had given a ſufficient Time for the 3000 Horſe to march round, as directed, he attack'd the Marſhal's Army in Front; but with ſo little Succeſs notwith-

notwithſtanding his Superior Numbers excluſive of the 3000 Horſe, that the Marſhal did not only repulſe the *Spaniſh* Army in every Attack they made, but beat them entirely out of the Field of Battle, and obliged the King of *Spain* and the Duke of *Vendoſme* to retire five Miles that Night: Whereas, had the 3000 Horſe deſiſted from the Plunder, and purſued their Orders, in attacking the Marſhal's Army in the Rear, when the Duke attack'd it in the Front, few or none could have eſcaped.

As this ſhort Account is only to ſhew the ill Conſequences of ſuffering the Soldiers to quit their Officers or Poſts, to plunder or pillage, before the Enemy are entirely beat; I hope, that the Inſerting of it here, will not be thought foreign to the Affair in hand; but will rather ſerve as an Example to deter others from committing the like Error, and oblige every Officer in his Station to exert Himſelf on theſe Occaſions, that the Danger here complain'd of may be avoided.

ARTICLE V.

The Commanding Officer and Major of each Regiment ſhould obſerve the Diſpoſition of their own Troops, when they are drawn up in the Line of Battle, that they may know what Regiment ſuſtains theirs, or whom they are to ſuſtain, according as they are poſted in the firſt or ſecond Line. They ſhould likewiſe endeavour to know their own Troops from the Enemy, either by their Colours or Cloathing, that in the Confuſion, to which Battles are generally ſubject, they may not miſtake the one for the other: For as the Battalions are obliged to ſeparate when a Battle is fought in a cloſe or woody Country, this Miſtake is eaſily made, without the aforeſaid Precaution, and therefore it is abſolutely Neceſſary to prevent your Deſtroying one another.

ARTICLE VI.

When the Enemy act upon the Defenſive, and only endeavour to maintain their Poſt, if there are any Houſes, Hollow-ways, Ditches or Hedges in their Front, they commonly place Men in them to annoy the Line in their marching up to attack them. When this is the Caſe, the Granadiers ſhould be ordered to march 30 or 40 Paces before the Line, either in ſingle Companies or Join'd, as the Service may require, in order to diſlodge thoſe Advanced Parties, that

that the Line may not be ruffled, or interrupted in their Marching up to attack. As ſoon as the Granadiers have performed that Service, they ſhould Halt 'till the Line comes up, and then join their Battalions.

ARTICLE VII.

When a Battalion is order'd to retire, or oblig'd to it without being beat or put into Diſorder; before the Word of Command, *To the Right-about*, is given, the Commanding Officer ſhould acquaint the Men with the Reaſon for ſo doing, leſt they ſhould apprehend the Danger to be greater than it is, and thereby occaſion their falling into Confuſion, inſtead of making a Regular and Soldier-like Retreat.

The Reaſon for a Regiment's being order'd, or obliged to retire, may proceed from one of the following Cauſes.

When a Regiment has ſuſtained a great Loſs in the firſt Line, it may be thought proper to relieve it by one from the ſecond Line; and therefore order'd to retire to make Room for that coming up.

When a Regiment is expos'd to the Cannon of the Enemy, they may be order'd to move to the Right or Left, or to retire to a Place of more Safety.

Or when a Regiment is drawn up in ſome advanced Poſt, where it is likely to be overpower'd by Numbers, and cannot be eaſily ſuſtain'd, they may be order'd to quit their Poſt and retire to one more ſecure; but however juſt the Motives may be for their Retiring, yet without they receive Orders from their Generals for it, they are not to quit their Poſts, but muſt maintain them to the utmoſt of their Power.

As every Battalion is to obſerve the Motions of the Line, when they ſee the greateſt Part of it retire, they are to do the ſame, without receiving a particular Order, from the General who commands the Line, it being impoſſible for him to ſend ſuch Orders to every Regiment, in the Heat of Action: for which Reaſon, it is a fix'd Rule for every Battalion to act, as near as poſſible, in concert with the Whole, both in Advancing, Attacking, Purſuing, or Retiring together: however, we are not to conclude from hence, if ſome of the Battalions ſhould be ruffled in the Attack and forced to give way, that the Reſt are obliged to follow their Motions; neither are two or three Battalions to go on, when the reſt retire. But whatever the Motives may be for their retiring, whether thoſe above-mentioned or others, the Commanding

ing

ing Officer ſhould always acquaint the Regiment with it and give his Orders clear and diſtinct, without ſhewing any Concern; otherwiſe the Men may fall into Confuſion, for want of being appriz'd and duly prepared to perform what ſhall be order'd them; for if this Precaution is omitted, and the Words of Command, for the Changing of Ground or Retiring, are given in a Hurry, the Men are apt to perform them in the ſame Manner, and by that means occaſion their falling into Diſorder, which, in the Preſence of the Enemy may produce dangerous Conſequences, by not only loſing the Reputation of the Regiment, but occaſioning ſeveral others to be ſeized with a Panick, and follow their Example.

ARTICLE VIII.

When the firſt Line is put into Diſorder by the Enemy and forced to give way, the Battalions are to retire thro' the Intervals left between thoſe of the Second Line; but, to prevent their being too cloſely purſued, the Officers in the Front ſhould rally ſome of their boldeſt and moſt reſolute Men, and form them into ſmall Platoons, and Fire upon them from time to time, as they retire; which will not only oblige the Enemy to advance with more Deliberation, than they would do were there none to oppoſe them; but it will likewiſe do them conſiderable Damage, and give their own Battalions an Opportunity of making a more ſafe and orderly Retreat.

The Officers who were poſted in the Rear of the Battalion, as alſo the Major and Adjutant, muſt prevent the Men from Retiring too faſt, and endeavour to keep them in a Body, and from mixing with thoſe of another Regiment, and to march them in the beſt manner they can thro' the Intervals of the ſecond Line, which when they have paſs'd, they are to Halt and form them again into Battalion, with the utmoſt Expedition, in order to march up and ſuſtain the ſecond Line.

On theſe Occaſions, the Danger which the ſecond Line runs of being broke by the firſt, is very great: For when the firſt Line is put into Diſorder, inſtead of Retiring thro' the Intervals of the ſecond Line, they frequently run directly into the Battalions, and either carry them off with them, or put them into ſuch Confuſion, that the Enemy are upon them before they have Time to repair the Diſorder: For which Reaſon, the Officers of the firſt Line muſt uſe the utmo

tmoſt Diligence and Care to prevent their Men from committing this Error, by obſerving the above Directions; without which, their own Preſervation is not only obſtructed, but the Loſs of the Whole muſt inevitably follow.

ARTICLE IX.

As the Caſe above-mentioned, that of the ſecond Line being broke by the Firſt when they are forced to give Way is very common, I ſhall therefore offer the following Expedient, in order to prevent the Evil complain'd of, and what, in my Opinion, will be very conducive thereto.

As ſoon as the firſt Line gives way, the Granadiers of the Second ſhould be order'd to advance 20 Paces in the Front, and directly oppoſite to the Center of their own Regiments, in order to keep the Men of the firſt Line clear of them, and oblige them to retire thro' the Intervals, or compel them to it by Force; but that ſhould be uſed with Moderation: However, in Caſes of Danger as this is, it is better that a Few ſhould ſuffer than the Whole.

By advancing the Granadiers into the Front of each Battalion, the Intervals of the ſecond Line will be conſiderably enlarged, which conſequently opens a greater Paſſage for thoſe of the firſt Line to retire thro'; by which, the Danger of the ſecond Line's being put into Diſorder by the Firſt, will be leſs; which Conſideration alone appears to me of ſufficient Weight for its being done.

But I am likewiſe of Opinion, that it will not only prevent the ſecond Line from being thrown into Confuſion, but prove, in ſome meaſure, a Security to the Firſt, by putting a Check to the Enemy in their Purſuit, and either oblige them to Halt, or Advance ſlower, when they perceive the Granadiers of the Second advancing in Order, and ready to oppoſe them: But whether it has this Effect or not, the other Advantages propoſed by it, that of Securing the ſecond Line from being broke or put into Diſorder, and the Enlarging of the Intervals for the firſt Line to march thro' are ſufficient Motives for doing it.

The Deſign of Advancing the Granadiers, being only to prevent the firſt Line from mixing with the Second, and to ſtop the Purſuit of the Enemy, by ſhewing themſelves to them, in order to facilitate the Retreat of the Men of the firſt Line, and to prevent a further Execution on them, they muſt therefore by no means engage; but as ſoon as the Men

of

of the first Liue have gain'd the Intervals, they are to join their Regiments.

The Method, of ordering the Granadiers of the second Line to advance upon the first Line's giving way, being purely a Notion of my own, neither having seen nor heard that it was ever put in Practice, I shall not lay it down as a fix'd Rule; therefore every Body is at liberty to reject it at Pleasure.

ARTICLE X.

Upon the first Line giving way, the Second should march up briskly to their Relief, and attack the Enemy before they have time to repair the Disorder which both the Action and the Pursuit must, of course have thrown them into; by doing which, they may, with Ease, retrieve what was lost; and, in all Probability, do such Execution, that those Troops, who were before victorious, may be render'd uncapable of any further Service that Day: For we may reasonably suppose, that they will be considerably diminish'd, and put into Disorder, by their Action with the first Line; and as their first Fire is spent, which is the one that does the most Execution, the others, from the too great Hurry in Loading, are of no great Consequence; at least in Comparison with the First: Whereas, on the other hand, the second Line being entirely fresh, in good Order, and their Arms well loaded, by being ramm'd down, and the Edge of the Enemy's Vigour somewhat blunted, we may justly conclude, that they will not be able to resist the Attack of the second Line, if perform'd like brave and resolute Soldiers: So that by the Loss which they sustain'd from the first Line, and the immediate Attack of the Second, the above Supposition, that of rendering those Troops unserviceable, appears both a reasonable and a well-grounded Assertion.

But the greatest Difficulty which we have to struggle with on these Occasions, does not proceed so much from a Real as an Imaginary Danger: For when the Men of the second Line perceive those of the First give way, they are apt to form to themselves vast Ideas of the Enemy, which, by working strongly on the Imagination, become so terrible, that, by the Time they approach near, they frequently betake themselves to a shameful Flight, or make but a weak Resistance: So that by being seiz'd with a false Fear, they do not only lose the Opportunity, which Fortune throws in their way,

of

f gaining an Advantage over the Enemy; but quit even the Means by which their own Lives might be ſaved: whereas, f they would but give themſelves Time to conſider, their wn Reaſon muſt tell them, that freſh Troops will always rove too powerful for thoſe who have been already en-ag'd; and that, if they acted as became Soldiers, they could ot fail of Succeſs, in the preſent Caſe. But we cannot ex-ect that the Majority of the Private Men will reaſon in this anner, ſince their Reflections proceed rather from what is onvey'd to them by the Eye, than from the Underſtanding: However, I muſt do the Common Soldiers of our Kingdom he Juſtice to ſay, that they are as ſeldom guilty of the Failing ere compain'd of, as thoſe of any other Nation in *Europe*: nd that whenever it does happen, it proceeds oft'ner from he Want of Conduct in the Officers, than Courage in the Men: For the *Engliſh* are naturally Active, Strong, Bold nd Enterpriſing; always ready to go on to Action; but im-atient when delay'd or kept back from it. I ſhould there-ore think it adviſeable, in the Caſe we ſpeak of, for the econd Line to move on briskly upon the Firſt's giving way; y which means, they will not only ſave the Lives of a great any Men of the firſt Line, but may fall upon the Enemy efore they can have Time to put their Battalions in Order, hich is a great Point towards rendering their Succeſs both ertain and eaſy: But if the ſecond Line ſhould halt, or ove but ſlowly on, it will give the Enemy Time to do reat Execution on the Men of the Firſt, the Sight of which ay ſtrike thoſe of the ſecond Line with a Panick; whereas, he Carrying them on briskly will divert their Eyes from the ight of the Slain, or at leaſt not ſuffer them to remain ſo ong as to prove of any ill Conſequence, or abate their ourage.

As there is not any one Part of the Service more difficult o manage, than what is above treated of; or where the ourage and Conduct both of the Officers and Soldiers are ut to a greater Trial; I was therefore induced to be the ore particular on that Head, in order to remove the wrong mpreſſions, which thoſe of the ſecond Line generally re-eive, upon their ſeeing the firſt Line give way; and likewiſe o ſhew how eaſy it is to repair that Loſs, and gain immor-al Honour, if they act as they ought to do; which Deſign, tho' I am afraid very unskilfully executed) I hope will ex-uſe the Length.

ARTICLE

ARTICLE. XI.

It being a general Remark, that the Private Soldiers, whe they are to go upon Action, form their Notions of the Dan ger from the outward Appearance of their Officers; an according to their Looks apprehend the Undertaking to b more or leſs difficult: (For when they perceive the Office dejected, or thoughtful, they are apt to conclude the Affa deſperate: In order therefore to diſſipate their Fears, an fortify their Courage, the Officers ſhould aſſume a ſere and chearful Air; and in delivering their Orders to, and i their common Diſcourſe with the Men, they ſhould addre themſelves to them in an affable and affectionate Manner.

When the Private Soldiers have an Opinion of the Mi tary Capacity of their Officers, or have had Experience o their Courage and Conduct, the above Method will effect ally prevail, and create in them ſuch an Opinion of their ow Superiority over the Enemy, that they will look upon the with Contempt, and conclude them, in a manner, beat be fore they begin the Action. When ſuch a Spirit is onc rais'd in the Men, they ſeldom or never fail of Succeſs But when Officers have not had Experience of the Servic or neglect the Means by which they might attain to it, (b which the Private Men are ſtrict Obſervers, and from thence form their Judgment of them) the Caſe will not hold: Fo unleſs the Men have an Opinion of their Conduct, as wel as their Courage, they won't be able to influence them i the Manner above ſpoken of.

ARTICLE XII.

When the Line is marching to attack the Enemy, an that a Battalion is ſo ſtraitned for want of Room that the can't march the Whole in Front, by the others preſſing too much upon them, or that the Ground will not admit of i an entire Platoon ſhould be order'd to fall back and marc in the Rear of the Regiment, 'till the Interval will allow of its moving up; and in caſe the Battalion ſhould engag before the Platoon can move up, it will not only prove good Reſerve, but be of conſiderable Service in keeping th Reſt up to their Duty.

ARTICL

ARTICLE XIII.

Having treated at large, in the ſeventh Chapter, how a Battalion of Foot, when detach'd, is to proceed when attack'd by Horſe; and as thoſe in the Line may be liable to it during ſome Part of the Action, the Commanding Officer of every Battalion ſhould be prepared to receive them according to the Method laid down in the ſaid Chapter; with this Difference, that when they are attack'd by Horſe in the Line, or in Brigade, they are not then to act ſeparately, but in Conjunction with one another. The Method of acting in this Caſe, muſt depend on the Manner you are attack'd: For if they endeavour to fall on the Flank of the Line, by its lying open to them, a Battalion or more muſt be wheel'd back to ſecure it. But as this would carry me into a higher Scene than what I propoſed, or am qualified for, I have therefore endeavour'd to avoid it as much as poſſibly I could; and have only enter'd ſo far, as not to leave the Parts treated on dark or obſcure, that the young Officers, for whom it is writ, may have a clear and perfect Notion of the ſeveral Parts of their Duty, in order to execute what ſhall be commanded them by their Superiors; without which, it was impoſſible for me to make them comprehend it.

ARTICLE XIV.

I intended to have ended this Chapter with the above Article; but as the Infantry of *Holland* begin the Action, when they engage in an open or champain Country, with Firing by Platoons as they advance upon the Enemy; I believe it will not be improper to ſet down their Method of performing it, with the Advantages and Diſadvantages that may ariſe from that Way of proceeding.

Upon the Line's approaching ſo near the Enemy that they can do Execution on them with their Fire, which I ſuppoſe to be about 60 Paces, all the Battalions make ready, and march on with Recover'd Arms; a little after which, the Platoon on the Right of each Battalion advances forward, till the Rear-Rank comes even with the Front-Rank of the Regiment, then Halt, Kneel, Lock, Preſent and Fire. As ſoon as the Platoons on the Right have Fired, thoſe on the Left advance and do the ſame; and ſo from the Right and Left of each Battalion 'till they finiſh in the Center, by

making every Platoon Fire once. This Way is call'd Alternate Firing.

In performing the Alternate Firing, the whole Line moves as ſlow as Foot can fall, that the Battalions may not fall into any Diſorder, by the Platoons advancing to Fire; as alſo to give the Men Time to load their Arms before they approach too near the Enemy; which when they have done, the Line then moves on briskly; and when they come up cloſe to the Enemy, they give them their whole Fire, as the *Engliſh* do.

By this Way of proceeding, the Enemy muſt receive two Fires; but it has ſometimes happen'd, that, by their Alternate Firing only, they have done ſuch Execution, that the Enemy did not wait for their ſecond Fire; or if they did, they were too much weaken'd and diſorder'd by it to make their Reſiſtance prove of any great Conſequence; by which means they have often beat thoſe they attack'd with a very inconſiderable Loſs to themſelves.

When a Body of Foot can be brought to perform the Alternate Firing in a cool and regular Manner, it muſt be own'd, that they will have a great Advantage over thoſe they attack, if they don't act in the ſame Manner: But unleſs the Officers have a thorough Knowledge of the Service, or at leaſt thoſe who command the Platoons, and the Private Men be very exact in obeying the Words of Command, and expert in loading after they have fired, it will be dangerous to attempt it.

For ſhould the Enemy, by a quick and ſudden Motion, advance upon them before they have all loaded (which would be right for them ſo to do) thoſe who have not loaded will be apt to give Way, from a Notion of their being then defenceleſs; the Conſequence of which may throw a Panick into the Whole, and involve them in the ſame Misfortune: Therefore, unleſs it is manag'd with great Conduct, it may very eaſily turn to their Diſadvantage.

But the *Dutch*, from the Excellency of their Diſcipline which they ſtrictly adhere to, have ſurmounted theſe Difficulties: For as the Selling and Buying of Commiſſions is a Traffick (and I believe the only one) unknown, or at leaſt not allow'd of, in the Republick; their Officers are generally promoted by their Service; by which Means, the Majority of them are Men of Experience, and therefore may undertake it without running much Hazard: For as they are Judges of the Service, they will eaſily perceive, by the Mo-

tion

tions of the Enemy, when they ſhould continue or deſiſt from the Alternate Firing, and, conſequently, can avoid the Danger above-mention'd, that of being attack'd by the Enemy before all their Men have loaded.

We have a common Notion, that this *Sang Froid*, or Obedient Quality in the *Dutch*, is owing chiefly to Nature, by their having a greater Proportion of Phlegm in their Conſtitution than the *Engliſh*, by which their Minds are not ſo ſoon agitated as ours. But I look upon this Way of Reaſoning, to be rather a plauſible Excuſe for our own Neglect, in not bringing our Men to the ſame Perfection of Diſcipline, than the Production of any natural Cauſe in the *Dutch*. But, allowing that Nature does contribute ſomething towards it, yet, it is evident, Art has the greateſt Share, ſince their Troops are generally compos'd of different Nations.

The *French* form the ſame Notion of us, as we do of the *Dutch*; but I am ſurprized that Nation ſhould ſtill entertain ſuch an Opinion, conſidering how often we have given ſufficient Reaſons to convince them that we don't want a due Proportion of Fire: And I hope we ſhall never have an Occaſion of being convinced, by ſuch powerful Arguments, that the *Dutch* are not defective in that Point.

It is allow'd by all Nations, that the *Engliſh* poſſeſs Courage in an eminent Degree; but, at the ſame time, they accuſe us of the Want of Patience, and conſequently that which it produces, Obedience; ſo that by our being defective in the Latter, the great Advantages which might be reap'd from the Former are often loſt, or at leaſt fall ſhort of what might be juſtly expected from it. This Accuſation is ſomething ſevere, ſince by it they deprive us of an eſſential Quality (and, I was going to ſay, the moſt eſſential one) towards the Forming of a Soldier, without which, no Man can be juſtly ſtyled a Compleat one. They might ſay as well, that our Courage is the Effect of Paſſion, and not Reaſon: And, indeed, as it generally appears to them, they have too much Colour for the Aſſertion, by our Neglect of Diſcipline; and from thence conclude, that the *Engliſh* can't be brought into it: but they are certainly miſtaken in that, ſince none are more capable of Inſtruction than the *Engliſh*; and when proper Means are uſed, neither Patience, nor Obedience, are wanting in them.

CHAP. X.

Conſiſting of the Duty of the Infantry in Garriſon.

ARTICLE I.

HAVING treated in *Chap.* 8. of the neceſſary Precautions for Marching a Regiment of Foot, *&c.* I ſhall proceed to the ſeveral Parts of the Duty which is to be perform'd before they arrive at, and during their Stay in, Garriſon; according to the modern Practice of the Garriſons abroad.

The Day before the Regiment is to arrive, the Commanding Officer ſhould ſend the Regimental Quarter-maſter, or a proper Officer, with an exact Copy of his Route or Orders to the Governour, or Commander of the Garriſon, to appriſe him of their coming, that he may give the neceſſary Orders for their being quarter'd.

When the ſaid Orders are given, the Quarter-Maſter is to go along with the Barrack-Maſter, or Perſon appointed for that Purpoſe, to take Poſſeſſion of the Caſerns, or Barracks allotted for the Regiment, and to examine nicely into the Condition of the ſaid Quarters, in order to have them repaired, if they want it, before the Regiment arrives.

He is likewiſe to take an exact Inventory of all the Furniture, as Beds, Tables, Stools, and the Utenſils for the dreſſing of Victuals, *&c.* and what Condition they are in, that it may be inſerted in the Receipt which he is to give to the Perſon who delivers them.

If there is no Conveniency for the Lodging the Officers with the Men, they ſhould be billetted on the Houſes which lie moſt contiguous to the Caſerns, or Barracks of the Regiment, that they may be ready, on all Occaſions to join their Men.

He

He is to make an exact Diviſion of the Caſerns, or Rooms, according to the Number of the Companies in the Regiment; placing the Number deſign'd for each, contiguous to one another; after which they are to be put into Lots, to be drawn for when the Regiment arrives.

He is likewiſe to receive the Fire and Candle allotted for the Regiment, and to deliver it to the Men as ſoon as they are quarter'd.

ARTICLE II.

If the Troops in the Garriſon are ſo numerous, that ſeveral Regiments muſt be quarter'd on the Inhabitants, for want of Caſerns or Barracks to contain them; the Town ſhould, in that Caſe, be divided into as many Parts as there are Regiments to be quarter'd; that the Officers and Soldiers of each Regiment may have a diſtinct Part to themſelves, in order to their being drawn together without Loſs of Time, in caſe of an Alarm; as alſo to avoid Diſputes which might ariſe betwixt Regiment and Regiment, by having them intermix'd with one another. It will likewiſe be a great Eaſe to the Officers in the viſiting of their Mens Quarters; and to the Serjeants and Corporals in delivering of Orders to the Men, and in aſſembling of them for the Parade, Exerciſe, or the viewing of their Arms and Accoutrements.

This Way of Quartering, is call'd, in the Military Phraſe, Cantoning of a Town.

ARTICLE III.

When the Regiment comes near the Garriſon, the Commanding Officer ſhould ſend an Officer, to acquaint the Governour, that he ſhall arrive at ſuch a Time, and to deſire he will ſend Orders to the Officer of the Port-Guard to permit the Regiment to march into the Town; without which Precaution they will be kept without the Barrier, 'till the Officer of the Guard ſends and receives the Governour's Orders for their Admittance.

On this Notice, the Governour commonly ſends the Town-Major, or one of the Town-Adjutants, with Orders for their Entrance, and to conduct the Regiment to the Grand-Parade.

The Quarter-Maſter, or Officer who was ſent to prepare the Quarters, ſhould meet the Regiment at ſome diſtance from the Town, to acquaint the Colonel with his Proceedings; as alſo to find out ſome convenient Place near the Town for the Regiment to draw up before they enter, and to conduct them to it. This ſmall Halt is only to give the Men time to roll their Cravats, cock their Hats, and put themſelves in the beſt Order they can, that they may appear in a decent and Soldier-like Manner upon their entering the Town.

While the Men are putting themſelves in Order, the Officers Billets may be diſtributed amongſt them, which is commonly done by Lot, to avoid ſhewing any Partiality; that is, thoſe of each Rank are to draw with one another. The Reaſon why I think that the Officers Billets ſhould be diſtributed before they march into the Town, is, that they may ſend their Baggage directly to their Quarters, and not loſe time by deferring of it 'till they come to the Parade; but this may or may not be done, as the Colonel ſhall think proper.

As ſoon as the Men have put themſelves in Order, and the Files are compleated, they may then purſue their March; and when they come near the Barrier, all the Officers, except the Colonel, Major and Adjutant, muſt diſmount, and march at the Head of their Diviſions with their Half-Pikes in their Hands, and the Enſigns with the Colours.

It is a ſtanding Rule, that when the Officers are order'd to diſmount, and the Enſigns to take the Colours, the Drummers are to fall into their Diviſions, and beat a March, unleſs the Service may require their being ſilent; in which Caſe, Orders are given accordingly.

The Colonel, or Commanding Officer, marches always on Horſeback at the Head of the Regiment; but when the Governour (or a Superior Officer) is to ſee the Regiment march by, as ſoon as he has Notice of the Governour's Approach, he is to diſmount, and march with his Half-Pike in his Hand, and pay him the Compliment due to his Character in the Army.

ARTICLE IV.

As ſoon as the Town-Major, or the Officer appointed to act for him, has Notice from the Centinels that the Regiment is in View, he ſhould take a Serjeant and a File of Men,

Men, and go to the outermoſt Barrier, and order one of the Draw-bridges to be drawn up after him, 'till he has examin'd the original Orders or Route of the Regiment, leſt the Enemy, by having Notice of the March of the Regiment, ſhould, under that Pretence, endeavour to ſurprize the Town.

The Town-Major and the Party from the Guard are to remain within the Barrier; and when the Regiment approaches near it, he is to order the Gate to be ſhut; upon which the Colonel ſhould halt the Regiment, and ſend the Major with the original Order for his Marching to that Garriſon, to be peruſed by the Town-Major, who is to receive it over the Barrier; and when he finds it authentick, and has diſcover'd the Regiment to be Friends, he then orders the Gate of the Barrier to be open'd, the Draw-bridge to be let down, and the Regiment to march in.

When the Colonel comes up to the Barrier, the Town-Major is to return him the Route or Order, and then conduct the Regiment to the Grand-Parade, where they are to draw up in Battalion; after which, the Colonel, attended by the Town-Major, is to wait upon the Governour, to whom he is to deliver the original Order for his Marching to that Garriſon, and at the ſame time acquaint him with the State of the Regiment, and deliver him a Return of it in Writing.

During the Time the Colonel is at the Governour's, the Regiment may order their Arms; but no Man muſt be ſuffer'd to ſtir out of the Ranks.

After the Governour has peruſed the Route, and the Return of the Regiment, and ask'd ſuch further Queſtions concerning it, as he ſhall think proper, he then orders the Town-Major to wait upon the Colonel back to the Regiment, and to read the general Orders of the Garriſon to the Officers and Soldiers, that they may not commit a Crime through Ignorance; and then to conduct the Regiment to the Alarum Poſt aſſign'd them, and afterwards to their Caſerns, Barracks, or Cantonment, where he is to diſmiſs them.

Upon the Colonel's returning from the Governour's, he is to be received with reſted Arms, and all the Officers at their Poſts with their Half-Pikes in their Hands; which Ceremony is always due to a Colonel from his own Regiment.

It is a ſtanding Rule, that whenever the Compliment of Reſted Arms is paid to any Perſon, or from one Body of Troops to another, it is always to be done from ſhoulder'd Arms.

The Colonel then orders the Men to Shoulder, and the Battalion to be told off into three Grand-Diviſions; after which, the Flank Grand-Diviſions to be wheel'd to the Right and Left inwards, and the Granadiers to draw up oppoſite to, and facing the Center Grand-Diviſion. This being done, he commands them to keep a profound Silence; and the Town-Major being placed in the Center of the Square, reads the General Orders of the Garriſon, and delivers an Extract of the ſame in Writing to the Major, that each Officer may have a Copy of them.

After this they are to be reduced into Battalion; then the Town-Major conducts them to their Regimental Parade, from thence to their Alarum Poſt, and afterwards to the Quarters aſſign'd them, where (after a proper Guard is appointed for the Security of the Quarters, and for relieving the Colonel's Sentry, and the Colours lodg'd) they are to be diſmiſs'd.

It is a General Rule for every Regiment to furniſh their Proportion of Men to the Town-Guard the Day after they arrive; but when that can be diſpenſed with, it would be proper to give them that Day to clean their Arms and Accoutrements: However this depends on the Governour, whether he will or will not allow of it.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

The uſual Guards in a Garriſon, with Directions for Forming the Parade.

ARTICLE I.

THE Guards are compos'd of a Detachment of Men taken from each Regiment, who are to mount daily for the Security of the Place.

The Number of Men who mount daily, muſt depend on the Strength of the Troops in Garriſon, and the Number of Poſts to be guarded; according to which the Duty is calculated: However, it is a fix'd Maxim in moſt of the Garriſons Abroad, to calculate the Duty in ſuch a Manner, that the Soldiers ſhall mount Guard every third Day; and tho' the Troops ſhould be very numerous, they never ſuffer them to be above three Days off, and the fourth on Duty. This is done by Mounting of more Guards than uſual, or by adding to the Number of each Guard.

The Main-Guard is generally compos'd of a Captain, 2 Subalterns, 2 Serjeants, 2 Corporals, 2 Drummers, and 48 or 50 Private Soldiers.

Each Port has a Subaltern, Serjeant, Corporal, Drummer, and 25 or 30 Private Soldiers.

Where there are Outworks of Conſequence, ſuch as Redoubts, detach'd Baſtions, *&c.* Officers Guards mount commonly in them; but more particularly ſo, in Frontier Garriſons; otherwiſe Serjeants Guards may be ſufficient.

The Citadel has generally a Garriſon for its own Security, compoſed of an entire Regiment or more; in which caſe, thoſe Troops do the Duty of the Citadel only, without interfering with that of the Town, or furniſhing any Men for its Guard.

In Frontier Towns, they commonly mount another Guard, call'd the Reſerve, being much in the ſame Nature

as

as a Picquet-Guard in Camp, which is to be ready to march when-ever the Governours ſhall order them.

The Reſerve Guard conſiſts commonly of a Captain, 2 Subalterns, 2 Serjeants, 2 Corporals, 2 Drummers, and 50 Men, or a greater Number, if requiſite.

The Time of mounting the Town-Guards, is commonly at eight, nine, or ten in the Morning: However, that depends on the Governour.

ARTICLE II.

The Men who mount Guard, are to aſſemble at their Captains Quarters, to be view'd by them or their Subalterns, to ſee that their Arms, Ammunition and Accoutrements are in good Order, and that they are clean and well dreſs'd; after which, the orderly Corporals are to march them to the Regimental Parade, and deliver them over to the Adjutant, who is to draw them up according to the Seniority of their Companies, and to ſee that each Company has furniſh'd the Number appointed. He muſt likewiſe Size them as ſoon as they are form'd, which ſhould never be omitted, even in a Detachment of 12 Men, ſince it will add vaſtly to their Appearance.

As ſoon as the Detachments from the ſeveral Companies are drawn up, the Men ſiz'd, and the Files completed, the Adjutant and the Officers of the Regiment, who mount that Day, are to view the Mens Arms, Ammunition, Cloaths and Accoutrements, that there may be nothing wanting when they come to the Grand-Parade.

By this Inſpection, the Adjutant will know if the Officers of the ſeveral Companies have complied with their Duty, in viewing their Men before they were brought to the Regimental Parade; and when he finds that they have been remiſs, by the Men not being clean and well-dreſs'd, or any thing wanting, he is to acquaint the Colonel with it, that they may be reprimanded for their Neglect.

In ſome Garriſons it is the Cuſtom to have the Men, who mount, on their Regimental Parade two Hours before the Beating of the Aſſembly; in order to be exercis'd a-part by their own Adjutants. In others, they are to be at their Regimental Parade only half an Hour before the Aſſembly; in which Caſe, the Whole are exercis'd together on the Grand-Parade by the eldeſt Officer who mounts the Guard.

It

It may be done in this Manner, when the Garriſon is compos'd of Troops of one Nation, and that the Number who mount do not exceed 600 Men; but when it is compos'd of different Nations, or that the Numbers are too great to be exercis'd together, the former Method muſt be follow'd, that of the ſeveral Corps being exercis'd a-part, on their Regimental Parade, by their own Adjutants.

ARTICLE III.

The Drum-Major, with all the Drummers of that Regiment which gives a Captain to the Main-Guard, and the Drummers of the ſeveral Regiments, who are order'd to mount the Guard, are to beat the Aſſembly together.

They are all to parade at the Head of the Main-Guard half an Hour before the Time of Beating; and when the Hour appointed is come, the Drum-Major is to form them into Ranks, and placing himſelf at the Head of them, orders them to beat the Aſſembly, which they are to do quite round the Grand-Parade, and back to the Main-Guard; after which the Drummers, who mount, ſeparate, and march to their Regimental Parade, beating the Aſſembly the whole Way; but the Drum-Major, with the others who don't mount, beat back to the Grand-Parade, where they are to remain 'till the Guards are march'd off.

As ſoon as the Drummers return to their Regimental Parade, the Officers, who mount the Guard, are to march their Men to the Grand-Parade, where they are to draw up, not by Seniority of Regiments, but according to Lot, which the Adjutants are to draw for, before the Detachments arrive, that they may ſhew them where they are to draw up.

The Main-Guard is always compoſed of the Officers and Soldiers of one Regiment, each taking it in his Turn, and beginning with the Eldeſt.

The Regiment which mounts the Main-Guard, draws up on the Right of the Parade; the Detachments of the other Regiments having no fix'd Poſt, are to draw up according to the Lot drawn for them.

The Reaſon why they draw for their Poſts on the Parade, appears to me as follows.

Should the Regiments have a fix'd Poſt on the Parade, by drawing up conſtantly by Seniority of Regiments, the Men could then know what Guard they were to mount, and by that

that Means have it in their Power to carry on a treacherous Correſpondence with the Enemy, for the Delivering up of a Poſt or Outwork of Conſequence; but as their Poſts are drawn for daily, they can't know where their Lot will fall, the Uncertainty of which will keep them out of Temptation, and effectually prevent any Deſign of that Nature; for which Reaſon, neither Officer nor Soldier is allowed to change his Guard with another: Which Maxim, of the Regiments drawing for their Poſts on the Parade, and the not ſuffering of the Officers and Soldiers to change their Guards with one another, I preſume, is founded on the ſad Experience which a contrary Proceeding had produced.

When the Detachments from the ſeveral Regiments are drawn up on the Grand-Parade, the Serjeants who mount are to form themſelves in a Rank entire, oppoſite to their own Detachments, facing the Men, and four Paces advanced, in order to be poſted to the Guards, as the Town-Major tells them off.

ARTICLE IV.

The Town-Major begins on the Right to form the Guards; and as each is told off, he poſts the Serjeants to them, taking them firſt from the Right. As each Guard is told off, and the Serjeant or Serjeants poſted to them, he commands the Men to order their Arms, in which Poſition they are to remain 'till order'd to ſhoulder.

As the Serjeants are poſted to the Guards, they are to fall into the Intervals on the Left of the Front-Rank of their Guards; but where there are two to one Guard, the other is to fall into the Rear of it, in order to prevent the Men from leaving their Ranks, or changing their Guards, which thoſe in the Front are likewiſe to have an Eye to.

When the Guards are form'd, the Drum-Major, with all the Drummers, who aſſembled at the Main Guard, are to beat the Aſſembly along the Head of the Guards, beginning at the Center, and marching to the Right, from thence to the Left, and back again to the Center, where they are to finiſh.

During the Time the Aſſembly is Beating, all the Officers are to draw for their Guards, thoſe who mount the Main-Guard and Reſerve excepted; after which they are to give in their Names with the Regiments they belong to, and the Guard they have drawn, to the Town-Major, who enters them

them in a Book. The Names of the Officers who mount the Main-Guard are to be given by their Adjutant, to be entered with the Reſt.

The Reſerve being a diſtinct Duty from that of the Town-Guards, it is always to be drawn up on the Left of the Parade, or form'd after the reſt are march'd off. It is compos'd of an equal Number of Men from each Regiment, and a Roll of Duty kept apart for the Officers.

When a Guard of Horſe mounts, it is to be drawn up on the Right of the Main-Guard, leaving an Interval between them.

As ſoon as the Town-Major has enter'd all the Officers Names in his Book, he is to order a Drummer to beat a long Ruffle; at which, the Officers are to take their Half-Pikes in their Hands, and place themſelves at the Head of their Guards, facing the Men; the Serjeants are at the ſame time to fall into their Diviſions, and the Drummers to place themſelves between the Firſt and Second Ranks of their Guards.

After this, he orders the Drummer to beat three Flams; at the firſt of which, the Men are to reſt their Firelocks; at the ſecond they are to poize; and at the third, to ſhoulder.

He then orders a ſhort Ruffle to be beat; at which the Officers are to Face to the Left-about to their proper Front, and immediately Dreſs in a Line.

When the whole Parade is to be exercis'd together, the eldeſt Officer, who mounts, is to give the Words of Command, and to proceed in the ſame Manner as is directed from the Exerciſing of a Battalion, by opening the Files, ordering the Officers to take their Poſts in the Rear; but to go no further than the Manual Exercíſe; after which, he orders the Officers to take their Poſts in the Front, and cloſes the Files. If the eldeſt Officer has not a Voice ſtrong enough, or any other Impediment, upon his ſpeaking to the Town-Major, I preſume, he will excuſe him, and order an Adjutant of one of the Regiments to do it, or order it to be done by Beat of Drum.

As ſoon as the Exerciſe is over, the Town-Major orders the Guards to March off, one after another, beginning on the Right; but no Guard is to move 'till he ſays to every Officer who Commands a Guard, *March*. The Reaſon for this is, that he may have Time to View every Guard diſtinctly, to ſee if they are in Order, and that they have their Complement of Men.

When

When the Main-Guard is poſted on the Parade, all th
others march off before it.

As ſoon as the Guards of Foot are marched off from th
Parade, the Guard of Horſe is then to march; but it is no
to move 'till all the Foot are march'd.

This muſt proceed from an old Cuſtom, that of the Foo
having the Rank in Garriſon, and the Horſe in the Field
by which the youngeſt Captain of Foot commanded all th
Captains of Horſe, while in Garriſon; and the younge
Captain of Horſe commanded all the Captains of Foot
the Field, without any Regard to the Dates of their Com
miſſions. But that Cuſtom is now aboliſh'd, and every Of
cer commands according to Seniority, whether of Horſ
Foot, or Dragoons; however, that Cuſtom of the Foo
Guards marching off firſt, ſtill ſubſiſts; becauſe they are no
only more numerous, but the immediate Security of th
Place is committed to their Charge: Whereas, the Gua
of Horſe is only employ'd to patrol during the Night in th
Streets, and to reconnoitre the Avenues leading to the Tow
at the Opening of the Gates, to diſcover if the Troops o
the Enemy are near, that the Town may not be ſurpriz'd.

When the Drummers of the Main-Guard, or that whic
marches off firſt, beat a March, all the Drummers of th
other Guards are to do the ſame.

As ſoon as the Guards are marched off, the Town-Majo
ſhould wait upon the Governour, or Commander of th
Garriſon, and acquaint him with it, and know if he has an
Commands for the Garriſon; after which, he returns to th
Parade and diſmiſſes the Adjutants, or ſends them Notice
by an orderly Serjeant, that there are no further Com
mands for them at that Time; 'till which they are not to
leave the Parade.

The Orderly Serjeant and Corporal of each Company ar
to attend the Parade every Morning, and to remain ther
'till the Adjutants are diſmiſſed, that if any Orders are t
be deliver'd, they may be ready to receive them.

In all the *French* Garriſons, as ſoon as the Parade is form
ed, and the Guards ready to march, the Town-Major ac
quaints the Governour, or Commandant, with it, who i
obliged to come and ſee the Guards march off; but in th
Garriſons of *Holland*, the Governours lie under no ſuch In
junction, tho' they frequently do it.

In Garriſons which are remote from the Enemy, the Or
ders are generally deliver'd out immediately after the Guard
ar

are marched off from the Parade; but in Frontier Towns they are never given out to the Adjutants 'till the Gates are ſhut.

When the King, a Prince of the Blood, the Captain-General, or a Perſon of Authority, who is entitled to a Guard, comes into a Garriſon, the eldeſt Regiment is always to mount a proper Guard on him during his Stay there, without Rolling with the others, or having any Allowance for it in the Town Duty; being to furniſh the ſame Number of Men for the Parade, Reſerve and Detachments as before: This is the Cuſtom Abroad; but I preſume it is meant only when ſuch great Perſons ſtay a Night or two; for ſhould they continue any conſiderable Time, the Duty would fall too hard upon one Regiment; which Rule, in my Opinion, may be very juſtly broke thro' by either allowing them for it in the other Duties, or by ordering each Regiment to take that Guard in its Turn; the latter of which appears the moſt equitable, becauſe the Town-Guards and Detachments are much more fatiguing than thoſe mounted on great Perſons

ARTICLE V.

The Officers who are to be reliev'd, are to order their Men to ſtand to their Arms as ſoon as they hear the Drum of thoſe who are coming to relieve them; and when they come in Sight, they are to order their Men to Shoulder their Arms. When the New Guard approaches very near, the Officer of the Old One orders his Men to reſt their Firelocks, and the Drummers to beat a March.

The Officer who comes to relieve, is to draw up his Guard oppoſite to the old One, in the ſame Manner that they are, whether ſix or three Deep, or in a Rank entire; and when the Ranks are dreſs'd, he then orders his Men to reſt their Firelocks; in which Poſition both Guards are to remain 'till thoſe who mount in the Outworks have march'd paſt them, which they are to do between the two Guards, provided they are the Port-Guards, otherwiſe they can't interfere with thoſe ſent to the Outworks. After this, the Officers advance towards one another, paying the uſual Ceremony with their Hats, and the Officer who is to be reliev'd delivers all the Orders relating to the Guard to the Officer who comes to relieve him, acquainting him with the Number of Sentrys by day and by Night, what Patrols, *&c.* The Serjeants and Corporals of the Old Guard deliver their Orders

Orders to thoſe of the New at the ſame Time; and when that is over, the Men of both Guards ſhould be ordered to Shoulder; the Corporal of the new Guard is to number his Men, and to draw out the Number of Sentrys who are then to be poſted, forming them into Ranks, and, being conducted by the Corporal of the old Guard, march with them to Relieve the Sentrys. They go firſt to the Sentry who is poſted the furtheſt from the Guard, and Relieve him, and ſo one after another 'till they end with him at the Guard-Room Door.

The Corporal of the new Guard, when he Relieves the Sentrys, is to examine whether the Sentry-Boxes, Platforms, Carriages of the Cannon, Paliſades, *&c.* are in Order, or damag'd. If he finds any of thoſe Things damaged, he is not to Relieve that Sentry who had the Charge of them 'till the Town-Major is acquainted with it, otherwiſe he muſt be anſwerable for the Things ſo damaged, or loſt; but when he finds every thing in Order, he is to Relieve the Sentry. The Corporals are likewiſe to be attentive when the Sentrys are delivering their Orders to one another, leſt they ſhould omit ſome Part of them.

As ſoon as the Sentrys are reliev'd, the Corporal of the old Guard returns with thoſe reliev'd, forms them on the Left of the Guard, and acquaints his Officer with it. The Corporal of the new Guard returns at the ſame time, and acquaints the Officer with his Proceedings, and whether he has reliev'd all the Sentrys, or not; and if not, the Reaſons for it, that the Town-Major may be acquainted with it.

Where there are two Corporals on a Guard, one of them is to take the charge of the Guard Room, which he is to have deliver'd over to him clean, and the ſeveral Utenſils belonging to it in good Order, by the Corporal of the old Guard, which may be done while the others are Relieving the Sentrys; but where there is but one Corporal, it muſt be done either before or after the Sentrys are reliev'd; the Corporal muſt take an exact Account of what Things are deliver'd to him, and the Condition they are in, ſince he muſt anſwer for what are loſt or ſpoilt thro' Careleſſneſs.

It being a Cuſtom for the Drummers to take care of the Officers Guard-Room, with all the Utenſils belonging to it, and to keep it clean, the Drummer of the old Guard is to deliver it over to the Drummer of the new One in proper Order.

When theſe Things are done, the Officer of the old Guard is to order his Men to Reſt their Firelocks, then Club; after which,

which, to Form their Ranks to the Right or Left, according as they are to march from the Place they are drawn up in, and then March off, the Drummer beating a Troop; for which Reaſon, when a Guard diſmounts, it is call'd, *Trooping off a Guard.* When the Men of the old Guard Club their Firelocks, thoſe of the new One are to be order'd by their Officer to Reſt, and his Drummer is to beat a March, when the other beats the Troop.

When the Officer of the old Guard has marched his Guard about an hundred Yards, he may then diſmiſs the Men, firſt halting, and then diſmiſs them with the Ruff of a Drum.

The Captain of the Main-Guard is to march to the Grand Parade, and draw up his Men before he diſmiſs them.

Thoſe who Command the Guards in the Outworks, are, when Reliev'd, to march their Guards an hundred Paces within the Gates before they diſmiſs them.

When a Guard which Mounts with Colours is reliev'd, or order'd to be diſmiſs'd, the Men are not to club their Firelocks, but to March with ſhoulder'd Arms, and the Drummers to beat a March to the Grand Parade, and draw up; after which the Officer who commands the Guard is to ſend the Enſign to Lodge the Colours with a proper Detachment to guard them, and to remain on the Parade with the Reſt 'till he returns with the Detachment; after this he orders them to Club their Firelocks, and then diſmiſſes them; but if the Place where the Colours are to be Lodg'd is at a conſiderable Diſtance, or that the Weather is very bad, he may then order the Enſign to diſmiſs his Detachment as ſoon as he has lodg'd the Colours; in which Caſe he diſmiſſes the reſt, as ſoon as the Colours are marched out of ſight.

As ſoon as the old Guards are marched off, the new Guards are to be drawn up on the Ground where the old Ones ſtood; after which, the Officers may order the Men to Ground their Arms, or place them againſt the Wall of the Guard-Room, or lodge them in it, according as the Conveniency of the Place, or the Weather will permit.

When a Sentry has not been reliev'd by the Corporal, for the Reaſons already mention'd, that of ſuffering any Thing to be loſt, *&c.* the Officer of the Guard is to ſend the Corporal to acquaint the Town-Major with it; on which, he is to ſend one of the Town Adjutants to enquire into the Damages done, and order the Sentry to be reliev'd, and ſent to the Provoſt Marſhal's, or Place appointed for

Priſoners, 'till he can be try'd in a regular Manner for the ſame.

When the Guard-Rooms are damaged, or the Utenſils belonging to them loſt, or that the Gates of the Town, and Barriers, or the Draw-bridges are ſpoil'd, or out of order, the Officer is not to Relieve the Guard 'till he has ſent to the Town-Major to acquaint him with it, otherwiſe he will be obliged to repair thoſe Damages.

ARTICLE VI.

The Manner of Relieving the Sentrys, with Directions how they are to behave on their Poſts.

When the Corporal goes to Relieve the Sentrys, as ſoon as he comes within ſix Paces of the Sentry who is to be reliev'd, he orders his Men to Halt, and then to Reſt their Firelocks; the Sentry who is to be reliev'd is to Reſt his Arms at the ſame time; the Corporal then orders the firſt who is to go on Duty, to Relieve the Sentry; upon which he Recovers his Arms, and Advances within a Pace of the Sentry, then Halts, and Reſts his Arms, and receives the Orders, relating to that Poſt, from the Sentry who is to be reliev'd; to which the Corporals are to give Attention, leſt ſome Part of the Orders might be omitted. As ſoon as they have deliver'd their Orders, they both Recover their Arms, and exchange Places, then reſt their Arms again. This being done, the Corporal orders the other Men to Shoulder, at which the two Sentrys do the ſame, and the Sentry, who is relieved, falls in the Rear of thoſe who are going to Relieve; then the Corporal Marches to the next Poſt.

If the Sentrys are required to have their Bayonets fix'd when the Orders are deliver'd, they are to Poize their Firelocks, Reſt on their Arms, and he who Relieves draws his Bayonet, and fixes it, and he that is reliev'd unfixes his Bayonet and returns it; then they Recover their Arms, exchange Places, and perform all the other Motions above mention'd.

All Sentrys are to be Vigilant on their Poſts; neither are they to Sing, ſmoke Tobacco, nor ſuffer any Noiſe to be made near them. They are not to ſit down, lay their Arms out of their Hands, or ſleep; but to keep moving about their Poſts, if the Weather will allow of it.

The

They are to have a watchful Eye over the Things committed to their Charge, and not to ſuffer any of them to be removed, or taken away, 'till they have Orders from the Corporal of the Guard for it.

They are not to ſuffer any one to touch or handle their Arms; or, in the Night-time, to come within the Reach of them.

They are not to ſuffer any Light to remain, or any Fire to be made near their Poſts in the Night-time. Neither is any Sentry to be reliev'd, nor removed from his Poſt, but by the Corporal of the Guard.

No Body is to ſtrike or abuſe a Sentry on his Poſt; but when he has committed a Crime, he is to be reliev'd, and then puniſh'd, according to the Rules and Articles of War.

When a Sentinel is taken ill on his Poſt, or that the Cold is ſo great that he can't ſupport himſelf under it, he is to call the Corporal of the Guard, and acquaint him with it, in order to his being reliev'd; but when the Sentry, ſo taken, is at too great a Diſtance to be heard by the Corporal, the next Sentry to him is to Paſs the Word for the Corporal of the Guard, and ſo from one to another, 'till it comes to the Guard; for which Reaſon, it is a ſtanding Rule to poſt Sentrys within Call of one another, particularly on the Ramparts of a Town.

When Sentrys have Orders to ſtop People in the Night-time, in order to their being examin'd, or to make Rounds ſtand; as ſoon as they come within twenty Paces of them, they are to Challenge boldly, *Who comes there*? If the Perſons ſo challeng'd don't anſwer, but approach, the Sentrys are to Make Ready their Arms, and Challenge a ſecond time; and if they ſtill advance without anſwering, they are to Cock their Firelocks, and Challenge a third time; and if they advance after that without anſwering, the Sentrys are then to Fire, and return to their Guard, if they find it neceſſary; otherwiſe they may continue at their Poſts, and Load again immediately; but when the Perſons challeng'd anſwer, the Sentrys are to order them to Stand, and call the Serjeant of the Guard.

A Sentry on his Poſt in the Night, is to know no Body but by the Counter-Sign. When he Challenges, and is anſwer'd, *Relief*, he is to order them to Stand, by ſaying, *Stand Relief, advance Corporal*; upon which the Corporal Halts the Men, and advances alone within a Yard of the Sentry's Firelock, (firſt ordering his Men to Reſt their Firelocks, on

which the Sentry does the ſame, as is directed in the Relieving of Sentrys) and gives him the Counter-Sign, taking care that no other Perſon ſhall hear it; after which, the Relief goes in the Manner before-mention'd.

All Sentrys, except thoſe at the Guard-Room Door, when they Challenge, and are anſwered *Round*, or *Patrol*, they are to ſay, *Paſs Round, or Patrol*, and to Reſt their Firelocks 'till they are paſs'd, and not ſuffer them to come within the Reach of their Arms.

When two Sentrys are placed at one Poſt, which is always done at Advanced Poſts, they are to be very attentive, and keep a profound Silence; and when they hear any Noiſe, ſuch as the March of Horſe or Foot, or any Number of Men approaching towards them, one of them is to return immediately to the Guard, and to acquaint the Officer with it, but without any Noiſe, and then to go back to his Poſt. The Sentry who remain'd is to liſten with great Attention to the Noiſe, in order to diſcover what it was, and to make his Firelock Ready, and ſtand upon his Guard, that he may not be taken by Surprize; and when any Perſon or Perſons come near him, and won't anſwer or ſtand when he has challeng'd and commanded them to do it, according to the foregoing Directions, he is to Fire, and return to his Guard.

The Sentry at the Guard-Room Door is to Challenge briskly when any Perſon comes within twenty Paces of him; and if he is anſwer'd *Round*, he is then to ſay, *Stand Round*, and Reſt his Firelock, and call the Serjeant of the Guard. He is not to ſuffer the Round to approach after that, 'till order'd by his Officer.

When an Officer goes to Viſit the Sentrys, the Sentry is to Challenge when he comes within ten or twelve Paces of his Poſt; and when he is anſwer'd, *the Viſit*, he is to ſay, *Stand Viſit, advance one with the Counter-Sign*; upon which he Reſts his Arms, and permits the Perſon, who is to give the Counter-Sign, to approach within a Pace of the Muzzle of his Firelock, that none elſe may diſcover the Counter-Sign; therefore all Counter-Signs for Foot ought to be a Name, Word, or Number, and that to be ſpoke very near, and no louder than is neceſſary for the Sentry to hear; it being eaſy in the Night for the Enemy to approach undiſcover'd, near enough to diſtinguiſh a Hem, Whiſtle, or Slap on the Pouch, ſhould they be given for Counter-Signs, and by that means be able to impoſe on the Sentry and ſeize him, and after that Surprize the Guard.

A Sen-

A Sentry who is found Sleeping on his Poſt, or attempts to deliver it up to the Enemy, or ſuffers it to be ſurpriz'd thro' Negligence, is to be puniſh'd with Death; therefore all Sentrys muſt be very alert, that they may avoid falling into theſe enormous Crimes, ſince the Articles of War, and the conſtant Practice of all Nations, make it abſolutely Death to thoſe who ſhall be found Guilty of them.

When the Counter-Sign is chang'd during the Night, the Sentrys are to take it from none but the Corporal of the Guard.

When a Town is Beſieg'd, or that they are apprehenſive of the Enemy's making ſome Attempt to Surprize them, it is cuſtomary for the Sentrys poſted on the Ramparts to call out, every Half-Hour, with a loud Voice, *All is well*; when this is order'd, the Town-Major is to aſſign the Poſt it ſhall begin at, and which Way it ſhall go round. Upon the Firſt's ſaying, *All is well*, the next to him is to ſay the ſame, and ſo from one to another 'till it comes quite round to him who began it. The Deſign of this is to keep the Sentrys alert on their Poſts, and to prevent their falling aſleep. The Sentrys at the Guard-Room Doors are to be very attentive to the Word (*All is well*) coming round; and when they find that it does not come punctually to the Time, they are to acquaint their Officers with it, who are to ſend a Corporal with a File of Men round their Sentrys, leſt any of them ſhould have fallen aſleep, or quitted their Poſts, in order to find out where it ſtopped, that the Offender may be brought to Puniſhment.

The Word going round in this Manner, is never uſed but in time of Danger; or now and then to inſtruct young or inexperienced Troops in their Duty: For when Things of this Nature, which ſhould be only practiſed on proper Occaſions, are conſtantly uſed, when there is no Neceſſity for them, they grow ſo familiar 'till at laſt they fall into Contempt, and, perhaps, are neglected when there is a real Occaſion for their being punctually obſerved. I am therefore of Opinion, that it ſhould not be uſed but for the Reaſons above-mention'd, that of real Danger, and to inſtruct young Soldiers.

I believe what I have already ſaid, relating to the Duty of a Sentry on his Poſt, will be ſufficient to give any one a full and clear Idea of it: However, I don't pretend to ſay that this is all, ſince particular Caſes will require particular Orders; and without they are mention'd, it is impoſſible to

give the neceſſary Directions; but whatever Orders a Sentry ſhall receive, whether thoſe above-mentioned, or others, he is to execute them with the utmoſt Exactneſs, ſince the Safety of an Army, or the Preſervation of a Town, may often depend on the due Performance of his Orders.

CHAP. XII.

Conſiſting of Inſtructions to the Officers on Guard, from the Time of Mounting 'till they are Reliev'd; with the Manner of going and receiving Rounds, and ſending Patrols; with the Deſign of them.

ARTICLE I.

NO Officer is to leave his Guard during the Time he is on his Duty, which in Garriſon never exceeds twenty four Hours, but muſt ſend for what he wants.

He muſt not ſuffer above two Men at a time to leave the Guard, and then only for their Victuals and Drink; when they return, he may allow two more to go off on the ſame Account; they ſhould be allowed no more Time than what is abſolutely Neceſſary, that each may have his Turn; which if they tranſgreſs, the Officer ſhould puniſh them for it at their Return. But leſt ſome of the Men ſhould ask Leave juſt before they are to go Sentry, in order to eſcape or avoid their Duty, the Officer of the Guard ſhould always ſend for the Corporal before he gives a Man Leave, that he may inform him when he is to go Sentry; as alſo to order the Serjeant or Corporal to ſet down their Names, with the Hour they went, and the Time allow'd them; when they return they are to acquaint their Officer with it, that he may know whether they have been punctual or not.

The Officers of the Port-Guards are to examine all Strangers who come into the Garriſon, taking their Names in Writing

Writing, with the Place where they are to lodge, and the Time they intend to ſtay; which they are to mention in the next Report they ſend to the Captain of the Main-Guard; but when a Perſon of Diſtinction comes into the Town, the Officer of the Port-Guard is to ſend an Account of it in Writing immediately, by an Orderly Man, to the Captain of the Main-Guard, who is to acquaint the Governour, or Commandant, with it as ſoon as he can. When any Perſon comes into the Town, whom they have Reaſon to ſuſpect, by his not being able to give a good Account of himſelf, the Officer is to ſend him to the Captain of the Main-Guard, who is to ſecure him 'till he can acquaint the Governour with it, in order to his being further examin'd.

ARTICLE II.

The Officers of the Port-Guards, are to ſend a Report Night and Morning, in Writing, to the Captain of the Main-Guard, in which they are to inſert the Names of all Strangers who have come into the Town, the Place where they lodge, and the Time they intend to remain, and of thoſe who go out of the Town; as alſo of every Thing that ſhall happen on their Guard; which Reports are to be ſign'd by the Officers, ſpecifying the Day of the Month, and the Port it came from, and to be ſent by the Serjeants who go for the Keys to ſhut and open the Gates.

All the other Guards, except the Reſerve, are to ſend their Reports in the ſame Manner, and at the ſame Time, to the Captain of the Main-Guard. Theſe are called the Ordinary Reports, at being ſent conſtantly Night and Morning, at a fix'd Time.

Thoſe which are called Extraordinary Reports, are only ſent when any thing Extraordinary happens, on or near a Guard, or a Perſon of Diſtinction comes into Town, that the Captain of the Main-Guard may acquaint the Governour with it immediately.

As ſoon as the Captain of the Main-Guard receives the Night Reports, he is to write them over fair in a Sheet of Paper, or more, if requiſite, putting the Report of each Guard diſtinctly by itſelf, with the Officer's Name who commands it; after which he is to ſign it; and when the Gates are ſhut, and the Orders are given out, he is to wait on the Governour, give him the Patrole, and deliver him the Report of the Whole.

The Captain of the Main-Guard is to enter the Morning Report in the ſame manner, with every Thing that has occur'd during the Night, either relating to the ſeveral Rounds or Patrols, with the Time each went and finiſh'd, that it may be known whether the Officers have complied with their Orders, or not; as alſo what Priſoners are on the Main-Guard, with the Reaſons for their being committed; and whether Soldiers, Townſmen, or Strangers taken up on Suſpicion. In ſhort, he is to put every Thing down which has happen'd between the Evening Report and the Time of Relief, in order to give a faithful and exact Report to the Governour, which he is to do as ſoon as he is reliev'd by giving him the Parole firſt in his Ear, and then deliver him the Report.

When any thing happens on any of the Guards between the Morning Report and the Time of Relief, ſuch as Strangers coming into a Town, *&c.* the Officers are to ſend an Account of it to the Captain of the Main-Guard, that it may be enter'd with the reſt, before he delivers it to the Governour.

When any of the Rounds neglect going, or don't perform it at the Hour appointed, the Officers of thoſe Guards to which the Round or Rounds have not gone, or gone after the Time directed, are to mention it in the Morning Report to the Captain of the Main-Guard, who is to enter it in that which he gives to the Governour, that the Reaſon for ſuch Neglect may be enquired into.

The Reſerve-Guard being only a Number of Men kept in a Readineſs, to act either in the Town, or to March out of it, as the Governour ſhall have an occaſion for their Service; the Officer who commands it, is therefore to receive no Orders but from the Governour, or the Town-Major, by his Directions, which he is to be ready to execute at a Minute's Warning. He is therefore to keep no more Sentries than what are neceſſary for the Security of his Guard, and only to Patrole near his own Guard-Room: Neither is he under the Direction of the Captain of the Main-Guard, nor to make any Report to him; but when he is reliev'd he is to wait on the Governour, give him the Parole, and deliver him a Report of his Guard in Writing, ſign'd.

ARTICLE III.

The Officer of the Port-Guards are to keep the Barriers ſhut and the Draw-Bridges up, on Sundays and Holidays, during

during the Time of Divine Service; as alſo every Day from Twelve a Clock 'till One.

They are likewiſe to ſhut the Barriers, and to draw up the Draw-bridges, at the Approach of any Party of arm'd Men, though' it ſhould be Detachments of their own Garriſon, and acquaint the Captain of the Main-Guard with it immediately, that he may wait on the Governour to receive his Orders for their Admittance, without which they muſt not be permitted to come into the Town. One Officer or a Serjeant may be allowed Entrance, to ſhew the Order or Rout, that the Governour may have an exact Account of them.

When any Detachment, or a Number of arm'd Men, enters the Town, the Officer of the Port-Guard is to have his Men under Arms: And if it is a Detachment commanded by an Officer, the Men of the Port-Guard are to Reſt their Arms, and the Drummer to beat a March, provided the Party which enters beats a March; but if it is only a Serjeant's Party, the Guard is to remain Shoulder'd, and the Officer remains at the Head of it without his Half-Pike in his Hand. This may be look'd upon, by ſome, as too great a Compliment from an Officers Guard to a Serjeant's Party; but they muſt know that it is not done by Way of Reſpect to thoſe who enter, but for the Security of the Town; leſt the Enemy, by having forged or procured a Rout or Order, might ſend ſuch a Party to ſeize the Gate, while the Body lay concealed at ſome little Diſtance, and ready to advance on the firſt Signal. It is therefore a ſtanding Rule in all Garriſons, for the Port-Guards to be under Arms, when any Number of arm'd Men march into the Town, tho' they belong to the Garriſon.

When a Fire breaks out in a Garriſon, the Officers of the Port-Guards are to put their Men immediately under Arms, and order the Barriers to be ſhut, and the Draw-Bridges drawn up, and to keep them ſo 'till the Fire is extinguiſh'd.

This Precaution is abſolutely neceſſary in Frontier Garriſons, otherwiſe Towns might be eaſily ſurpriz'd, ſhould the Gates be left open on ſuch an Occaſion; it being natural for every Body to run to that Part which is ſet on fire; which might be contrived on purpoſe by the Enemy, by procuring proper Emiſſaries to do it, and who by lodging Troops, at a time appointed, within a proper Diſtance of the Town, might, during the Conſternation which always attends ſuch Accidents, ſeize one of the Gates, and by that means poſ-

ſeſs

ſeſs themſelves of the Town; but by the ſhutting of the Barriers, and raiſing the Draw-bridges, that Danger will be effectually prevented, and leave them no Room for ſuch an Undertaking, at leaſt with any Hopes of Succeſs.

When a Riot, or a tumultuous Aſſembly, happens near a Port, the Officer of that Guard is to uſe the ſame Precautions, in ſhutting of the Barrier, drawing up the Bridges, and keeping his Men under Arms 'till it is over, for the Reaſons above mention'd; but when theſe Things happen to be only ſome ſmall Diſorder, occaſion'd by a Quarrel, he may ſend a Serjeant and a File of Men to quell it.

When a Riot happens in thoſe Parts of the Town which are at a Diſtance from the Ports, the Captain of the Main-Guard is to ſend Parties, both from his own and the Horſe-Guard, to diſperſe the Mob, and ſeize the Offenders.

In all Frontier Garriſons, it is neceſſary to double the Guards on Market-days, and to examine ſtrictly all cover'd Waggons, or thoſe loaded with Hay or Straw; as alſo Boats, Barges or Ships, and every Thing in which Men, Arms, or Ammunition may lie conceal'd; and when any Thing of that Nature is diſcover'd, they are to ſtop it, and acquaint the Captain of the Main-Guard, that he may inform the Governour with it, and receive his Directions.

ARTICLE IV.

Half an Hour before the Gates are to be ſhut, which is generally at the Setting of the Sun, a Serjeant and four Men muſt be ſent from each Port to the Main-Guard for the Keys; at which Time the Drummers of the Port-Guards are to go upon the Ramparts and beat a Retreat, to give Notice to thoſe without, that the Gates are going to be ſhut, that they may come in before they are. As ſoon as the Drummers have finiſhed the Retreat, which they ſhould not do in leſs than a Quarter of an Hour, the Officers muſt order the Barriers and Gates to be ſhut, leaving only the Wickets open; after which, no Soldier ſhould be ſuffer'd to go out of the Town, tho' Port-liberty ſhould be allow'd them in the Day-time.

The Town-Major, or, in his Abſence, one of the Town-Adjutants, muſt take a Serjeant and 12 Men from the Main-Guard and go to the Governour for the Keys of the Town, bring them from thence to the Main-Guard, and deliver them to the Serjeants of the ſeveral Ports, who are to

carry

carry them to their Guards, Eſcorted by the Men they brought with them. As ſoon as the Sentinels at the Ports perceive the Serjeants coming with the Keys, they are to give notice of it, on which the Officers are to turn out their Guards, ranging the Men under the Vault or Arch of the Port, in two Ranks, Facing one another, that the Keys may paſs between them. As ſoon as the Serjeants arrive with the Keys, the Officers are to order their Men to Reſt their Firelocks, and the Drummers to beat a March 'till the Gates are Lock'd. He muſt order a Corporal and four Men more with Arms to eſcort the Keys to the outermoſt Barrier, and to place two Men with Reſted Arms, on every Draw-Bridge, 'till they return from Locking the Barriers. He muſt ſend likewiſe a ſufficient Number of Men without Arms to aſſiſt in the Locking of the Gates and Drawing up the Bridges.

When there are any Guards to be poſted in the Outworks during the Night, the Town-Major, or one of the Town-Adjutants, ſhould go along with the Keys of that Port from whence they are to be detached, in order to ſee them Poſted, and to give the Officer or Serjeant who commands them the Word, Counter-Sign, and the neceſſary Orders relating to the Care of the Poſt or Poſts to be Guarded, and then ſee the Gates of that Port immediately Locked.

When there are Guards to be placed in the Outworks at different Parts of the Town, and that the Town-Major and his Aids can't ſee them all Poſted themſelves, without keeping the Gates open beyond the uſual Time, the Town-Major may ſend Directions to the Officers of the Port-Guards, from whence they are to be Detach'd, to go and Poſt them, with the Orders, Parole, and Counter Sign, in Writing, ſeal'd up, to leave with thoſe who command them, with Directions not to open it 'till the Gates are ſhut. As Caſes of this Nature ſeldom happen, I don't know that the above Method was ever practis'd; and therefore won't recommend it, but when it can't be avoided, by the Night-Poſts in the Outworks being too numerous for the proper Officers to ſee them all Poſted themſelves; but whenever this ſhould be the Caſe, I believe the Expedient won't be thought improper.

When the Gates are ſhut, which the Officers on the Port-Guards are always to ſee done, the Keys are to be carried back to the Main-Guard, by the Serjeants and Eſcorts who brought them, and deliver'd to the Town-Major, or Adjutant, who, when they are all return'd, is to carry them to the

the Governour's, eſcorted by a Serjeant and 12 Men from the Main-Guard.

As ſoon as the Gates are ſhut, all the additional Night-Sentrys within the Walls are to be poſted, and to take Poſſeſſion of all other Night Poſts which ſhall be order'd; after which the Officers are to order their Men to Recover their Arms, and lodge them in the Guard-Room, taking Care to place them in ſuch Order, that every Man may take his own Firelock, when commanded, without any Buſtle or Confuſion.

The Serjeants who carried the Keys back to the Main-Guard, are to remain there 'till they have receiv'd the Night Orders from the Town-Major, and the Tickets for the Rounds from the Captain of the Main-Guard; after which they are to return to their Guards, and deliver the Orders, Parole, and Counter-Sign, with the Tickets, to their Officers, and then to the Corporals of the Guards.

As ſoon as the Gates are ſhut and the Keys return'd to the Governour, the Town-Major ſhould come to the Main-Guard, and deliver out the Night Orders to the Majors and Adjutants of the Garriſon, and to the Serjeants from the Port-Guards and others.

The Captain of the Main-Guard is to deliver to the Serjeant from the Port-Guards, as many Tickets as there are Rounds order'd to go, taking care that the Names of the Officers Guards are named on the Tickets, one of which is to be deliver'd to every Round as they paſs.

In Frontier Garriſons, they commonly order ſo many Rounds as to have an Officer always walking on the Ramparts in the Night. When this is neceſſary, they compute the Time that the firſt Round will be going round the Town; and when that has almoſt finiſh'd, the Second is to begin, and ſo one after another 'till the Reveille Beats. Theſe are called the Viſiting Rounds. The Officers who diſmount in the Morning, are always appointed to go theſe Rounds; becauſe they are furtheſt from Duty. They are to aſſemble at the Main-Guard at the Time of delivering the Night Orders, to draw by Lot for the Hour each is to go his Round at; after which the Town-Major is to enter their Names, Regiments they belong to, and the Time of going their Rounds in his Book; that if the Governour ſhould find by the Morning's Report, that no Round went ſuch an Hour, or ſtaid beyond the uſual Time, he may inform Him who ſhould have gone then, that the Reaſon may be enquired into.

The

The Retreat, or Tat-too, is generally beat at Ten a-lock at Night in the Summer, and at Eight in Winter. It perform'd by the Drum-Major, and all the Drummers that Regiment which gives a Captain to the Main-Guard at Day.

They are to begin at the Main-Guard, beat round the rand Parade, and return back and finiſh where they began. hey are to be eſcorted by a Serjeant and a File of Men om the Main-Guard.

They are to be anſwer'd by the Drummers of all the other uards; as alſo by four Drummers of each Regiment in eir reſpective Quarters, if the Town is very large.

The Tat-too, is the Signal given for the Soldiers to Retire heir Chambers, to put out their Fire and Candle, and go Bed. The Publick Houſes are, at the ſame time, to t their Doors, and to ſell no more Liquor that Night.

n Frontier Garriſons, the Burghers are conſtantly obliged, hen they go out after Tat-too, to carry a Light with them. hoſe who don't, are taken up by the Patrols, and kept iſoners all Night upon the Guard, in order to be puniſhed xt Morning by the Governour, for diſobeying the Orders the Garriſon.

ARTICLE V.

The Patrols are to go every Hour in the Night, from the ating of the Tat-too till the Reveille. The Patrols are mmonly compos'd of a Serjeant and 6 or 12 Men from ch Guard. They are to walk in the Streets to prevent ſorders, or any Number of People aſſembling together, d to oblige all thoſe who keep Publick Houſes to ſend ay their Gueſts and ſhut their Doors. When they ſee any ght in the Soldiers Caſerns or Barracks, to oblige them to t it out, or acquaint the Guard of thoſe Quarters with it, t they may ſee it done. To take up all the Soldiers they dout of their Quarters; as alſo all the Inhabitants who without Lights, if the Orders of the Garriſon are ſuch, d carry them Priſoners to the Guard. When any of the blick Houſes entertain Company after the Patrol has for-d them, they are to carry the Landlords to the Guard, that e Governour may puniſh them the next Day for their Diſ-edience.

The Town-Major is to Aſſign a proper Diſtrict for each uard to Patrol in, by Dividing of the Town in ſuch a Man-

ner,

ner, that every Street may be included in one Patrol o another. The Diſtricts ſhould lie Contiguous to the ſeveral Guards, that the Patrols may not interfere with one another. The Middle of the Town belongs to the Main Guard, and the Streets near the Ramparts, to the Port Guards.

It is the Cuſtom, in ſome Garriſons, for the Horſe-Guard to perform theſe Patrols on Horſe-back. When the Town is very large, it will be very proper to order them to Patrol through the Principal Streets of the Town, and the great Squares and Market-Places, to prevent any tumultuous Aſſembly, or Riſing of the Inhabitants; but as to the performing of the other Parts, for which Patrols are deſigned, as above-mention'd, how is it poſſible for them to comply with it? For as the Noiſe of the Horſes Feet will be heard at a conſiderable Diſtance, it will be eaſy for thoſe who diſobey the Orders of the Garriſon to avoid the Patrol, and thereby eſcape due Puniſhment: For which Reaſon Patrols of Horſe, in Towns, are generally laid aſide, except in the Caſe above-mentioned, and thoſe of Foot appointed in their Room; which, as being more uſeful, are infinitely more proper.

When the Patrols are Challeng'd by the Sentries, they are to anſwer, *Patrol*; upon which the Sentry replies, *Pass Patrol.*

When they return from Patroling, and are Challeng'd by the Sentry at the Guard-Room Door, they are to Anſwer *Patrol of the Guard*, naming it, as Main-Guard, Reſerve or ſuch a Port; upon which the Sentry permits them to go into the Guard-Room and Lodge their Arms.

As ſoon as the Patrol Returns, the Serjeant is to make a Report to his Officer of every Thing that happen'd during his Patrol, and what Priſoners he has brought to the Guard that he may examine them himſelf, and ſet down their Names in Writing, the Time and Reaſon for their being taken up, the Place of Abode, if Towns-Men, or if Soldiers, the Regiment and Company they belong to; all which muſt be inſerted in the Morning Report to the Captain of the Main-Guard, at which time the Priſoners muſt be conducted there alſo.

ARTICLE

ARTICLE VI.

The ordinary Rounds are Three. The Town-Major's Round, the Grand Round, and the Viſiting Round.

The Extraordinary Rounds, are thoſe which are appointed to go every Hour of the Night, or every Two Hours, as the Governour ſhall think proper; which Rounds are perform'd by the Officers who diſmount the Guard that Morning, and are call'd the Viſiting Rounds, as before mention'd.

As ſoon as the Gates are ſhut, and the Night Orders deliver'd to the Garriſon, the Town-Major may begin his Round; the Deſign of which is, that he may ſee whether all the Gates are ſhut, the additional Night Poſts and Sentinels poſted, and the Officers and Soldiers all on their Guards.

Manner of going the Rounds, and receiving them.

When the Town-Major goes his Round, he comes to the Main-Guard and demands a Serjeant and four or ſix Men to eſcort him to the next Guard; and when it is dark one of the Men is to carry a Light. He may go to which Gate firſt he pleaſes: whereas, all the other Rounds, except the Governour's or Commandant's, are to go according to the Method preſcrib'd them.

As ſoon as the Sentinel at the Guard-Room Door perceives the Round coming, he ſhould give Notice to the Guard, that they may be ready to turn out when order'd; and when the Round comes within 20 Paces of the Guard, he is to Challenge briskly, and when he is anſwer'd by the Serjeant who attends the Round, *Town-Major's Round*, he is to ſay, *Stand Round*, and Reſt his Firelock; after which, he is to call out immediately, *Serjeant, turn out the Guard, Town-Major's Round.* No Round is to advance after the Sentinel has Challeng'd and order'd them to ſtand.

Upon the Sentinel's calling, the Serjeant is to turn out the Guard immediately, drawing up the Men in good Order with ſhoulder'd Arms, and the Officer is to place himſelf at the Head of it with his Arms in his Hand. After this, he is to order the Serjeant and four or ſix Men to advance towards the Round, and Challenge. When the Serjeant of the Guard comes within ſix Paces of the Serjeant who eſcorted the Round, he is to Halt and Challenge briskly. The Serjeant of the Eſcort is to anſwer, *Town-Major's Round*; upon

upon which the Serjeant of the Guard replies, *Stand Roun*
Advance Serjeant with the Parole, and then orders his Me
to Reſt their Firelocks. The Serjeant of the Eſcort advance
alone, and gives the Serjeant of the Guard the Parole in hi
Ear that none elſe may hear it, and while he is giving it, th
Serjeant of the Guard holds the Spear of his Halbard at th
other's Breaſt. He then orders the Serjeant to return to hi
Eſcort, and, leaving the Men he brought with him to kee
the Round from Advancing, goes to his Officer and give
him the Parole he receiv'd from the Serjeant; the Office
finding the Parole right, orders the Serjeant to return to hi
Men, and then ſays, *Advance Town-Major's Round*, an
orders the Guard to Reſt their Arms; upon which the Se
jeant of the Guard orders his Men to wheel back from th
Center and form a Lane, thro' which the Town-Major
to paſs, the Eſcort remaining where they were, and go up
the Officer and give him the Parole, laying his Mouth to hi
Ear. The Officer holds the Spear of his Half-Pike, or Pa
tizan, at the Town-Major's Breaſt while he gives him th
Parole. The Reaſon of this Ceremony, is, I preſume, le
he ſhould prove an Impoſtor, and come to betray the Guar
and that if he ſhould give a wrong Word, or appear not t
be the Perſon whoſe Character he aſſumes, the Officer ma
be prepared to puniſh him as he deſerves; as alſo to be in
State of Defence, leſt he ſhould attempt his Life; the Sur
prize of which might throw the Guard into ſuch Confuſion
for want of an Officer to command it, that the Men woul
perhaps abandon their Poſt, or deliver themſelves up, with
out making any Reſiſtance, on the Appearance of the Ene
my's Troops, or a Body of Arm'd Men Advancing toward
them: So that unleſs the above Precautions were taken
viz. that of obliging the Round to ſtand at ſome Diſtance
'till the Guard is put under Arms, with all the other Part
of the Ceremony, as above-mention'd, it might be eaſ
for the Enemy to ſurprize an Out-Poſt or Camp-Guard
by lodging a Party of their Men at ſome convenient Plac
near them, and then ſend out a ſmall Party in the Na
ture of a Round, with an Enterprizing Perſon to comman
it, and aſſume the Character, in order to kill the Officer
which, with the Enemies appearing that Moment, woul
effectually prevail, and make them yield without any con
ſiderable Reſiſtance, or abandon their Poſt: but the ſtric
Examination they are to go thro' before they are ſuffer'd t
approach the Guard, makes the Enterprize too difficult to b
attempte

attempted with Safety to the Perſon who ſhall undertake it. Beſides, it is a ſtanding Rule, both in Camp or Garriſon for an Officer on Guard to know no Body in the Night, but by the Parole; and till that is given in the uſual Form, he is to ſuffer none to approach his Guard.

Tho' an Enterprize of this Nature would be more difficult in a Garriſon than in Camp, it might, however, be effected, were theſe Ceremonies laid aſide: For if the Enemy can draw the Inhabitants into their Intereſt, they may ſend Men into the Town on Market-days in the Diſguiſe of Peaſants, on pretence to ſell Proviſions (it being impoſſible for the Port-Guards to diſtinguiſh who are really Peaſants, and who are not) with Directions how they are to conduct themſelves 'till the Time appointed for the Undertaking. We may ſuppoſe that the Inhabitants, who have enter'd into the Plot, will not be wanting on their Part, to make the neceſſary Preparations of Arms and Ammunition, and to lodge them in ſome Houſe near the Gate which they propoſe to ſeize; and conceal the Men who are ſent in, 'till the Time it is to be executed. When the Time appointed comes, the Enemy will ſend a Body of Troops ſuperiour to thoſe in Garriſon, and take Care to conceal themſelves in the Day-time, and not approach the Town 'till Night, and even not then 'till the appointed Hour, for fear of being diſcover'd; with full Directions how they are to proceed, and when to advance to the Gate which is to be ſeized.

Were Meaſures of this kind well concerted, both within and without the Town, it would be no difficult Matter to ſeize a Port-Guard, and, with proper Inſtruments, break open the Gates, let down the Draw-Bridges, and give a free Entrance to the Enemy, before the Troops of the Garriſon could be got together to prevent it.

This Digreſſion may be thought foreign to the preſent Subject, and therefore might have been omitted; but my Deſign in it, is to ſhew young Gentlemen the Neceſſity there is, for the Ceremony in going and receiving the Rounds; ſending frequent Patroles; Sentinels not ſuffering any one to come within the Reach of their Arms; none permitted to come near a Guard at Night, 'till they are ſtrictly examin'd; the Searching of Waggons, Boats, *&c.* which come into the Town, leſt Men, Arms or Ammunition ſhould be conceal'd; Strangers who enter, giving an Account of themſelves, and obliging the Inhabitants, to give an Account of all Strangers who lodge in their Houſes, without which no

Frontier Town could be ſafe from the Enemy in Conjunction with the Inhabitants, who may always be gain'd by the Force of Money, or at leaſt a ſufficent Number to carry on the Deſign; ſo that the Danger within is to be guarded against, as well as that without; and how is it poſſible to be done, unleſs the foregoing Rules and Ceremonies are ſtrictly adhered to, and duly executed?

The Town-Major having given the Officer of the Guard the Parole, he is then to examine if the Gates are Lock'd and well ſecur'd; whether they have taken Poſſeſſion of their Night-Poſts, and placed additional Night Sentinels; and to count the Men who are under Arms, to ſee if they are all on Guard, and if not, to enquire into the Reaſon of their Abſence. He may likewiſe enquire into the Night Orders as alſo all others relating to the Guard, that if there ſhould be any Miſtake in them he may then rectify them. After theſe Things are done, he ſhould ſend back the Serjeants and Men, who attended him, to the Main-Guard, and take the ſame Number from this Guard to eſcort him to the next and ſo from one Guard to another 'till he has finiſh'd his Round. He is to be receiv'd at all the Guards in the ſame Manner as he was at the firſt.

As the Town-Major's Round is deſign'd to ſee if the Gates are lock'd, the Night-Poſts poſted, and the Orders deliver'd right, I preſume, he may go either along the Ramparts, or through the Streets, from one Guard to another, as he ſhall think proper; but all the other Rounds, except the Governour's, muſt go along the Ramparts.

As ſoon as the Round is gone, the Officer is to order his Men to lodge their Arms; and when the Serjeant returns from conducting any of the Rounds, he is to acquaint the Officer with it, and whether the Sentinels, as they paſs'd, were alert or not.

When it was ſaid that the Town-Major is to go his Round when the Night Orders were deliver'd, it is to be underſtood that he is not to go 'till they are, and that the Gates are ſhut; after which he may take his own Time, there being no certain Hour preſcrib'd him, provided he goes and finiſhes before Twelve a-Clock. Beſides, it is even neceſſary for him to go at uncertain Hours, and change his Way of going, in order to keep the Guards alert: However he muſt always go the firſt Round, to verify the Night Orders.

When the Town-Major has finiſh'd his Round, he is to wait on the Governour, give him the word, and make his

a R

a Report of the State of all the Poſts, and the Condition he found them in.

In the *French* Garriſons, all the Officers who command Guards are to give the Parole to the Town-Major, or, in his Abſence, to the Town-Adjutant when he goes the firſt Round, which is always call'd the Town-Major's Round, tho' gone by one of his Aids. The Reaſon for this, is not by way of compliment to the Town-Major; but that by receiving the Parole from the Officers of the Guards, he may know if they have received it Right, otherwiſe, they ſay, how can he be certain if they know it? When the Town-Major goes any more Rounds that Night, he muſt give the Parole to the Officers every Time he goes, except the firſt, as the other Rounds do.

This Method, in my Opinion, is grounded on a very juſt Principle, and therefore preferable to the other, which is that of the Town-Major's giving the Word to the Officers on Guard, even the firſt Time of his going. However, I am not going to introduce new Cuſtoms here; but only ſet down the practice abroad; and where they differ from the *Dutch*, from whom we have taken the greateſt Part of our Diſcipline, by having been in a long Alliance with them; and tho' it muſt be own'd, that we could not have follow'd a more perfect Syſtem of Diſcipline than theirs, both in Camp and Garriſon; yet in particular Parts, tho' perhaps not many, one may be allow'd to diſſent from them, and prefer thoſe of a neighbouring Nation, when we find them better; as I think that is, juſt above-mentioned, of the Officers giving the Town-Major the Word, in his firſt Round, in order to verify it.

All other Rounds muſt be received in the ſame Manner as is directed for the Town-Major's; only with this Difference, that the Officers on Guard are to give the Parole to the Grand Round; but all other Rounds are to give it to them: And tho' the Governour ſhould go his Round after the Grand Round is made by the Captain of the Main-Guard, he is to give the Word to the Officers on Guard; but in this Caſe, the Governour may carry an Officer to give the Word for him.

The Captain of the Main-Guard is to go the Grand Round, which is commonly made about Midnight; and the Lieutenant is to go the Viſiting Round, which is made about an Hour before Day.

When the Governour intends to go the Grand Round, he is to ſend Notice of it to the Captain of the Main-Guard, to prevent his going it, and that he may be prepar'd to receive him; it being uſual for the Governour to come to the Main-Guard firſt, and take an Eſcort along with him from thence to the next Guard, or to conduct him quite round if he thinks proper, and order the Lieutenant of the Guard to attend him. The Governour may order what Number of Men for his Eſcort he pleaſes, which generally conſiſts of a Serjeant and 12 Men.

When the Governour goes the Grand Round, the Captain of the Main-Guard is to go the Viſiting Round.

The Grand Round, or any Round which the Governour or Commandant, ſhall make, may begin where they pleaſe, becauſe whatever Round they meet is to give them the Word; whereas when two other Rounds meet, that which Challenges firſt has a Right to demand the Word of the other. But as this might occaſion Diſputes in the giving the Word, ſhould both Challenge together, or imagine they did, the Place where they are to begin, and the Hour which each Round is to go at, muſt be particularly mention'd; by which Method they cannot poſſibly meet, but will follow one another in a regular Manner, provided they are punctual in the Execution.

All Rounds (the Town-Major's, Grand, and Governour's Rounds excepted) are to demand a Ticket from the Officer of each Guard, as they paſs it; and when they have finiſh'd their Rounds, they are to deliver them to the Captain of the Main-Guard, who is to examine them very carefully, to ſee if they have miſs'd any of the Guards; after which, he is to ſet down the Officers Names that went the Rounds, and the Hours they return'd at; as alſo every Thing that happen'd extraordinary to them in the going their Rounds; ſuch as Officers being abſent from their Guards, or negligent in their Duty; Sentinels drunk, aſleep, or off their Poſts; if they diſcover any thing from the Ramparts, or heard any Noiſe in the Country, or ſaw any Number of People aſſembled together in the Town, or found any Diſturbance, that he may mention it in his Report next Morning to the Governour.

When a Round diſcovers from the Ramparts any Number of Troops, or hears any conſiderable Noiſe which may induce him to believe there are Some near, he muſt give Notice of it to the Captain of the Main-Guard, who is to acquaint the

he Governour with it immediately, that he may ſend the Reſerve to ſtrengthen that Poſt from whence the Noiſe was eard, and to give Orders for the Troops to repair immeiately to their Alarum Poſts, to prevent the Garriſon's beng Surprized.

If the Sentrys on the Ramparts make the ſame Diſcovery, hey are to call the Corporal of the Guard and acquaint him with it, who is to inform his Officer, that he may enquire nto it immediately; and if he finds it of any Conſequence, e muſt ſend an Account of it to the Main-Guard, that the Governour may be acquainted with it; after which, he is to raw out his Guard, that he may be ready to oppoſe any Atempt that ſhall be made, either from without, or within the Town. He ſhould ſend a Corporal and two Men round his Sentrys, to ſee that they are all alert, and to give them ſtrict Orders to be very watchful; and when they diſcover any hing further, to Paſs the Word for the Corporal, that he may come and know what they have diſcover'd: the Corpoal muſt have Orders to go on to the next Poſt-Guard, and cquaint the Officer with what they ſaw or heard; who is mmediately to put his Guard under Arms, ſend his Corpoal round his Sentrys, and acquaint the next Port-Guard with it, that they may do the ſame; and ſo from one to anoher 'till it has gone quite round.

This Precaution, of ſending to every Guard, is abſolutely neceſſary, ſince it is certain, that when the Enemy have a Deſign to Surprize any Place, they will endeavour to draw your Attention from it, by making a Show of Attacking ſome remote Part, and thereby draw your Forces from the eal Attack; therefore Prudence directs us to be careful of he Whole, and not ſuffer ourſelves to be amuſed by Appearances; but to ſuſpect a deeper Deſign, than what may at firſt offer itſelf to our View.

The Officers of the Guards ſhould likewiſe ſend out Patrols, leſt the Inhabitants ſhould be in Concert with the Enemy; which they will eaſily diſcover by their aſſembling together, and by that means avoid the Danger from within, or be prepared againſt it.

The Deſign of Rounds is not only to Viſit the Guards, and keep the Sentrys alert, but likewiſe to diſcover what paſſes in the Outworks, and beyond them; for which Reaſon, the Officers who go the Rounds ſhould walk on the Banquet, and go into the Sentrys Boxes, that they may look into the Ditch, and diſcover with more eaſe what Paſſes there; they

muſt likewiſe enquire of the Sentrys if they had diſcover'd any thing on their Poſts, or heard any Noiſe.

Some Governours have a Round to go juſt before the Opening of the Gates; their Reaſon for it is this: As it is then pretty light, that Round, by the Elevation of the Ramparts, will be able to diſcover a good way into the Country. When they have no Horſe in Garriſon to Patrol, it is not only proper, but abſolutely neceſſary. When ſuch a Round is ordered, it ſhould begin juſt at the Reveille, which is then ſo light, that they may ſee an hundred and fifty Yards, and when the Officer has finiſhed his Round, and return'd to the Main-Guard, the Keys are to be ſent to the Gates.

ARTICLE VII.

In Frontier Garriſons, as ſoon as the Reveille beats, the Officer of the Horſe-Guard, with his Men mounted, is to repair to the Main-Guard, and, according to his Orders from the Captain, he muſt go, or ſend Patrols of Horſe out of the Gates to Reconnoitre the Country. The Patrols are generally compos'd of a Corporal, and four or ſix Troopers each.

At the Beating of the Reveille, a Serjeant and twelve Men from the Main-Guard are to attend the Town-Major, or one of the Town Adjutants, to bring the Keys from the Governour's to the Main-Guard, and to deliver them to the Serjeants from the Ports, who are to be there, with four Men each, at the ſame time; and after they have receiv'd them, they are to carry them to their Guards, follow'd by the Patrols of Horſe who are to be let out to Reconnoitre.

Upon the Serjeant's coming with the Keys, the Officers are to have their Guards under Arms in the ſame manner as is directed for the ſhutting of the Gates. When the Keys are come, the Officer orders the firſt Gate to be open'd, and lets out the Patrol of Horſe, and then ſhuts it; when that is done, the Draw-Bridges are let down, and as ſoon as the Patrol has paſs'd them, they are drawn up again; after that, the Barriers are open'd, the Horſe Patrol let out, and clos'd again after them, the Corporal and four Men of the Guard remaining within the Barrier.

The time which the Horſe are to Patrol, and the Parts which they are to Reconnoitre, muſt depend on the Orders they ſhall receive from the Governour: However, they generally Reconnoitre thoſe Places from whence they apprehend

hend the Danger may proceed; ſuch as the Roads leading to the Garriſons or Territories of the Enemy; hollow Ways, Woods, or Thickets, which lie near the Garriſon, leſt Troops ſhould be conceal'd there; and to get upon the Eminences which overlook the Country, in order to diſcover what paſſes a conſiderable way in it; and when they have complied with their Orders (which takes them up generally three Quarters of an Hour, unleſs their Situation requires them to be more circumſpect) they return to the Garriſon, and acquaint the Officers of the Port-Guards with what they have diſcover'd; and if all is well, the Officers then order the Gates to be open'd, the Draw-bridges to be let down, and the Patrols to enter, who return to their own Guard, and make a Report to their Officer; and when they are all return'd, he is to make his to the Captain of the Main-Guard, which Report he is to enter with the Reſt. As ſoon as the Gates are open'd, the Keys are to be carried back to the Main-Guard, in the uſual Form, and deliver'd to the Town-Major, and from thence Eſcorted to the Governour's.

During the time that the Horſe are Patroling, and that the Keys remain at the Ports, the Guards are to continue under Arms; the Corporal and four Men who open'd the Barrier to let the Horſe out, are to ſhut the Barrier after them, and to remain within it 'till they return. As ſoon as the Draw-Bridges are drawn up, after the Horſe have paſſed them, the Wicket of the innermoſt Gate ſhould be open'd, that the Men who are placed at the Draw-Bridges may come and give the Officers an Account when the Patrols return; upon which the Officers of the Guard muſt go and examine the Corporals of the Patrols themſelves; after which, if they have no Reaſon to the contrary, they are then to order the Gates to be open'd, the Draw-Bridges to be let down, and the Patrols to enter; but 'till the Officers have examin'd them, the Gates are not to be open'd, or they admitted.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Detachments, Viſiting the Soldiers Quarters, and the Hoſpital.

ARTICLE I.

ALL Detachments which are ſent from a Garriſon, are either to Guard Poſts which lie at a Diſtance from the Place, for Eſcorts, or Partys.

The Detachments are compoſed of an equal Number of Officers and Soldiers from the Regiments in Garriſon, as is done for the Town Guard; but is a ſeparate Duty from it, and a Roll is kept apart by the Town-Major.

When a Captain, Lieutenant, and Enſign are commanded, they order the eldeſt Regiment to give a Captain, the ſecond Regiment the Lieutenant, and the third Regiment the Enſign, with an equal Proportion of Men from each Regiment in the Garriſon. When another Captain is order'd, he is taken from the ſecond Regiment, and ſo on 'till every Regiment has given one, and then it begins again with the eldeſt. The ſame Method is obſerved by the Lieutenants, Enſigns, and Serjeants.

There is no Roll kept for the Drummers, becauſe the Regiments ſend as many Drummers as they have Officers order'd on Duty: So that whatever Guard, or Detachment, an Officer is poſted to, he takes his own Drummer along with him; which is a ſtanding Rule both in Camp and Garriſon.

Every Battalion, whether ſtrong or weak, furniſhes an equal Proportion of Officers and Soldiers to all Detachments; whereas, in the Town-Guards, they are ſo far indulged ſometimes, as to give only in Proportion to their Numbers, when the Diſproportion between them is very conſiderable; occaſion'd by the Loſs of Men in Action, violent Sickneſs, or from the different Eſtabliſhments as to

o Numbers: For it would be highly unreaſonable that a attalion of 400 Men ſhould do equal Duty with one of oo. But if their Eſtabliſhment is the ſame, and that they ave not one of the above Reaſons to plead, or that the ifference in Numbers is but inconſiderable, they muſt en do the Town-Duty equal with one another, as well as l Detachments.

The ordinary Complement of a Captain, when Detach'd, a Lieutenant, Enſign, 2 Serjeants, 2 Drummers, and 45 r 50 Men, Corporals included.

A Lieutenant has a Serjeant, Drummer, and 25 or 30 len.

An Enſign has a Serjeant, Drummer, and 20 or 24 Men.

A Serjeant has 12, 15, or 18 Men; but on Detachment lways 18 Men.

When a Serjeant is Detach'd from a Garriſon, he ſhould ever have leſs than 18 Men; becauſe it is a Rule with the *French*, and their Neighbours, never to ſend out a Party of ſmaller Number; and whenever they ſeize a Party under , they treat them like Party-Blews, or Robbers, unleſs they hould have loſt ſome of their Men, which will appear by heir Order or Route.

A Major's Command is from 150 Men to 300.

A Lieutenant-Colonel's from 400 Men to 600.

A Colonel's from 600 Men to 800, or 1000.

But notwithſtanding the ordinary Complement above-nention'd, yet an Officer muſt not ſcruple to March with a nuch ſmaller Number, when the King's Service requires it; hey are likewiſe often Commanded with a greater Number han what is mention'd: However, when the Command omes up to, or exceeds 1000 Men, they appoint General Officers to command them, in Proportion to the Number letach'd, all which muſt depend on the Will of the Gover-nour, or Commandant of the Place.

They generally ſend a Lieutenant-Colonel and a Major long with a Colonel when he is Detach'd; but always one Field Officer with him, if there are any; when a Colonel s commanded he takes his own Adjutant with him.

ARTICLE II.

If an Officer, after he has march'd his Detachment beyond he outermoſt Barrier of the Place, ſhould be order'd to Re-turn, it paſſes for a Duty; but if he ſhould be order'd back before

before he has paſs'd the Barrier, it won't be allow'd as a Du
ty; but he muſt go with the next that is commanded; fo
his Marching off from the Parade don't excuſe him, as
great many imagine: It holds the ſame with the private Men

If an Officer's Tour of Duty to Mount the Guard ſhoul
come while he is on Detachment, he is not obliged to tak
it when he returns; but if he comes into Town the Day th
he is to Mount, and that his Detachment is diſmiſs'd befor
the Guards are march'd off from the Parade, he muſt the
Mount the Guard, without any Difficulty or Scruple.

All Parties or Detachments of Infantry which are ſent ou
of a Garriſon, ſhould not conſiſt of leſs than 19 Men, th
is, a Serjeant and 18 private Soldiers. But unleſs there is
Neceſſity for their ſending no more, they ſhould not Detac
leſs than an Officer and 25 Men.

All Parties are to have a Paſſport, or Order, in Writing
ſign'd by the Governour or Commander of the Garriſon
and ſeal'd with his Coat of Arms; in Failure of which
ſhould they be taken, they won't be treated like Priſoners o
War; but left to the Diſcretion of the Enemy; and the Go-
vernour to whom they belong'd, has no Right to claim them

If a Party under 19 Men are taken, and have not a Paſ
under the Governour's Hand and Seal to ſhew that there
were ſo many detach'd, they will be treated as above-men-
tion'd, and condemn'd by a Court-Martial, either to the
Gallies for Life, or a Puniſhment equally as bad.

This Cuſtom, I preſume, is only to prevent a ſmaller
Number from being detach'd, who can only be ſent to pil-
fer and ſteal, which is look'd upon, by all Sides, as an un-
generous way of making War, ſince it can only make a
few People unhappy, without contributing any thing to the
Service, or the bringing the War to a Concluſion.

It is likewiſe to prevent Party-Blews, which are Parties o
Robbers, who ſometimes dreſs themſelves like Soldiers, and
plunder every one they meet, without Diſtinction; for which
reaſon, they are always hang'd by both Sides when taken
therefore, to diſtinguiſh real Parties from thoſe, it is abſolute-
ly neceſſary that they ſhould have Paſſports ſign'd and ſeal'd
by the Governour, or Commandant of the Garriſon.

Another Reaſon, why ſmaller Parties than 19 Men ough
not to be ſent, may proceed from the Danger of their being
overpower'd by a Party-Blew, or the Peaſants.

Tho' the Rules abroad declare poſitively, that any Party
which ſhall be taken, conſiſting of leſs than 19 Men, ſhall
be

be treated like Party-Blews; yet, I think, it can never be taken in the literal Senſe, but muſt mean, that if they are ſent out with leſs, they will be treated in that manner: For as Action, Sickneſs, or Deſertion may reduce a greater Party under that Number, it would be the Heighth of Barbarity, to uſe thoſe ill who remain'd, for a Crime which they were not Guilty of: Therefore it can't be doubted, in my Opinion, but the producing their Paſſport will clear them, and make them be uſed like Priſoners of War.

When an Officer who commands a Party, is oblig'd to ſend a Detachment from his Party, either out of his Sight or Call, he is not to ſend leſs than a Serjeant and 18 Men; to whom he muſt give an exact Copy of his Paſſport, with Directions what they are to perform, and the Time they are to return to him, or the Garriſon, writ under the ſaid Paſſport. It is therefore preſum'd, that an Officer who has not the Command of 40 Men or upwards, won't ſend a Party out of his Sight or Call, otherwiſe he will be left with a ſmaller Number than the Cuſtom of War allows of.

All Parties or Detachments muſt return to their Garriſon punctually at the time appointed; unleſs they are prevented by the Enemy's getting between them and Home, and, in order to avoid them, are oblig'd to retire to the next Place of Safety, or go a great way about for fear of being taken; in which Caſe, an Officer is not only excuſable for ſtaying beyond the Time, but deſerves Thanks for his Care and Conduct.

The Time limited, with the Number of Officers and Soldiers, is always inſerted in the Paſs or Order; and, for the moſt part, the Service which they are imploy'd on, is likewiſe mentioned: however, that may be committed to a particular Paper, and only communicated to the Commanding Officer of the Detachment, when the Service they are ſent on requires Secrecy.

ARTICLE. III.

There muſt be a Serjeant and a Corporal of each Company Orderly for a Week, the Serjeants and Corporals taking it in their Turns to perform this Duty; which, however, does not excuſe them from Mounting of the Guard, or going on Party, when their Tour comes for either. When this happens, the Serjeant or Corporal, who is to be on the Orderly Duty next, muſt perform the Orderly Duty for

for them, 'till they are reliev'd, or that their Orderly Time expires; after which they commence the Orderly Duty for themſelves: Neither are the Orderly Serjeants or Corporals, who are on Guard or Party during their Orderly Week obliged to repay the Orderly Duty, which is done for them during that Time, when they return; it being a fix'd Rule for thoſe who are next in Turn to perform it, without being repaid it.

The Orderly Serjeants and Corporals are to receive all Orders which ſhall be deliver'd, either to the Garriſon in general, or to the Regiment and Company they belong to in Particular, and deliver them to their Officers.

They are to march the Men of their Companies, who are to mount the Guard, to their Captain's Quarters, to be view'd by one of their Officers, before they are ſent to the Regimental Parade; and if they carry any Man that has not his Arms, Ammunition, Cloaths, and Accoutrements in good Order, they are anſwerable to their Officers for it, and liable to be puniſh'd for the ſame; in order to avoid which they muſt inſpect theſe things before they preſent the Men to their Officers. They are to march them from thence to the Regimental Parade, and deliver them to the Adjutant of the Regiment, who is to examine the Men again, to ſee that they are in Order, and that he has his Complement. After this, they are to attend the Adjutant 'till the Guards are march'd from the Grand Parade, that if any Orders are to be deliver'd that Morning, either from the Governour, or their Colonel, they may be ready to receive them.

They are to remain conſtantly at their Caſerns, or Barracks, when they are not employ'd in receiving or delivering of Orders, and Carrying their Men to the Parade, as above-mention'd, that they may be ready to execute all Commands which ſhall come at any time from the Governour, or their Colonel.

They muſt take care to keep 6 or 8 Men in a Company of thoſe who are to go firſt on Duty, always in the way in caſe there are any order'd for Parties, or any other Occaſion, for which they may be wanted; and when any Men are order'd, they muſt ſee that their Arms, Ammunition, &c. are in good Order, before they go to the Parade, and take care to provide them with Ammunition-Bread and Pay for the Number of Days they are to be out on Party, or that Proportion of both which ſhall be order'd for them. The Corporals are to march the Men to the Parade, and deliver them

em to the Adjutant, and the Serjeants may remain at their arracks, (unleſs they are employ'd in getting the Money d Bread for them) there being no occaſion for their going ith any Men to the Parade, but thoſe who Mount in the lorning, without the Rules of the Garriſon order it herwiſe.

They are likewiſe to ſee that the Men keep the Caſerns Barracks very clean and in good Order, and that the tenſils belonging to them are neither ſpoil'd nor loſt. They e to make the Men ſweep their Rooms very clean every lorning, and make their Beds; and afterwards to waſh emſelves very clean, and dreſs in a Soldier-like Way, by ving their Shoes well black'd, their Stockings and Cravats ell roll'd, their Hats cock'd, and their Hair tuck'd under em, and their Cloaths bruſh'd and put on to the beſt Adntage; but 'till theſe things are done, they are not to ſuffer em to leave their Quarters, that they may not appear penly in the Streets.

They are to call over the Roll of their Companies as often it ſhall be order'd, and make a Report of the abſent Men their own Officers and the Adjutant, that they may be niſh'd for it.

They muſt go through every Room immediately after the at-too, and oblige the Men to put out their Fire and Cane, and go to Bed.

The Men of each Company ſhould be divided into Meſſes, ch Meſs conſiſting of four or ſix Men, or according to e Number in each Room; and every Pay-Day, each Man ould be oblig'd to appropriate ſuch a Part of his Pay to y Proviſions, which Money ſhould be lodg'd in the Hands one of them, in order to be laid out to the beſt Advange, which the Orderly Serjeants and Corporals are to ſee ly executed, and make each Meſs boil the Pot every Day. Vithout this is carefully look'd into, the Soldiers will be t to ſpend their Pay on Liquors, which will not only occaon their Neglect of Duty, but, in all probability, the Loſs a great many Men by Sickneſs for Want of proper Vicals to ſupport them. It is therefore a Duty incumbent on ery Officer to be more than ordinary careful in this Parcular, and not to think themſelves above the looking into eſe Things, ſince the Preſervation of their Men depends much on it: For in thoſe Regiments where this Method duly obſerv'd, the Men are generally Healthful; but hen it is neglected, great Numbers fall ſick and die.

The

The Captain ſhould viſit their Mens Quarters at leaſt once a Week, and the Subalterns twice, to ſee that they are kept clean and in good Order; as alſo to inſpect into the ſeveral Meſſes of their Companies, and to ſee whether their Proviſions are good, and the Money laid juſtly out.

In ſome Regiments there is an Officer appointed daily to viſit the Caſerns or Barracks of the Regiment, to ſee that they are kept clean, and that the Men dreſs their Victuals and to make a Report of the whole to the Colonel: However, that ſhould not prevent the other Officers from looking into it alſo.

The Major ſhould viſit the Whole very often, that he may know whether the other Officers do their Duty, and reprimand thoſe who neglect it; it being his immediate Buſineſs and Duty, to ſee all Orders punctually obey'd.

ARTICLE IV.

In all Garriſons, there is an Officer of a Regiment order'd to viſit their ſick Men daily. They are to examine nicely into the Manner their Men are treated, and if they are kept clean; what Medicines and Diet they have given them, taſte their Bread and Broth, and ſee their Proportion of Bread and Meat, and enquire of them how they are uſed; a Report of which, with the Number belonging to each Company, they are to make to their Colonels.

Beſides this Regimental Inſpection, the Governour appoints an Officer or two of the Garriſon to viſit the Hoſpital, to ſee how the Men are Treated, with the Number belonging to each Regiment, and to make him a Report of the Whole.

A Captain, who has any Regard for his Men, won't think theſe general Viſits ſufficient; but will go from time to time himſelf, and enquire into their State, and ſend his Officers and Serjeants to do the ſame. There are a great many little Things which may ſave the Life of a poor Soldier, and which they can't have but from their own Officers; ſo that unleſs they go to ſee them, they may Periſh for the Want of them: Therefore common Humanity requires this Duty of us even to Strangers, but much more ſo to thoſe who are immediately under our Care, and ſhare the Danger of the War with us.

There is one Rule which ſhould be ſtrictly obſerv'd, which is, not to ſuffer the Men to continue too long in the Hoſpital

ital; but to take them from thence as ſoon as poſſibly they an: For it often happens, when they ſtay too long after ey are Recover'd, that they Relapſe and Die; occaſion'd y the Badneſs of the Air, which muſt be in ſome Degree nfected by the Breath of the Sick, in ſpite of all the Care hat can be taken to prevent it. But the leaſt Evil that an happen by their remaining too long in the Hoſpital, is, hat they will thereby contract a ſlothful, lazy, idle Habit, nd turn, according to the Military Phraſe, *Malingerors*; hat is, Men who have loſt all Spirit to the Service, and eign themſelves Sick when there is a Proſpect of Action, r that they are to undergo any Hardſhip or Fatigue, in order o be ſent to the Hoſpital; which Life, through Habit, beomes agreeable to them.

Where there is no Publick Hoſpital, there ſhould be ome Rooms in the Quarters appointed for the Sick Men, to which they may be removed, leſt they infect the others; and hat the Surgeon of the Regiment may attend them with the nore eaſe. They ſhould likewiſe have Nurſes appointed to ttend them, and proper Care taken about their Diet: And, nleſs the Diſtemper is of a very malignant Nature, I am f opinion, that they ſhould not be ſent to the Hoſpital pon every ſlight Indiſpoſition, but removed into the Inirmary of the Regiment, the Air of which muſt be much urer than the other, and therefore there is a greater Proability of their quick Recovery. Beſides, the Evil above omplain'd of will be avoided; which is an Article of no mall Conſideration to the Service.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

Relating to the Command of the Governour in his own Town, with the Reſpect and Obedience due to him, from the Troops which compoſe the Garriſon; as alſo what Compliments are to be Paid to all the other Officers.

ARTICLE I.

WHOEVER is Governour of a Town, has the entire Command of the Troops which compoſe the Garriſon, tho' Officers of a Superior Rank to him in the Army ſhould be order'd in with them: For the Town being committed to his Charge, he is anſwerable to his Maſter for it, and conſequently cannot give up the Command without expreſs Orders from him in due form or from him to whom he ſhall delegate his Power.

In the Abſence of the Governour, the Command devolves on the Lieutenant-Governour: And if the Town-Major has a Commiſſion of Town-Major Commandant (which is ſometimes conferr'd on thoſe Abroad) the Command falls to him in the Abſence of the Governour and Lieutenant-Governour; otherwiſe it goes to the eldeſt Officer in the Garriſon, whether he is of the Horſe, Foot, or Dragoons, who is called, during the time, Commandant of the Garriſon. This is the general Rule; but as they may be obliged on particular Occaſions, to throw a conſiderable Body of Troops into the Garriſon (either for the Defence of it, or to annoy the Enemy) and that a general Officer of a conſiderable Rank may be Order'd in with them, it is uſual to give him a Commiſſion of Commandant of the Troops, the Body of which is particularly ſpecified, how far his Power over them is to extend, to avoid all Diſputes that might

might happen betwixt him and the Governour about it: And tho' this may, in a great meaſure, leſſen and divide the Governour's Power, yet the outward Marks of Diſtinction are generally left with him, ſuch as the giving the Parole, the Adminiſtration of the Civil Affairs, Keeping the Keys of the Town, *&c.* as alſo the Signing of the Capitulation, jointly with the Commandant of the Troops, in caſe of a Surrender.

The Reaſon for appointing a Commandant of the Troops, I ſuppoſe, may ariſe from the Governour's not being of a Rank in the Army ſufficient to give him a due Authority over them, or that he may not be thought equal to the Command; but ſuppoſing him equal to it, both from his Experience and Ability, unleſs he is diſtinguiſhed with Titles of Dignity, his Orders, will not be ſo readily executed as if he was: And tho' a Commiſſion of Governour creates him, in a manner, Captain-General in his own Town, yet when Officers of an Equal Rank to him in the Army are order'd into the Garriſon, it is a hard Matter for him to keep up his Command as it ought to be, or get them to obey him with the ſame Deference as they would one of a Superiour Rank; And if it proves ſo, when only thoſe of an Equal Rank are Commanded into the Garriſon, it will be much more difficult for him to exert his Authority over thoſe who are his Superiours in the Army, as well as ſhocking to them to be Commanded by an Inferiour; the Truth of which, with the Detriment that ariſes from it to the Service, is ſo well known in *France*, that when the Caſe happens ſo there, and that they have no mind to ſuperſede the Governour, they always appoint an Officer of Rank and Ability (in Proportion to the Number of Men, which, upon occaſion of Danger, ſhall be ordered into the Garriſon) Commandant of the Troops; in which caſe Care is generally taken, that the Perſon ſo appointed be of ſuch a Rank in the Army, that not only all Diſpute about Command in relation to him is out of the Queſtion, but likewiſe any Conteſts of this Kind that may ariſe in the Garriſon are terminated, and his Deciſions more readily ſubmitted to than if they came from one of an inferior Character. I ſhall now proceed to the Command of a Governour, when there is no Commandant of the Troops appointed.

How far the Governour's Power extends over the Civil, muſt be determined by the Laws and Conſtitution of the Country: However, all Perſons in the Town, whether Eccleſiaſtical

eleſiaſtical or Civil, are ſubject to his Juriſdiction, as far as it relates to the Order and Preſervation of the Town; and whoever Offends therein, tho' he may not have the Power of Puniſhing, yet he may ſecure their Perſons 'till they can be tried in a regular Manner for the Crimes they have committed.

His Power over the Military is very Extenſive; for all the Officers and Soldiers in the Garriſon are obliged to obey him, without Controul.

He may order the Troops under Arms as often as he ſhall think proper, either to Review them, or upon any other Account.

He may ſend out Detachments, or Parties, without being obliged to give a Reaſon to the Officers for it, or come to an Explanation with them on that Head. Neither have they a Power to demand it; but if they think themſelves grieved, they may repreſent it to him in a reſpectful Manner; that is, Singly, and by Way of Requeſt, and not in a riotous Way, and in Numbers, ſince that will be deemed Mutiny, which, by the Articles of War, is Death.

Neither Officer nor Soldier muſt lie a Night out of the Garriſon without the Governour's Leave; but that the Colonels, or thoſe who command Regiments, may have a proper Authority over their own Corps, a Governour ſeldom grants his Leave of Abſence to either Officer or Soldier, but at their Requeſt. A Governour who has a true Notion of the Service, will act according to this Rule; and it appears to me Reaſonable that he ſhould do ſo; otherwiſe, how can they anſwer for their Regiments, if their Officers and Soldiers have Leave of Abſence given them without their Knowledge? Beſides, as the Colonels are ſuppoſed to have a through Knowledge of thoſe under their Command, they muſt be proper Judges who ought or ought not to have Leave given them, and therefore won't importune the governour but when it is reaſonable they ſhould have it; which will not only eaſe him of a great deal of Trouble, but likewiſe prevent his being impoſed upon, by their pretending to have buſineſs, when perhaps Pleaſure, or the Love of Idleneſs is the chief Motive which induces them to ask it; the Truth of which cannot be ſo eaſily entered into by the Governour, as by the Colonels, who, in Juſtice to their Regiments, will limit the Number they ask Leave for, that the Duty may not fall too hard on thoſe who Remain.

What

What is above-mentioned, without entering into the Deference due to Colonels, when it relates to thoſe immediately under their Command, is ſo equitable, that it is generally followed: But however Juſt this Rule may appear, yet a Governour has an undoubted Right to deviate from it when he ſhall think proper, by granting his Leave of Abſence to either Officer or Soldier, without the Conſent of their Colonels: And tho' particular Regiments may ſuffer now and then by ſuch a Proceeding, yet that Evil is of leſs Conſequence to the Service, than what the Limiting of the Governour's Power might produce, *viz.* the Loſs of Subordination; which is of ſuch Weight and Conſideration, that it is the very Life and Soul (if I may be allowed the Expreſſion) of Diſcipline, without a due Obſervance of which, the Service can never be carried on: For whoever endeavours to weaken it, by making the Officers or Soldiers Independant of the principal Perſons who are placed over them, whether Governours or Generals, muſt do it either through an evil Deſign, or Ignorance; ſince both produce the ſame Effect, Diſorder and Confuſion; a State which Soldiers may be eaſily brought into (from a natural Love of Independancy which reigns in all Mankind) but not ſo ſoon Remedied; for when a Licentious, Independant Humour has prevailed amongſt Troops, it muſt be Time, infinite Pains and Severity, to reduce them to their proper Obedience; the Want of which may prove as prejudicial to the State, as the Want of Troops; ſince the Loſs of Subordination produces not only the Neglect of Order, but in a great meaſure the Power, or at leaſt an Imaginary one, to diſpute them; the Conſequence of which is to well known to be farther enlarged upon.

The Practice of the Army in this Caſe is, that when an Officer has Buſineſs that may require his Abſence from the Garriſon, he is to make his firſt Application to his Colonel, and to deſire him to interceed with the Governour for Leave; and if the Colonel complies with the Officer's Requeſt, he would wait upon the Governour in his Behalf; but if the Colonel refuſes the Officer, he may then, no doubt, apply to the Governour; tho' ſuch a Step ſhould not be taken without he is neceſſitated ſo to do, either from extraordinary Buſineſs, or that he finds himſelf hardly uſed by his Colonel; ſince the doing it is, in a manner, putting him at Defiance, and therefore not to be raſhly undertaken.

When any of the Private Men want Leave, they are to apply to their Captain firſt, the Captains to the Colonel, and if he agrees to it, he is to ſend their Names by the Adjutant to the Town-Major, that he may acquaint the Governour that they have his Conſent, and to deſire he will be pleaſed to grant them his Leave of Abſence.

When the Soldiers have applied to their Captains, and are refuſed by them, they may then apply to their Colonels: but they ought not to do it 'till they have been with their Captains, for the ſame Reaſon that an Officer ought not to apply to the Governour 'till he has been with his Colonel.

ARTICLE II.

All Soldiers, who have Leave to go out of the Garriſon, muſt have Paſſports ſign'd by the Governour, ſpecifying the Regiment to which they belong, the Place they are to go to, and the Time they have Leave to be Abſent; the Particulars of which muſt be given in by the Adjutant to the Town-Major. Whoever goes without one of theſe Paſſports, or is found taking a contrary Road to that which is expreſs'd in it, will be look'd upon as a Deſerter, and when taken, Try'd accordingly. It is therefore the Duty of the Officers on the Port-Guards, to examine all Soldiers who ſhall come into the Town, and don't belong to the Garriſon; and when they find any of them without a Paſs, or that they have taken a wrong Route, or have any Reaſon to ſuſpect it Forg'd, they are to ſend them to the Main-Guard, in order to their being further examin'd by the Governour, or thoſe whom he ſhall appoint for that Purpoſe; and if they are found to be Deſerters, they ſhould be ſecured, 'till they can be ſent to their Regiments to be Try'd as ſuch.

When Officers on Party meet any Soldiers, they muſt examine their Paſſports; and if they have any Reaſon to ſuſpect them, they muſt take them Priſoners, and deliver them over to the Main-Guard when they return to their Garriſon, and acquaint the Governour with it.

No Regiment can hold a Court-Martial, or Puniſh any of their Men, without firſt obtaining the Governour's Leave, or the Commandant's in his Abſence: However, it is Cuſtomary, upon the firſt Application which the Colonel makes of this kind to the Governour, to give him a diſcretionary Power to hold Regimental Courts-Martial, as often as he ſhall have Occaſion, and to put the Sentence in Execution

tion, provided the Regiment is not to be under Arms at the Performing it; becauſe no Colonel can order his Regiment under Arms, either for Exerciſe, puniſhing Offenders, or otherwiſe, without having Leave every time from the Governour: Therefore, it is uſual to puniſh the Soldier on the Regimental Parade, in the Preſence of the Men who mount the Guard in the Morning, unleſs the Sentence directs any one to Run the Gantlet through the Regiment.

When the Colonel, or Commanding Officer, would have the Regiment under Arms for Exerciſe, Review, or to Puniſh any of his Men, he muſt ſend the Adjutant to the Town-Major, that he may acquaint the Governour with it when he goes to receive the Night-Orders; and if granted, the Town-Major is to give out, in Publick Orders, that ſuch a Regiment is to be under Arms, *&c.* to-morrow Morning.

The Ceremony of giving out in Publick Orders, when Regiments are to be under Arms, has an Appearance, as if it was only to keep up the Authority of the Governour, and to ſhew his Command over the Troops in his Garriſon: And indeed, I never heard any Reaſon given for it, but that it was the Cuſtom: However, it can't be doubted, but that a better Reaſon than Cuſtom can be given for it: but ſince it has not come to my Knowledge, I beg leave to offer my own Opinion on that Head.

Should a Part of the Garriſon Draw out in the Morning without the Reſt being appris'd of it, they might imagine that it proceeded from ſome Attempt of the Enemy, who were going to Surpriſe the Town, and conſequently occaſion their Beating to Arms: Therefore to prevent theſe falſe Alarms, which would not only Fatigue the Troops, but, by their being too often repeated, make them Dilatory in repairing to their Alarm-Poſts upon a real Occaſion; as alſo cauſe a Buſtle and Diſturbance in the Town: It is therefore Neceſſary, that it ſhould be given out in Orders by the Town-Major the Night before, when any of the Troops are to be under Arms, that all may know it. Beſides, the Aſſembling of Troops without the Governour's Leave, muſt put the Town in the Power of thoſe Officers who Command them; eſpecially if we will ſuppoſe any ill Intention, or Correſpondence with the Enemy: For tho' it is to be preſumed, that Officers of their Rank are above Temptation, yet Inſtances of the Contrary may be given; and in War particularly, we ought not to relie on what they will not do, but what they cannot do.

ARTICLE III.

In case of an Alarm, the Officers and Soldiers, who are not on Guard, are to repair with their Arms, immediately to their Alarm Posts.

Upon these Occasions, the Colonel's Company may be order'd to Assemble where the Colours are Lodg'd, which is generally at the Colonel's Quarters, to Guard them from thence to the Alarm Post of the Regiment.

Sometimes all the Field Officers Companies are order'd to Assemble there; but unless the Garrison is very Numerous, they will be of more Service with the Regiment, one Company being sufficient to Guard them; the Ensigns who are to carry the Colours are to Assemble there at the same time.

The Reason for the Troops being order'd to their Alarm Posts, may proceed from one of the Three following Causes:

First, Upon the Appearance of the Enemy before the Town, or Intelligence being brought, that a Body of their Troops are marching towards it; therefore to prevent a Surprize, it will be proper to order the Regiments to repair to their Alarm Posts.

Secondly, Upon any considerable Rising of the Inhabitants, or Tumult in the Town, that the Governour may be able to disperse the Mob and bring the Offenders to Justice.

Thirdly, Upon a Fire breaking out in the Town, it is extremely necessary to have the Troops at their Alarm Posts; for by their being assembled, they may be sent under the Command of their Officers to Assist in the extinguishing of it, and to keep the Streets open that the Engines may be brought to play; as also to keep the Mob from stealing the Goods which may be saved from the Flames. Besides, as the Town may be set on Fire by a Stratagem of the Enemy, and, by lodging a Body of Troops at some Distance from the Town, they may endeavour to seize one of the Gates, during the Consternation, which, by the Assistance of the Inhabitants, might be easily effected, were the Precaution of shutting the Gates and assembling the Troops omitted.

But on whatever Occasion the Alarm may be given, when the Troops are assembled, no Colonel must dismiss his Regiment, tho' it should prove a false Alarm, 'till he receives the Governour's or Commandant's Orders for it. Thus far I have endeavour'd to shew the Command which a Governour

vernour of a Town has over the Troops in it, and how the Officers and Soldiers are to conduct themselves towards him on that Head; and in the following Article I shall shew the Respect which is to be paid to him, and the other Officers who shall come into the Garrison, by the Guards.

ARTICLE IV.

All Governours whose Commissions in the Army are under the Degree of General Officers, shall have, in their own Garrisons, all the Guards turn out with Rested Arms, and beat one Ruffle; and tho' the Main-Guard turns out with Rested Arms every time he passes, yet they give him the Compliment of the Drum but once a Day; but all the other Guards beat as often as he appears near them.

If they are General Officers likewise, they are then to have the further Compliments paid them, by the several Beatings of the Drum, as is Practis'd in the Army, and are as follows.

To Generals of the Horse and Foot, the Guards turn out, Rest their Arms, Beat a March, and the Officers Salute.

To Lieutenant-Generals, they turn out, Rest their Arms, Beat three Ruffles, but not Salute.

To Major-Generals, turn out, Rest their Arms, and Beat two Ruffles.

To Brigadier-Generals, they turn out with Rested Arms only; but of late they have added one Ruffle to the Compliment.

To Colonels, their own Quarter-Guards turn out, and Rest their Arms, once a Day; after which, they only turn out with Order'd Arms.

The Lieutenant-Colonels, their own Quarter-Guards turn out with Shoulder'd Arms, once a Day; at other times they only turn out, and stand by their Arms.

To Majors, their own Guards turn out with Order'd Arms, once a Day; at all other times they stand by their Arms.

When a Lieutenant-Colonel, or a Major, commands a Regiment, their own Quarter-Guards pay them the same Compliment as is order'd for the Colonel.

All Sentrys Rest their Arms to their own Colonel, Lieutenant Colonel, and Major; but to those of another Regiment, they only stand Shoulder'd. This Ceremony is the same both in the Camp and Garrison.

The Main-Guard is to Reſt their Arms to the Governour, and pay him the Compliment with the Drum, as before directed. If he continues to walk on the Parade, or before the Guard, they may lay down their Arms.

All Sentrys are to Reſt their Arms as he paſſes them, or comes near their Poſts.

A General of the Horſe and Foot, when in Garriſon, has a Serjeant and two Sentrys at his Door.

All Lieutenant Generals have the ſame; but the Compliment paid them by the Guards in a Garriſon, differs from that in Camp: For tho' they are to have but three Ruffles from the Main-Guard, yet the Officers of that Guard are to Salute them once a Day; but all other Guards are to Beat a March, and Salute them as often as they paſs.

A Major-General is to have two Sentrys at his Door, and the ſame Compliment paid him by the Guards, as in Camp.

A Brigadier is to have one Sentry at his Door, and one Ruffle from all the Guards in the Garriſon.

All Colonels, or Officers who command Battalions, are to have one Sentry, which they are to take from their own Regiments; but thoſe Colonels who have no Regiments in the Town, are to have the Sentry from the Main-guard, or one of the Port-Guards, if their Lodgings lie more convenient for them.

The Main-Guard is to turn out, and ſtand by their Arms once a Day to all Colonels; but all other Guards muſt Order their Arms for them as often as they Paſs.

The Main-Guard is to pay no Compliment to the Lieutenant Colonels, and Majors; but the other Guards, are to ſtand by their Arms for them.

Lieutenant-Governours are to be treated in their own Garriſons as Colonels, and the Majors Commandant as Lieutenant-Colonels, unleſs their Rank in the Army entitles them to a greater Compliment; but when either of them command the Garriſon, they are then treated in all Reſpects as Governour.

When the Governour, Lieutenant-Governour, and the Major Commandant are abſent, or by Sickneſs render'd incapable of Acting, the eldeſt Officer in the Gaariſon is to take the Command upon him, who is call'd Commandant of the Garriſon, and has all the Reſpect paid him by the Guards as Governour, except that of the Drum; unleſs his Rank in the Army entitled him to it before.

Theſe were Rules eſtabliſhed by King *William*; but of late the Governours who are General Officers have a March Beat to them in their own Garriſons: However, by the beſt Information I could get, I do not find that the Governours who are not General Officers, have exceeded the former Complement of one Ruffle.

A Captain-General of *Great-Britain*, a Marſhal of *France*, and a Velt-Marſhal of the *Empire*, being the chief Military Titles of thoſe Kingdoms, which are given to Subjects, they are all treated with the ſame Degree of Reſpect, both in Camp and Garriſon.

When a Marſhal of *France* comes into any of their own Garriſons, the Streets are lin'd, by the Troops, from the Gate where he enters, to his Lodging; the Soldiers Reſt their Firelocks, the Drummers Beat a March, and he is ſaluted by all the Officers and Colours. His Guard, which conſiſts of a Captain, Lieutenant, and Enſign with Colours, and 50 Men, are placed at his Door before he comes into the Town. He commands all Governours, and they are to receive the Parole from him. This is the Cuſtom in *France*, and eſtabliſh'd by the King's Order.

How far this Method may be conſiſtent in *England*, in regard to a Captain-General, is what I can't determine, there being no Regulation of this Kind eſtabliſh'd by the Royal Authority, that I know of: but as the late Duke of *Marlborough* (a Copy of whoſe Commiſſion of Captain-General is hereto Annexed) had the ſame Honours paid him in all the Garriſons Abroad, I preſume he look'd upon them as his due.

ANNE R.

ANNE, *by the Grace of God*, &c. *To Our Right Truſty and Right Well beloved Couſin and Councellor*, John *Earl of* Marlborough, *Greeting*. WHEREAS *We have thought it Neceſſary for Our Service to Appoint and Conſtitute a Captain-General for the Commanding, Regulating, and Keeping in Diſcipline Our Troops and Land Forces, which are, or ſhall be allowed by Act of Parliament to be raiſed and kept on Foot*: KNOW YE, *therefore, that We, repoſing Eſpecial Truſt and Confidence in the approved Wiſdom, Fidelity, Valour, great Experience, and Abilities of You, the ſaid* John *Earl of* Marborough,

Marlborough, *Have Conſtituted and Appointed, and by theſe Preſents do Conſtitute and Appoint You to be Captain-General of all our Troops and Land Forces, already raiſed, and hereafter to be raiſed, as aforeſaid, and Employed in our Service, within our Kingdom of* England, *Dominion of* Wales, *and Town of* Berwick *upon* Tweed, *or which are, or ſhall be Employed abroad in Conjunction with the Troops of our Allies.* GIVING, *and by theſe Preſents granting unto you full Power and Authority, by Yourſelf, Commanders, Captains, and other Officers, them to Exerciſe, Array, and put in Readineſs, and, according to the Proviſion of Arms appointed for them, well and ſufficiently cauſe to be Weaponed and Armed, and to take, or cauſe to be taken, the Muſters of them, or any of them, (by the Commiſſary-General of the Muſters, or his Deputies, or by ſuch other Officers as he ſhall aſſign for that Purpoſe) as often as you ſhall ſee Cauſe; and the ſaid Forces to divide into Parties, Regiments, Troops, and Companies, and with them, or any of them reſpectively, to reſiſt all Invaſions which ſhall be made by our Enemies, and to ſuppreſs all Rebellions and Inſurrections which ſhall by levelling War be made againſt Us; and all Enemies making ſuch Invaſion, and Rebels who ſhall ſo level War, and be found making Reſiſtance, to Fight with, kill and deſtroy. As alſo with full Power and Authority for Us, and in Our Name, as Occaſion ſhall require, according to your Diſcretion, by Proclamation or otherwiſe, to tender our Royal Mercy and Pardon to all ſuch Enemies and Rebels as ſhall ſubmit themſelves to Us, and deſire to be received into Our Grace and Pardon. And We do likewiſe Give and Grant unto You full Power and Authority to hold, or cauſe to be held, from time to time, as often as there ſhall be Occaſion, according to your Diſcretion, one, or more, Military or Martial Court, or Courts, in purſuance of, and according to the Purport and true Meaning of an Act of Parliament paſſed in the Thirteenth Year of the Reign of Our late deareſt Brother King* William *the Third, of Ever Bleſſed Memory, Intituled,* An Act for puniſhing of Officers and Soldiers that ſhall Mutiny or Deſert in *England* or *Ireland: And in the ſame Court, or Courts, to hear, examine, determine, and puniſh all Mutinies, Diſobedience, Departure from Captains, Commanders, and Governours, according to the Directions of the ſaid Act, and to cauſe the Sentence or Sentences of the ſaid Courts to be put in Execution, or to ſuſpend the ſame as you ſhall ſee Cauſe. To have, hold, exerciſe, and enjoy, the ſaid Office of Captain-General, and to perform and execute the Powers and*

Authorities

Authorities aforeſaid, and all other Matters and Things which to your ſaid Office doth or may, of Right, belong, and appertain unto you, during Our Pleaſure. Willing and Commanding all Officers, Soldiers, and Perſons whatſoever, any way concern'd, to be Obedient and Aſſiſting to you Our Captain-General, in all Things touching the due Execution of this Our Commiſſion, according to the Purport and Intent thereof. In Witneſs, &c. *Witneſs,* &c.

EX. EDW. NORTHEY.

May it pleaſe your Moſt Excellent Majeſty.

YOUR Majeſty is hereby graciouſly pleaſed to Conſtitute John *Earl of* Marlborough, *Captain-General of all your Land Forces within your Kingdom of* England, *Dominion of* Wales, *and Town of* Berwick *upon* Tweed, *or which are, or ſhall be Employed abroad in Conjunction with the Troops of Your Allies, Impowering him to Execute all the Powers and Authorities thereunto belonging, during your Majeſty's Pleaſure.*

Signified to be your Majeſty's Pleaſure by Warrant under your Royal Sign Manual, Counterſign'd

By Mr. Secretary VERNON.

March 12, 170½. EDW. NORTHEY.

ARTICLE V.

Whoever Commands in a Caſtle, Fort, Redoubt or Citadel belonging to the Town, muſt ſend every Day to the Governour or Commandant of the Town for the Orders.

The ſame Rules are to be obſerv'd by the Garriſon of the Citadel as are given for thoſe of the Town; only with this Difference, that the Governour of the Citadel is not to ſuffer above one Third of the Officers to be out at a time, tho'

tho' they ſhould only deſire to walk into the Town. This is the Method eſtabliſh'd in *France*. But as the Citadels in that Kingdom are built to be a Check upon the Towns, in order to keep the Inhabitants in awe, this ſtrict Rule may be very proper, leſt, by ſuffering the Officers and Soldiers to go out at Pleaſure, it might be ſurprized, when there remain'd only the ordinary Guards to defend it. But when the Caſe is not the ſame, I preſume, the Governour may in ſome degree, diſpenſe with this Order, by not Adhering ſo ſtrictly to it.

As there are ſeparate Governours for the moſt part in *France*, the Governour of the Town has no Command over the Governour or Garriſon of the Citadel; neither has he the Liberty of going into the Citadel without Leave of the Governour of it: However, the Governour of the Citadel is obliged to ſend every Day to the Governour of the Town for the Parole, tho' his Rank in the Army ſhould be Superior to the other's. This may be thought abſurd, that a Superior muſt ſend to an Inferior for the Word; but thus it is eſtabliſh'd in *France*; and it is very common there, to find the Governour of the Citadel an elder Officer, than the Governour of the Town; which may proceed from the great Dependance they have on their Citadels, and therefore chuſe Officers of Conſiderable Rank and Experience for their Governours, and as there are no ill Conſequences attending it, by being no Diminution to their Rank in the Army, they all ſubmit to it.

ARTICLE VI.

The Town-Major and the Town-Adjutants are to Viſit all the Guard-Rooms, Caſerns, and Barracks pretty often, to ſee that they are kept in good Order, and that the Furniture and Utenſils belonging to them are neither loſt nor damag'd more than what may be reaſonably expected. They are likewiſe to View all the Parts of the Fortifications, the Sentry Boxes, Platforms, Batteries of Cannon, ſpare Carriages, &c. and that the Paliſades are not ſtolen or decay'd, and make a Report of the ſame to the Governour, that thoſe Things which are out of order, may be repair'd in time.

In Frontier Garriſons, thoſe who keep Publick Houſes muſt ſend an Account in Writing every Night of all the Lodgers to the Town-Major, ſpecifying their Names, Quality, and Country, when they came into the Town, and from

from whence; that he may ſhew it to the Governour, in order to compare it with the Night-Report from the Captain of the Main-Guard, by which he will know whether the Officers of the Port-Guards do their Duty, in examining all Strangers who come into the Town, or the Inn-keepers conceal any of their Lodgers, or that thoſe who came in gave a wrong Account of the Place where they were to lodge, by having ſome evil Deſign to manage, that he may take proper Meaſures for their being found out, and puniſh'd according to their Deſerts. In time of War, all private Houſes are oblig'd to give an Account to the Town-Major when any Stranger lodges with them.

Where the Towns are large, they have Commiſſaries appointed to take an Account of the Strangers from the publick and private Houſes, it being impoſſible for a Town-Major to perform this and all other Parts of his Duty.

The following Plan is a Table for all the Duty which is done by the Officers and Serjeants in a Garriſon, and which is kept by the Town-Major, and the Adjutants of the ſeveral Regiments. As each Battalion gives an equal Proportion of Men, there is no Occaſion for the inſerting of a Column in the ſaid Table for them.

A Table for the ſeveral Duties in a Garriſon, to be kept by the Town-Major, and the Adjutants, of the Regiments.

	Town-Guards.			Reſerve.			Detachment.			General Courts Martial.		Examination.		Viſiting of the Hoſpital.	
Regiments.	Captains	Subalt.	Serjeants	Captains	Subalt.	Serjeants	Captains	Subalt.	Serjeants	Captains	Subalt.	Captains	Subalt.	Captains	Subalt.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

Conſiſting of Camp-Duty.

ARTICLE I.

BY Camp-Duty, as I underſtand it, is meant, Guards Ordinary and Extraordinary; tho' by taking it in its full Extent, it will include every Part of the Service which is to be perform'd by the Troops during the Campaign; but as I have treated on ſeveral Branches before, I ſhall now proceed to that which relates to the Ordinary and Extraordinary Guards: And as a great Part of the Camp-Duty is perform'd in the ſame manner as that of a Garriſon, I ſhall only give Directions for thoſe Parts in which they differ.

Guards Ordinary, are ſuch as are fix'd during the Campaign, and are reliev'd regularly at a certain Hour every Day; and are as follows. The Grand Guards of the Cavalry, the Standard and Quarter-Guards, and the Picquet-Guards of each Regiment; the Guards for the General-Officers, Train of Artillery, Bread-Waggons, Quarter-Maſter-General, Majors of Brigade, Judge-Advocate, and Provoſt-Marſhal.

Every Battalion of Foot has for the Quarter-Guard, a Subaltern, 2 Serjeants, one Drummer, and 40 Men; and for the Picquet-Guard, a Captain, 2 Subalterns, 3 Serjeants, 2 Drummers, and 50 Men. As every Battalion has the ſame conſtantly, the Majors of Brigade keep no Detail of this Duty. The Complement of the other Guards are as follows.

GUARDS

GUARDS.

	Capt.	Subalt.	Serjeants	Drum.	Private Soldiers.
The General in Chief has	1	2	2	2	50
General of the Foot		1	1	1	40
Each Lieutenant-General		1	1	1	30
Each Major-General		1	1	1	20
Each Brigadier			1		14
Quarter-Maſter-General, as ſuch only,			1		10
Each Major of Brigade			1		7
Judge-Advocate			1		7
Provoſt-Marſhal, as ſuch, a Serjeant and 12 Men, but when he has Priſoners, there is added a Subaltern, Serjeant, Drummer and 30 Men.		1	2	1	42

The Train of Artillery, according to the Number they ſhall require.

The Guard which mounts on the General in Chief, has always Colours.

ARTICLE II.

Method of Mounting and Diſmounting of the Quarter-Guards.

As ſoon as the Troop has done beating, which is generally about Nine in the Morning, the Men who mount the Quarter-Guard are to be form'd into a Rank entire, on the firſt or outermoſt Line of Parade, facing outwards, and directly in the Front of the Colours.

When they are form'd, the Adjutants are to deliver them to the Officers who Mount, on which they are to place themſelves at the Head of their Men, with their Half-Pikes in their Hands. After this, the Officer who commands the Quarter-Guard of the Regiment on the Right of the Line orders his Drummer to beat a ſhort Preparative, which is to be follow'd by the Drummers of all the Quarter Guards which are to mount. This Preparative is to give them Notice that they may be ready to march all at the ſame time.

As ſoon as the Officer on the Right judges that the Drummers on the Left have anſwer'd his Preparative, he is to march

march his Guards ſtraight forward, on which the reſt are
do the ſame, keeping an equal Pace with him; and wh
they come within ſix Paces of the Old Quarter-Guards, th
are to Halt, Face their Men 'till the Serjeants have Dreſ
them, then order them to Reſt their Firelocks, and then Fa
to the other Guards; at which the Officers advance tow
one another, and the Officers of the Old Guards deli
their Orders to thoſe of the New. Then goes on the Re
of the Sentrys, Delivering of the Quarter-Guards, Te
&c. in the ſame Manner as is directed in Garriſon-Du
While the Sentrys are Relieving, the Officers of the N
Guards are to Face their Men to the Left, and open th
to a proper Diſtance, that the Men of the Old Guards m
paſs between them.

As ſoon as the Sentrys are Reliev'd, the Officer who D
mounts on the Right of the Line, orders his Drummer
Beat a Preparative, which is to be anſwer'd by all the ot
Drummers who are to Diſmount; after which they are
order the Men of the Old Guards to Club their Firelo
and March, which they are all to do at the ſame time, tak
their Motions from that on the Right of the Line. Wh
the Old Guards Club, the New ones are to Reſt.

The Officers who Diſmount, are to Troop their Gua
to the firſt Line of Parade, and then Halt; after which th
are to order the Men to Reſt their Firelocks, Recover th
Arms, and March and Lodge them in their Bells of Arm
The Officers are then to make a Report to the Comma
ing Officer and Major of their own Regiments, of eve
Thing that happen'd during the time they were on Gua
with the Names and Crimes of the Priſoners in Writi
and by whom committed.

When the Old Quarter-Guards are march'd off, the O
cers of the New Guards are to order their Men to Reco
their Arms, Face to the Right, and March into the Grou
where the others ſtood; after which to lay down their Arm

The ſame Orders which were given to the Guards in G
riſon about the Officers keeping their Guards; their
allowing above two Men to go off at a time; the relievi
of Sentrys, and how they are to behave themſelves by D
and by Night; the Receiving of Rounds, and the Reſp
to be Paid to the General Officers, muſt be punctually
low'd by the Guards, with this Difference only, that
Quarter-Guards are to give but three Ruffles to a Lieu
nant-General, and no Salute.

The Quarter-Guards are to be placed about 74 Yards in the Front, and directly oppoſite to the Center of their own Regiments, Facing them. The Deſign of a Quarter-Guard, is rather for preſerving the Peace and Tranquility within the Regiment, by quelling all Diſputes that may ariſe, either between Officer and Officer, or amongſt the Soldiers, than for a Security againſt the Enemy: However, they are not to neglect that Part neither, but to have a watchful Eye to the Front, leſt ſome of the Enemy's Parties ſhould paſs the Grand-Guards in the Night, and fall upon them before they have time to prepare for their Defence.

Immediately after the Tat-too, the Officer of the Quarter-Guard is to Detach a Serjeant and ten Men to the Rear of the Regiment, where they are to remain 'till the Reveille has Beat; after which they are to join their Guard. This Detachment is call'd the Rear-Guard of the Regiment. The Rear-Guard is to take care that no Diſorders are committed in the Sutlers Tents or Booths; to oblige them to put out their Fire and Candle in due time, and that they entertain Nobody after the Retreat. They are likewiſe to take care that the Horſes belonging to the Regiment are not Stole; and when any of them break looſe, they are to ſtop them, and call thoſe who have the care of them to catch them. When they find any Soldier or Soldiers drinking in a Sutler's Tent at an improper Time, they are to carry both the Soldiers and the Sutler Priſoners to the Quarter-Guard, where they are to remain 'till the Commanding Officer thinks proper to Releaſe them, or to have them Try'd by a Regimental Court-Martial, in order to their being puniſh'd for their Crimes.

An Hour after the beating the Retreat, the Officer of the Quarter-Guard is to ſend a Patrol of a Serjeant and ſix Men round the Regiment, to ſee if the Sutlers have obey'd the above orders; to oblige the Soldiers to put out all their Lights; and to viſit all the Sentrys, to ſee that they are Alert on their Poſts; and if they find one aſleep, they are to ſecure his Firelock, and ſend immediately to the Corporal of the Guard to have him reliev'd and committed a cloſe Priſoner, 'till he can be try'd for his Crime. When the Serjeant returns with the Patrol, he is to make a Report of what happen'd, and what ſtate he found every thing in, to his Officer.

Theſe Patrols ſhould be ſent every two Hours, that is, an Hour after each Relief, during the Night; ſo that with the

Relief and the Patrol, the Sentrys, and the ſeveral Parts of the Regiment, will be viſited every Hour.

Upon any Noiſe or Diſturbance in the Regiment, the Officer of the Quarter-Guard is to ſend a Serjeant, and a File of Men, to enquire into the Reaſons of it, and to put a ſtop to all Diſorders that may ariſe. If the Serjeant finds the Soldiers Quarrelling, he muſt bring them Priſoners to the Guard; but if it is amongſt the Officers, he muſt ſend immediately to his Officer, that he may come and confine them to their Tents; and in the mean time the Serjeant muſt not ſuffer them to Fight, which if they perſiſt in doing, he is impower'd to uſe Force to prevent it, 'till the Officer of the Guard comes. In ſhort, the Officer of the Quarter-Guard is to have the ſame Inſpection over every thing that happens in the Regiment, as the Captain of the Main-Guard has over that of a Garriſon.

ARTICLE III.

All the other Guards Ordinary, except the Picquet, Mount immediately after the Beating of the Troop.

There are two Parades for the forming of all Guards or Parties, that are done by Detachments from each Regiment.

The Firſt is called the Parade of the Brigade, and the Second, the Grand-Parade.

The Parade of the Brigade is generally at the Head of the Eldeſt Regiment of each Brigade, and the Grand-Parade about the Center of the firſt Line.

The Adjutants are to draw out the Men, who ſhall be order'd to Mount, at the Head of their own Regiments, firſt, and to examine into the Condition of their Arms, Ammunition, and Accoutrements, and to ſee that they are Clean and well dreſs'd; after which they are to conduct them to the Parade of the Brigade, and deliver them over to the Major of Brigade, and to wait there 'till he has look'd into their State and Numbers, that they may anſwer for what is wanting.

The Adjutants are to do the ſame by all Detachments that ſhall be order'd from their Regiments, whether by Day or by Night, and not leave it to be done by the Serjeants-Major, as is but too frequently practis'd.

The Majors of Brigade must therefore be on the Parade, to receive all Detachments, that shall be order'd from the Brigade, from the Adjutants of the several Regiments, and to oblige them to attend him 'till they are sent to the Grand-Parade.

Unless the Majors of Brigade are very punctual in performing this Part of their Duty, it is almost certain that the Adjutants will be remiss in theirs, particularly in those which shall be commanded out in the Night: For when they know that the Major of Brigade won't be at the Parade to Form the Detachment, they will be apt to lie in their Beds, and order the Serjeant-Major to Draw out the Men, and March them to the Parade; the Consequence of which may prove detrimental to the Service, both in the Loss of Time, and for want of a due Inspection into the Mens Arms and Ammunition, since we may naturally suppose, that the Corporals will not be quite so Diligent in Drawing out their Men for the Serjeant-Major, as for the Adjutant, nor take so much Care about their Arms and Ammunition, by not having the Adjutant present to look into it.

'Tis from such Neglects as these, that a great many Designs miscarry; for let a Scheme be ever so well concerted, one half Hour's Neglect, or Loss of Time in the Executive part, may be sufficient to disappoint the Whole, or occasion much greater Difficulty in the Success. It is therefore absolutely Necessary, that the Majors of Brigade see all the Detachments of their own Brigade paraded, at whatever time they shall be ordered, and oblige the Adjutants to attend them till they are sent to the Grand-Parade.

When a Major of Brigade is of the Day, he must appoint one of the Adjutants of his Brigade, to see all the Detachments of it form'd during the time he is on that Duty.

The Detachments are to draw up on the Parade of the Brigade in the same manner as the Regiments are Encamp'd; thus: the Eldest on the Right, the second on the Left; and so on from Right to Left, 'till the Youngest comes in the Center.

As soon as the Detachments from the several Regiments are Paraded, and that the Major of Brigade has examin'd as to their Condition and Numbers, he is to order the Officers, who Mount with the Men, to march them to the Grand-Parade: the particular Method for the Forming of them there, and Detaching them from thence, shall be Mention'd in the following Article.

ARTICLE IV.

The Major of Brigade of the Day is to be on the Grand-Parade, to receive the Detachments from the ſeveral Brigades, in the ſame Manner as each particular Major of Brigade do thoſe from the ſeveral Regiments of their own Brigades; and to Examine whether each Brigade have ſent the Number of Officers and Soldiers as was Order'd.

The Detachments from the ſeveral Brigades are not to be Drawn up by Seniority, but by Lot, as directed for Garriſon-Duty; Therefore, the Major of Brigade of the Day muſt have as many Lots ready as there are Brigades in the Foot, and order a Serjeant of a Brigade to draw for them according to which they are to draw up on the Grand Parade.

As ſoon as the Detachments are drawn up, the Serjeants are to draw up in the Front of their own Men, in the ſame Manner as is directed in forming the Guards in a Garriſon; after which, the Major of Brigade of the Day is to Tell off the ſeveral Guards as the Town-Major does, by beginning at the Right, appointing the Serjeants to them, and ordering the Men, as they are Told off, to Order their Arms. When all the Guards are Told off, the Officers are then to draw for their Guards; but as this may occaſion the Officers on the Right of the Line to Mount with the Men on the Left, I am of Opinion, that it would be more Proper to place the Officers, as near as poſſible, to thoſe Guards to which the Men of their own Brigades are Detach'd: For as the Brigades are to draw every Day for their Poſts on the Grand-Parade, it will hardly fall out, that the ſame Guards will come to their ſhare two Days together; and therefore can't fall harder on one Brigade than another. My Reaſon why I think this Method preferable to that of the Officers drawing for their Guards, is, that when the Guards are Reliev'd, the Officers ſhould march to the Parade of the Brigade and diſmiſs them there, inſtead of the Grand-Parade, by which means they will be Diſmiſs'd near their own Encampment, whereas by Diſmiſſing them on the Grand-Parade, the Men who are Encamp'd on the Extremities of the Firſt and Second Lines, will have a conſiderable Way to go to their Regiments, if the Army is tolerably Large, and thereby not only Fatigue them, but throw the Temptation of a Soldier's Tent in their Way, and, by getting Drunk, loſe their

A

Arms and Accoutrements, and the Fear of being Puniſh'd for the ſame may induce them to Deſert; but by the Method I propoſe, this Inconveniency will be, in a great meaſure, avoided, ſince the Men will be diſmiſſed near their own Brigade.

When the Officers are to Draw for their Guards, as is the general Practice, they are, when reliev'd, to March their Guards to the Grand-Parade, and diſmiſs them there.

The General Officer's Guard, according to their Seniority, are to be Told off firſt; then that for the Train, Proſt-Marſhal, *&c.*

As ſoon as the Officers are poſted to their Guards, the Men may be Order'd to Shoulder their Arms by Beat of Drum. After that, the Major of Brigade of the Day is to order the Guards to March off in the ſame Manner as is practis'd by the Town-Major in a Garriſon, and to ſee them all March off from the Prade, before he leaves it.

When an Army is compos'd of the Troops of different Princes, thoſe Troops are commanded by General Officers of their own; in which caſe, the General Officers have Guards from their own Troops; ſo that thoſe Guards don't come in to the General Detail of the Army, but are kept apart by the Majors of Brigade belonging to thoſe Troops; therefore thoſe Guards are not Detach'd from the Grand-Parade, and conſequently don't come under the Cognizance of the Major of Brigade of the Day. However, the above Method will ſerve for each Nation, and their own Majors of Brigade muſt take it Day about to Parade their own Guards.

When it thus happens, the Guards Ordinary, which the Major of Brigade of the Day is to Detach from the Grand-Parade, are thoſe of the Train, Provoe-General of the Army, and the Bread Waggons; as alſo any other for which the Whole Army is to give an equal Proportion of Officers and Soldiers.

ARTICLE V.

The Picquet-Guard, as it is call'd, is a Body of Men who are to be always ready to March at a Moment's Warning, either to ſuſtain Out-poſts, Foraging Eſcorts, or, in caſe the Enemy ſhould endeavour to Surprize you in your Camp, to March out and Attack them, in order to give the Army time to Draw up.

The Number which every Battalion gives to the Picquet, is mention'd in the firſt Article. When the Picquet is or-

der'd to March, another is immediately order'd to ſupply their Room, in caſe a Second ſhould be commanded out.

The Picquet-Guard continues on Duty only 24 Hours, and is drawn out at the Head of each Battalion every Night, in the following manner:

While the Drummers are beating the Tat-too, the Men who mount the Picquet are to be drawn up, at the Head of their Street, three deep, with Shoulder'd Arms; and when the Drummers have done Beating, the Captain of the Picquet is to order the Men to March, which they are to do very ſlow, and in a direct Line to the Front, caſting their Eyes to the Right and Left, that they may all March even. When they have march'd to a proper Diſtance from the Tents, he is to order them to Halt; after that to cloſe them to the Center, and then to order the Serjeants to compleat the Files. As ſoon as the Files are compleated, the Captains and the two Subalterns are to examine the Mens Arms, and to ſee if they are loaded (which is to be with a Running Ball) and Prim'd; as alſo to look into their Ammunition. After this, the Captain is to caution the Men not to ſtir from the Regiment to keep their Arms by them in their Tents; to lie in their Cloaths and Accoutrements, that they may be ready to Turn out at a Moment's Warning, and to remember their Ranks and Files, that they are then drawn up in, that in caſe they ſhould be order'd out upon Service, or for the Lieutenant-General of the Day to ſee them, they may fall into their own Places, that no time may be loſt in compleating them again. When this is done, he orders the Men to *Reſt their Firelocks*; *Recover their Arms*; *Face to the Right-about*, and *March to their Tents*. The eldeſt Serjeant of the Picquet is to get a Liſt of the Mens Names immediately, and give it to the Captain, that if any one is wanting, when the Picquet is order'd out, they may know who it is, in order to his being puniſh'd for Neglect of Duty; as alſo to prevent the Men being chang'd, or order'd out upon any other Command, while they are on the Picquet; for ſhould the Men be chang'd, how ſhould the Officers of the Picquet know whether their Mens Arms were in order or not, or that they were provided with Ammunition? For which Reaſon, they ſhould always order thoſe Men on the Picquet-Guard who came laſt off Duty, that others may not be commanded on Guards or Detachments out of their Turns, by having thoſe Men on the Picquet who are the firſt on the Roll to go on Duty.

The

The Orderly Corporal of each Company is to place himſelf, with his Arms in his Hand, about eight Paces in the Front, and facing his own Men, during the time that the Picquet is under Arms, that, when the Officers are examining the Mens Arms and Ammunition, he may be ready to anſwer for every thing that ſhall be found out of order; it is therefore the Duty of thoſe Corporals to take particular care, that the Men have all things in proper order before they are drawn out, otherwiſe the Puniſhment will fall on them inſtead of the Men.

The Quarter-Guards are to Turn out, and remain with Shoulder'd Arms during the Time that the Picquet continues at the Head of the Regiments; and when the Picquet is Turn'd in, the Men of the Quarter Guard are to Lodge their Arms, either in their Bell of Arms, or Shed erected to keep them dry.

Moſt Regiments have a diſtinct Roll of the Picquet-Duty for the Officers, from that of Guards Ordinary and Extraordinary, which Roll begins with the Youngeſt, as the other does with the Eldeſt, that the Officers may have an equal Share of each Duty; but whenever the Picquet marches from the Head of the Line, it paſſes for a Duty both to the Officers and Soldiers, and is allow'd them in their next Tour.

If the Picquet of one Regiment, or one Brigade, or that of one Wing, ſhould March, and not the reſt, thoſe Regiments whoſe Picquet march'd, are to be allow'd it in the Grand Detail of Duty.

Beſides the Officers of the Picquet already mention'd, there are General-Officers and Field-Officers appointed to command them.

The Generals ſo order'd, are call'd General Officers of the Day: and the Field-Officers are call'd Field-Officers of the Picquet.

The General Officers of the Day for the Infantry, are Three, a Lieutenant-General, a Major-General, and a Brigadier-General, who are to March with, and take the Command of the Picquet when it is order'd out upon any Occaſion: And as the Picquet is immediately under the Command of the Lieutenant-General of the Day, it is not to March without his Orders; therefore all Orders relating to the Picquet are ſent directly to him, that he may give Direction for its Marching.

In caſe of an Alarm, the Picquets are to draw out at th Head of their Regiments; but not to March from thenc 'till they receive Orders for it from the Lieutenant-Gener of the Day; and tho' it ſhould prove a falſe Alarm, the are not to return to their Tents 'till he orders them.

The Number of Field-Officers appointed for the Picque is according to the Strength of the Army. But in order t give a proper Idea of the uſual Method, we will ſuppoſe Body of Infantry conſiſting of 108 Battalions Incamp'd two Lines; the Front Line conſiſting of 56 Battalions, an the Second of 52. In this caſe, they always divide them int two Bodies, diſtinguiſh'd by the Right and Left Wings. I dividing them, they do not ſeparate the Bodies from one anc ther, or leave a greater Interval between the Regiments tha ordinary; but only place the Half on the Right of both Lin in the Right Wing, and the Half on the Left of both Lin in the Left Wing; for the clearer Underſtanding of whic I have hereunto annex'd a Plan of the ſaid Number of Ba talions, divided into Wings and Brigades, to ſhew how th Field Officers are appointed for the Picquet; the Numb of whom, to command the Picquet of this Body of Foo can't be leſs, in my Opinion, than four Colonels, fou Lieutenant-Colonels, and four Majors, two of each Ran for each Line: by which each Colonel in the Front Lin will have the Command of the Picquets of 28 Battalion which is 1400 Men, beſides Officers, Serjeants, and Drum mers; and thoſe of the Rear Line will have the Comman of the Picquets of 26 Battalions, which is 1300 Men, beſid Officers, &c. and tho' theſe Numbers are above the Ord nary Commands of Colonels, yet, on extraordinary Occ ſions, it is uſual for Colonels to have the Command of 15 Men; but more particularly ſo in relation to the Picquet.

When the Infantry is thus divided into Wings, they g nerally do Duty apart; ſo that each Wing has a diſtinct R ſter, or Roll of Duty, kept for it. In this Caſe, each Wi furniſhes its own Field-Officers for the Picquet, and are a pointed by Name to their ſeveral Commands in Publick C ders, in the following Manner:

Such a Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major, a for the Picquet of the Front Line, in the Right Wing.

Such a Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major, a for the Picquet of the Second Line, in the Right Wing.

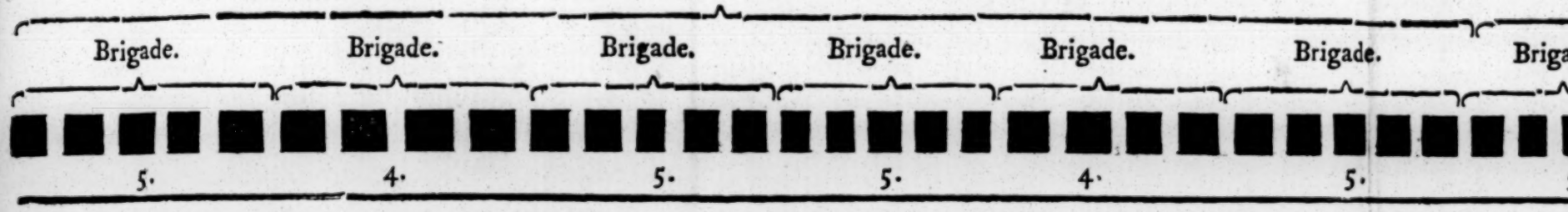
Such a Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major, a for the Picquet of the Front Line, in the Left Wing.

Su

PLAN of 108 Battalions drawn up in Two Lines, divided
Officers are appointed fo

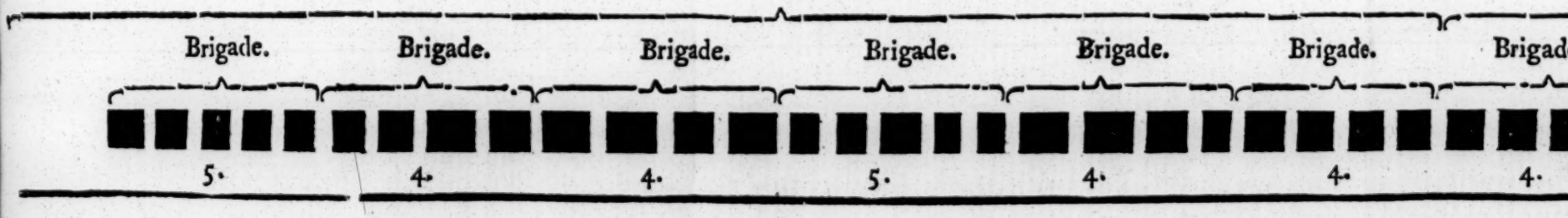
Front Line, consisting of 56 Battalions

Left Wing of the Front Line, containing 28 Battalions, Forming Six Brigades.



Second Line, consisting of 52 Battalion

Left Wing of the Second Line, containing 26 Battalions.

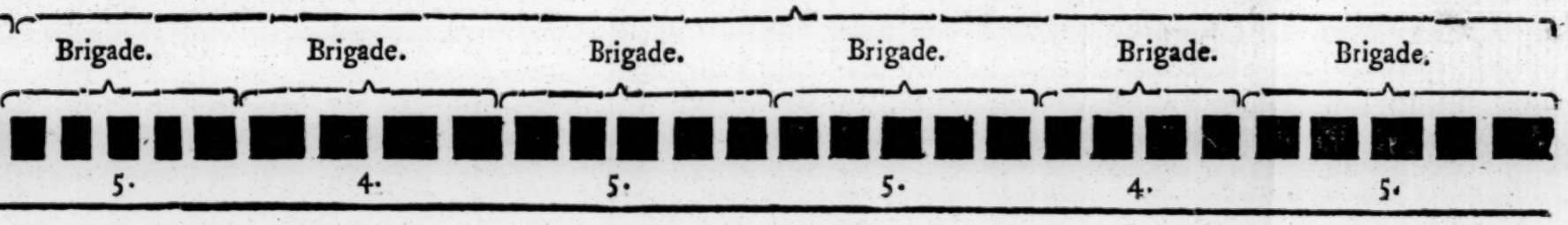


The Figures she

ided into Wings and Brigades, to ſhew how the Field ed for the Picquet.

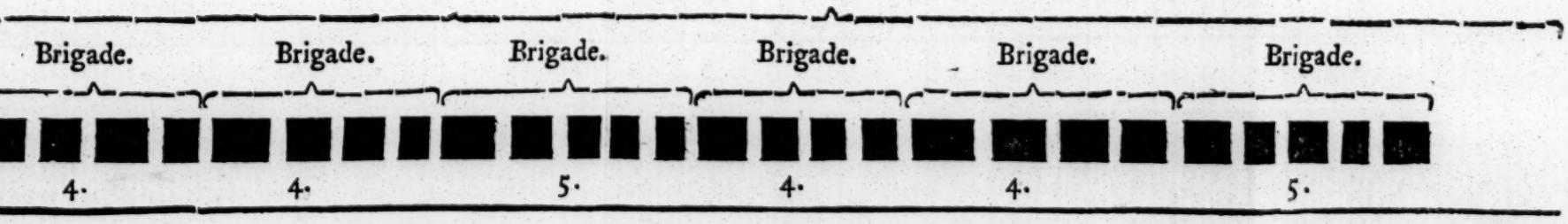
talions, Form'd into 12 Brigades.

Right Wing of the Front Line, containing 28 Battalions, Form'd into Six Brigades.



talions, Form'd into 12 Brigades.

Right Wing of the Second Line, containing 26 Battalions.



es ſhew the Number of Battalions in each Brigade.

Such a Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major, are for the Picquet of the Second Line in the Left Wing.

By the above Method of appointing the Field-Officers, they can immediately repair to their ſeveral Commands, and join the Picquets, over whom they are placed, into a Body, when they are order'd to march; and likewiſe know what Quarter-Guards they are to viſit in going their Rounds.

As the Number over whom each Colonel of the Picquet is placed, would be too great to be continued in one Body, if they were order'd out upon Service; every Colonel ſhould therefore divide his Men into two Bodies, giving the Command of the Second to the Lieutenant-Colonel of the Picquet who is under him; by which the Picquet will be divided into eight Bodies, four of which will conſiſt of 700 Men each, and the other four of 650 Men each, beſides Officers, Serjeants, and Drummers.

The dividing the Picquet in this Manner, is not with a View to leſſen the Command of the Colonels, ſince thoſe over whom their Lieutenant-Colonels are placed, are to be ſtill under their Direction; but only to make them more fit for Action, by reducing each Body pretty near the Complement of a Battalion; which Model is certainly the moſt perfect, ſince all the Infantry of *Europe* are divided into Battalions of about ſix or ſeven hundred Men each, and therefore ſufficiently evinces the Truth of its being ſo.

As ſoon as Tat-too has beat, the Lieutenant-Colonels and Majors of the Picquet are to wait on the Colonels under whoſe Command they are appointed, to receive their Orders about going of the Rounds, and when they ſhall make their Reports to them.

I ſhould think it would be very proper, that the Field-Officers of the Picquet ſhould be order'd to repair to the Head of their Wings with their Scarfs on, at the beating the Tat-too, to ſee the Picquets drawn out. That ſhould be the Place where the Colonels ſhould give their Orders to the other Field-Officers, and not at their Tents or Quarters. I own this is not the Practice; but according to my Notions of Diſcipline, it ought to be, ſince it could not fail of having a very good Effect; for when the others ſee the Field-Officers exact in performing their Duty, it will infuſe the ſame Spirit into them; whereas, when they find Thoſe neglect Diſcipline who ought to ſupport it, we may reaſonably conclude, that they will follow their Example, in this, very punctually.

The

The Colonels of the Picquet go the Grand-Round, which is done about the ſame Time and in the ſame Manner as the Grand-Round in a Garriſon.

When the Lieutenant-Colonels, and Majors are order'd by their Colonels to go Rounds, which is generally after the Grand Round has gone, they are to be receiv'd on the Footing of Common-Rounds, and are therefore to give the Word to the Officers on Guard.

The Field Officers of the Picquet, in going their Rounds, are only to viſit the Quarter-Guards of their Wing.

The Lieutenant-Colonels and Majors are to make their Report to the Colonels of the Picquet, that is, to thoſe under whoſe Command they are placed, at the time which they ſhall appoint, which is commonly in the Morning; and the Colonels of the Picquet are to make their Report of the whole to the Lieutenant-General of the Day, at the Head Quarters, at Orderly Time.

If the General-Officers of the Day think proper to go Rounds, they are always to be receiv'd as Grand-Rounds, tho' the Grand-Round ſhould be made; and the Officers muſt give them the Word: Neither are they, nor the Grand-Round, oblig'd to diſmount when they receive the Word.

Tho' it is poſitively ſaid, that the Picquet ſhall not march from the Head of their Regiments 'till they receive Orders for it from the Lieutenant-General of the Day, yet it can't be ſuppos'd but that the Major General and Brigadier of the Day, or the Colonels of the Picquet, may venture to march them upon an Emergency, without waiting for his Orders; otherwiſe the Intent and Deſign of the Picquet, that of putting a Stop to the Enemy 'till the Army can draw out, may be obſtructed. For as the Lieutenant-General of the Day can't be in every Place at a time, ſhould the Enemy appear on one Flank while he is at the other, or in the Center, his Orders might come too late for their Marching to oppoſe them. It can't therefore be doubted but that their Marching on ſuch an Occaſion, without waiting for his Orders, is not only excuſable, but abſolutely neceſſary: However, unleſs there is a real Neceſſity, no ſubordinate Officer ſhould preſume to order the Picquet to march, but by his Commands.

The Lieutenant-General of the Day may order the Picquet of any Battalion, to draw out under Arms, for him to ſee them, during any time of the Night; but the other General-Officers of the Day, or the Field-Officers of the Picquet can't do it by their own Authority.

I mu

I muſt beg leave to offer one thing of my own relating to the Picquet, which is this:

When the Picquet draws out upon any Alarm, the Colonels of the Picquet ſhould have Directions, to join the Picquets of their Wing immediately into a Body, without waiting for the Lieutenant-General of the Day's Orders; by which means they will be ready to march from the Head of the Line, as ſoon as they ſhall receive his Orders, which will ſave a great deal of Time, that will be loſt if they are not to join 'till he orders them. For as the ſaving of an Out-poſt, or a Foraging Eſcort, when attack'd, depends on the Diligence of the Picquet, the Method I propoſe will contribute towards it in point of Time.

I do not mean that the Whole ſhould join in one Body; but that every Colonel ſhould join thoſe into a Body over whom he is appointed, the Place for which ſhould be in the Front of the Center-Battalion of his Wing; ſo that the Picquet ſhould be form'd into as many Bodies as there are Colonels order'd for the Picquet: And if it ſhould prove a falſe Alarm, they will have but a ſhort way to march back to their Regiments, and therefore it can't be look'd on as a Fatigue; but if it ſhould prove a real one, the Advantage of their being join'd, is, in my Opinion, ſo plain, that it will not admit of an Objection: For when the General of the Day ſends them Orders to march, his Aid-de-Camps will have an Occaſion to deliver them only to the Colonels of the Picquet, which may be done in a very ſhort time; whereas, by the other way, they muſt ſtop at every Battalion, to give the Captain of the Picquet Orders where he is to march to; and even after that, they muſt make a Halt, in order to be form'd into diſtinct Bodies under the Command of the Field-Officers; before they enter upon Action: So that by the Aid-de-Camp's ſtopping at every Battalion to deliver his Orders, and their halting afterwards to form them into diſtinct Bodies, a conſiderable Time muſt be loſt; whereas by the Method propos'd, they will be ready to march and enter upon Action upon the firſt Order.

As the *Germans* and *French* don't only differ from us, but alſo from one another, in ſome Particulars relating to their Picquet-Guard, I believe the inſerting them here will not be thought improper; ſince the knowing the Method of different Nations, may be of Service to an Officer on ſeveral Occaſions.

ARTICLE

ARTICLE IV.

The Picquet of the Imperialiſts and *French* conſiſts of the ſame Number of Officers and Soldiers from each Battalion as is order'd for ours, and deſign'd for the ſame Uſe, that of having a Body of Men always ready, *&c.* But what we differ in from the *Germans*, is this, that our Picquets remain in their Tents all Night, and theirs ſerve as an Advanced Guard to the Army.

As ſoon as Tat-too has beat, and that the Officers have examin'd the Soldiers Arms and Ammunition, they march their Picquets about 80 or 100 Yards in the Front of their own Quarter-Guards, where they are to continue all Night, placing Sentrys in their Front and on their Flanks; but thoſe of the Front Line poſt a Serjeant's Guard about 30 or 40 Yards advanced, when they are near the Enemy, otherwiſe not, to which they ſend frequent Patrols.

If the Rear of their Army lies open, or that they are under any Apprehenſion of the Enemy's attempting to ſurprize them there, the Picquet of the ſecond Line is then poſted about the ſame Diſtance in the Rear of their Sutler's Tents, Facing outwards, and taking the ſame Precautions as thoſe of the Front Line, in poſting of Sentrys, and Serjeants Guards, *&c.*

By this means, they ſay, both the Front and Rear of their Army is ſecur'd, during the Night, from being inſulted by an inconſiderable Number of the Enemy's Troops; and tho' they ſhould Advance with a large Body, the Picquet would ſtop them ſo long, 'till the Army would have time to get to their Arms.

This is the Reaſon which they give for their Picquet-Guards lying out every Night, in the manner above mention'd; and if they did it only when there was a real Occaſion, the Reaſon would be good; but as it is their conſtant Practice, from the Opening of the Campaign to the End of it, it proceeds rather from Cuſtom than Neceſſity ſince their Situation can't be always ſuch, as to be liable to a Surprize, and when they are not under thoſe Circumſtances, Acts of Supererogation, in my Opinion, ought to be avoided, that the Men may not be Fatigu'd to no Purpoſe.

I do not from hence condemn the Method, but the wrong Application. When the Armies are near one another; or that you are inferior to the Enemy, or particularly ſo in Horſe,

Horſe, whoſe Motions are quick; or that you are expos'd to their Inſults by the Situation of your Camp; the drawing out of the Picquet, in the *German* manner, will be not only proper, but abſolutely neceſſary: But when they are not under theſe Circumſtances, it is very imprudent to act as if they were. It ſhews that the Commander in Chief has only attain'd to the Mechanical Part of the Service, but wants Judgment to apply it in the proper Seaſon.

A General ſhould be Careful, but not Diffident, leſt it make a bad Impreſſion on thoſe under his Command: Neither ſhould he deſpiſe the Enemy too much, leſt, by fancying himſelf in a State of Security, he ſhould give them an Advantage over him; So that the true Medium lies between Preſumption and Diffidence; that is, Bold, but not Raſh; Circumpect, but not Diffident. No Man can attain to this merely by Art. It muſt be implanted by Nature, and brought to Maturity by Experience. Thus was our late Victorious General, the Duke of *Marlborough*, form'd, whoſe Conduct in War may be Imitated, but hardly Equail'd.

The Field-Officers of the Picquet don't go their Rounds to the Quarter-Guards, but to the Picquet-Guards; and not only the Grand-Round is obliged to give the Officer of each Picquet-Guard the Word; but the General Officers of the Day muſt do it alſo, if they come to viſit the Picquet.

All the Field-Officers of the Picquet go their Rounds. The Major begins his about half an Hour after it is dark. His chief Buſineſs is like that of a Town-Major, to ſee if the Sentrys are properly poſted, and if not, to give Directions for the doing it; as alſo to examine into their Numbers, *&c.*

The Colonel goes the Grand-Round about twelve a Clock; and the Lieutenant-Colonel about half an Hour before Day.

One of the General Officers of the Day ſeldom fails of going to the Picquet of the Front Line juſt at or after the beating of the Reveille; not on the Footing of a Round, ſince no Round is made after Reveille; but only to ask how all things paſs'd in the Night, and whether they diſcover'd any thing or not; after which he goes to viſit the Grand-Guards of Horſe, and Out-poſts.

About half an Hour after the Reveille, the Picquet-Guards return to their Regiment. This is the Method of the Picquet-Guards of Foot of the Imperialiſts; and I preſume it is the ſame amongſt the Troops of all the *German* Princes.

The

The Horſe and Dragoon Picquets are form'd alſo at the Head of their reſpective Wings; but don't advance above 30 Paces from the Standard-Guards.

At the ſetting of the Watch, they are drawn out at the Head of their Regiments, as the Foot are; afterwards thoſe of each Wing are join'd; and then form'd into Squadrons with proper Officers to command them; and as ſoon as they have poſted their Videts, or Sentrys, the Men are or-der'd to diſmount and lie at their Horſes Heads.

As they are allow'd to bring Forage with them to feed their Horſes, they have liberty to unbridle.

When they are under any Apprehenſions of the Enemy's Attempts, they don't only poſt Subaltern Guards in their Front and Flanks, but keep one entire Rank of the Whole mounted, which they relieve every Hour, by making the three Ranks take it in their Turn; and ſend frequent Pa-trols round their Videts and advanced Guards.

The Field Officers of the Horſe-Picquet aſſemble with the Men, and remain with them all Night.

A little before Day, the Men are order'd to bridle their Horſes, and mount, that they may be ready to ſuſtain the Grand Guards, in caſe they are attack'd; and a little after Day-break they ſend out Patrols to reconnoitre as far as the Grand Guards of their own Wing, with Orders for them not to return 'till they are march'd to their Day-Poſts. They ſend out Patrols likewiſe to reconnoitre on their Flanks; that is, thoſe of the Right Wing reconnoitre the Right Flank of the Army; and the Left Wing the Left Flank; which Patrols ſeldom reconnoitre above a Mile, unleſs on ſome extraordinary Occaſion. As ſoon as their Patrols are return'd, and their Guards and Videts drawn in, the Horſe-Picquets return to their Regiments.

The Number of Horſe which mount the Picquet, is not fix'd, as it is in the Foot, but are more or leſs according as there is occaſion, both with them and us: however, there are never leſs than two of a Troop, and ſeldom more than eight; ſo that according to the Number of Men, Officers are commanded in Proportion.

The common Method is to appoint a Captain, Lieute-nant, and Cornet to 80 or 100 Horſe; but ſometimes they order the ſame Numbers of Officers to 50, 60, or 70, ac-cording to the Service on which they are commanded. It is a ſtanding Rule in the Cavalry, that when a Captain of Horſe is order'd on Duty, he has a Quarter-Maſter and a

Trumpet

mpet from his own Regiment, ſo that they are never ntion'd in the Orders; but the Lieutenants and Cornets e neither, unleſs on very particular Occaſions; ſuch as uard of Horſe on the General in Chief.

The Manner of joining the Picquet of each Wing of rſe into a Body, and then forming them into Squadrons, referable to the Method of their Foot Picquet, that of ing the Picquet of each Battalion ſingle: For ſhould the emy make an Attempt upon the Incampment of the Foot he Night, they could not be oppos'd at any one Place of with more than a Captain and 50 Men, beſides the Quar-Guard, which could not make any conſiderable Reſiſt-e, at leaſt not ſufficient to give the Regiments time to rm as they ought. 'Tis true that the Foot are not very ble to Surprizes of this Nature, from their being incampt the Center: However, I am of Opinion, that when the quet is to continue out all Night, they ſhould be form'd o Colonels Commands; that is, into as many Bodies as re are Colonels appointed for the Picquet, and the Field-ficers to remain with their ſeveral Commands. After they thus form'd, the General of the Day ſhould poſt them in ch Places along the Front, Flanks, or Rear, by which the emy can have acceſs to the Camp; ſo that by having ſo nſiderable a Body, as a Colonel's Command, poſted at ch Avenue leading to your Camp, the Army can be in no anger from a Surprize, ſince they will be able to make ch a Reſiſtance as will give the Army time to Form, hich is all that is required from the Picquet, that being the nd for which they are then deſign'd.

When the Rear is ſo ſecured that it is in no Danger from e Enemy, the Picquet of that Line may be poſted likewiſe the Front of the firſt Line, or on the Flanks, if requi-e.

From each of theſe Bodies, the Colonels ſhould poſt Of-cers Guards at a proper Diſtance in their Front, and ſmall nes on their Flanks, and ſend frequent Patrols round them keep them Alert.

The Officers of theſe advanced Guards muſt be extream igilant and watchful, that they may not be ſurpriz'd; for hich end they ſhould poſt two Sentrys at each Poſt in their ront, that one may come to the Guard, upon the Ap-earance of any Number of Men, or the hearing of a Noiſe ke the March of Troops, to acquaint the Officer with it; pon which they ſhould put their Men under Arms, and en-

deavour

deavour to inform themſelves thoroughly of the Truth of that Report, by reconnoitring the Place where the M were ſeen, or from whence the Noiſe was heard, be they ſend an Account of it to the Colonel of the Picque

When the Officers find the Report of the Sentrys t true, they are to ſend an Account of it immediately to Colonel of the Picquet, and ſo from time to time as they cover any thing further.

If the Number of Men which were diſcover'd, or Noiſe which was heard, is conſiderable, the Colone the Picquet is to ſend an Account of it to the Gener the Day, as alſo to thoſe Bodies which are poſted near h with Directions for them to communicate it to thoſe them, and ſo from one to another 'till the ſeveral Bodie the Picquet are acquainted with it, that they may be prepar'd for their Defence, or ready to march upon the Order they ſhall receive from the Lieutenant-Gener the Day.

On ſuch Notice, the Colonels of the Picquet are to their Men under Arms, and to ſend Patrols round their vanced Guards and Sentrys, to ſee that they are Al and to acquaint the Officers who command thoſe Gu with the Report which was ſent them from the other dies, that they may be ready to oppoſe any Attempt ſhall be made on them; as alſo to Reconnoitre beyond th advanced Sentrys, and to ſend him a Report of what t diſcover.

As the Colonels of the Picquet can't quit their Poſts Suſtain one another, without they have Orders for it fr the General of the Day, it can't therefore be doubted, that he will immediately repair to the Place from whence received the Report, in order to give ſuch Directions as Service may require: For which end the General Offic of the Day ſhould have a Tent pitch'd in the Rear of t Body; which is poſted oppoſite to the Center of the f Line, where they ſhould remain all Night, that the Co nels of the Picquet may ſend their Reports when any th is Diſcover'd or Heard, and Receive their Comman without Loſs of Time.

Having given full Directions in the 6th Article, Chap. how Sentrys are to behave on their Poſts, there is no O caſion for its being further mention'd; but leſt the Ene ſhould advance upon the Advanced Guards, before the G neral of the Day can arrive at that Poſt to give the neceſſa

Orde

rders, they are not to quit their Poſts 'till they are Forced it by ſuperior Numbers; and even in that Caſe they are Maintain it as long as they can by Firing upon them, af- r which they are to Retire ſlowly to the Body from which ey were Detach'd.

Upon the Fire of the Advanc'd Guards of Foot, the orſe Picquet ſhould immediately Mount, and the General fficer who Commands them ſhould ſend a ſufficient De- chment towards the Place from whence the Fire was ard, in order to ſuſtain the Poſt that is Attack'd, and be ady to follow with the Whole, in caſe thoſe ſhould not be fficient: However, all the Horſe Picquet ſhould not march om their Poſts 'till Part of the Cavalry are Mounted and orm'd, leſt the Enemy ſhould have done it with a Deſign to raw them from thence, and then attack the Flanks of the rmy before they are prepared to Receive them. But I muſt ot proceed further on this Head, for fear of incurring the juſt enſure of my Superiors, by Preſuming to lay down Rules thoſe who are thoroughly Verſed in all Things relating to e Service. I hope they will therefore excuſe the Liberty ave taken in entring, perhaps, a little too freely into the rand Detail, which I was neceſſitated to do now and then, leave the Parts Treated on not clearly underſtood by oſe for whom it is Deſign'd, young Officers. Beſides, as ere is great Reaſon to believe, that ſeveral of them will rive to the Rank of General Officers, before they have an pportunity of acquiring the Knowledge of their Duty by ervice, thoſe things relating to it, which are here inſerted, believe, upon ſecond Thoughts, will not be judg'd al- gether Improper, in order to give them a ſmall Idea of oſe Important Poſts.

When the Horſe and Foot Picquet is Diſpos'd of accord- g to the above Method, the Army can be under no Ap- rehenſion of a Surprize. Beſides, Enterprizes of that Na- re are ſeldom ſucceſsful, from the Difficulties that attend Night Expeditions, and therefore very ſeldom undertaken; ut if they ſhould attempt it, and paſs the Grand-Guards of Horſe without being diſcover'd, which is not very eaſy they perform their Duty, the Oppoſition which they will eet with from the Picquet, both of Horſe and Foot, will, all Probability, make them conclude that their Deſign is iſcover'd, and conſequently give it over, and Return from hence they came; but if it has not that Effect, it will

however give the Army the time Requiſite to Draw out and Oppoſe them.

I ſhall now proceed to the Method of the Foot Picquet of the *French*.

The Picquet-Guard of each Battalion conſiſts of the ſame Number of Officers and Soldiers, and are deſign'd for the ſame End as ours, with this Difference; that they furniſh Sentrys to their Colours and Bells of Arms, their Quarter-Guard being compos'd of a Serjeant and twelve Men only.

The Picquet is Drawn up in the Interval on the Right of the Granadiers, where they continue 'till they are reliev'd at Tat-too; for which Reaſon, they always erect a Shed there made with Boughs and Straw, to keep their Arms and Ammunition from the Rain.

When the Commander in Chief of the Army, or the General Officers of the Day, Paſs by, they only draw up in their Ranks with Arms; and if the King ſhould Paſs by, they pay him no other Compliment.

The Day the Army is to March, at the Beating of the General, the Officers of the Picquet are to get on Horſe-back, and to take care that the Soldiers don't take their Arms out of the Bells and go before, or ſtir from the Battalion, which the *French* Soldiers would frequently do, were it not for this Precaution.

When the Regiment is Drawn out, either to March, or to Mount the Trenches, the Picquet is always Form'd on the Right of the Battalion, and Marches immediately after the Granadiers.

If a Captain and fifty Men of a Regiment are Commanded out, while they are on the March, or in the Trenches, the Picquet is to perform that Service; that is, they are to March firſt; but if a ſecond Detachment of the ſame Number is wanted, it is taken from the Battalion, the firſt having finiſh'd their Duty; otherwiſe the firſt Picquet would paſs their Time extreamly ill in the Trenches, were they to be commanded out before the others have taken their Tour. This is all in which the *German* and *French* Picquet differ from ours.

CHAP

CHAP. XVI.

Conſiſting of the Guards Ordinary of the Horſe and Dragoons; and alſo Extraordinary Guards of the Foot.

ARTICLE I.

FORMERLY the Horſe and Dragoons were look'd upon as two Diſtinct Bodies, and therefore had ſeparate Duties: For the Horſe did all the Duty of the Grand-Guard, and the Dragoons that of Convoys or Eſcorts, and guarding of Paſſes and Fords, as being rather Expeditious Foot, than Horſe; for which Service they were more uſeful than for Field Action, their Horſes being too ſmall to ſtand a Charge: But in the late War they were ſo well Mounted, that they Roll'd in all Duties with the Horſe, and therefore compos'd but one Body, under the Denomination of Cavalry.

The Guards Ordinary of the Cavalry, are the Standard-Guards, and Grand-Guards.

Each Regiment has a Standard-Guard, which is of the ſame Nature with the Quarter-Guards of the Infantry, that of a Guard to the Regiment, and to pay the Compliment due to the General Officers.

The Standard-Guard for a Regiment of Horſe commonly conſiſts of a Corporal and 12 Troopers; but at the Setting of the Watch, they have ſix Men added to them, they having more Sentrys by Night than in the Day-time, which Additional Men go off ſoon after Reveille.

The Standard-Guard of a Regiment of Dragoons, conſiſts of the ſame Number, with the Addition of a Serjeant.

The Standard-Guards are reliev'd every Morning at the Beating of the Troop, and the Men Mount on Foot, and are Drawn up on each ſide of the Standards, in a ſingle Rank, facing outward. They have neither Trumpet nor Drum; ſo that they can pay no other Compliment to the Generals, than that of the Horſe Reſting their Carbines on their Left Arms, and the Dragoons Reſting their Firelocks as the Foot do.

In the Day-time, the Men of the Standard-Guard are obliged to appear in Boots; but at Night they throw them off: Which Cuſtom of Mounting in Boots on the Standard-Guard is certainly Ridiculous, ſince there is no End propos'd by it: For as the Men of the Standard-Guard are not to leave the Camp, unleſs the Regiment is order'd to March, to what Purpoſe are they to have their Boots on? Neither are their Horſes Saddled at the Picquet; therefore there can be no Reaſon given for it, that I could hear of, but Cuſtom; which is but a poor Support for what in itſelf is both Inconvenient and Abſurd. Beſides, to order them to mount a Guard on Foot in their Boots, and their Horſes Unſaddled at the Piquet, appears ſo inconſiſtent, that I am ſurpriz'd it has not been aboliſh'd long ſince. Where a Cuſtom is of a long Standing, tho' there can be no great Uſe made of it, yet if it is not attended with any Inconveniency, it may be continued as a thing indifferent, but not otherwiſe: therefore, I preſume, as the Gentlemen of the Cavalry have enter'd a little further into the Spirit of Diſcipline than formerly, they will lay aſide the Cuſtom of making the Men of the Standard-Guard Mount in Boots.

ARTICLE II.

The Grand-Guards are done by Detachment, and are Reliev'd every Morning at the ſame time that the Standard-Guards are.

When the Army is large, each Wing of Horſe does Duty by its ſelf, without intermixing with one another, and therefore have diſtinct Grand-Guards allotted them; for which Reaſon they have ſeparate Parades. That for both Lines of the Right-Wing, is generally about the Center of the Front Line of Horſe on the Right; and that for both Lines of the Left-Wing, oppoſite to the Center of the Front Line on the Left; on which Parades thoſe who are order'd for the Grand-Guards are to Aſſemble, and to be Detach'd from thence by the Majors of Brigade.

The Grand-Guards are Divided into Captains Commands, in each of which there are ſeldom leſs than fifty Men, or more than a hundred, and each Captain has a Lieutenant and Cornet along with him.

The Number that Mount daily is not fix'd; but depends on the Number of your Troops, the Situation of your Camp, or the Neighbourhood of the Enemy; according to which there

there are more or leſs order'd: However the common Rule is to poſt a Captain's Command at, or near, each Avenue in the Front of the Army, by which the Enemy can approach the Camp, unleſs they ſhould lie in low Grounds or Bottoms, the Eminences being the propereſt Places to poſt them on, that they may diſcover the March of Troops a good way off, and give Notice to the Camp of the Approach of the Enemy; as alſo to keep off ſmall Parties from Plundering or Moleſting it.

When each of theſe Guards conſiſts of 80 or 100 Men, they generally Poſt a Lieutenant and 30 Troopers, or a Cornet and 20, at a proper Diſtance in their Front, but not out of View, to give them Notice when any Party appears; but when they only conſiſt of 50 of 60 Men, they ſeldom Detach to theſe Advanc'd Guards above a Quarter-Maſter and 16 Troopers, or a Corporal and 12.

The Grand-Guards ſhould never be poſted in a narrow Paſs or Road, or too near a Wood, but at ſome Diſtance from them, leſt they ſhould be Surpriz'd by a Party of Foot, or Partizan Parties, which generally lie lurking there; but when ſuch Places lie near their Poſts, they ſhould place Videts or Sentrys pretty near thoſe Roads or Woods, to give the Guard Notice to Mount when any Number of arm'd Men appears; they ſhould likewiſe ſend ſmall Patrols to Reconnoitre thoſe Places frequently, otherwiſe they may be Surpriz'd and carried off, when they leaſt think of it, by an inconſiderable Number of Men.

The Videts which are poſted in the Front, or near thoſe ſuſpected Places, ſhould be placed double, that one may come and acquaint the Officer of the Guard when they diſcover any Body of Men, and the other remain at his Poſt 'till the Enemy Advance upon him, and force him from thence, or endeavour to cut off his Retreat, by getting betwixt him and his Guard; on either of which, he is to fire his Carbine, (which all Videts are to keep Advanced upon their Right Thighs for that purpoſe) and return to his Guard; but unleſs for the Reaſons juſt mention'd, no Videt is to leave his Poſt 'till he is regularly Reliev'd by the Corporal of the Guard.

The Grand-Guards keep their Front always towards the Enemy; neither do they change it when the Generals come to Viſit them: However, when any of them come, the Grand-Guards are to Mount, and Receive them with drawn Swords and Sound of Trumpet; for which Reaſon, they

ſhould always have a Videt betwixt them and the Camp, to give them Notice of the Approach of the Generals, that they may have time to Mount, and pay the Compliment due to them.

When the Grand-Guards are Reliev'd, they don't Draw up oppoſite to one another, as the Foot do; but the new Guard draws up on the Left of the old one, if the Ground will allow of it, otherwiſe in the Rear of it; and as ſoon as the old Guard is march'd off, the new Guard draws up on their Ground.

The Grand-Guards have two Poſts, one by Day, and another by Night.

The Day-Poſt is ſometimes a Mile from the Camp, or more or leſs, according to the Situation of the Ground, or the Vicinity of the Enemy; it being Neceſſary to Poſt them in ſuch Places as will admit of a View, that they may diſcover a good way into the Country.

The Night-Poſt is generally within Half a Mile of the Camp, to which they retire at the Setting of the Watch, to prevent their being carried off in the Night by the Enemy, the Day-Poſt being at too great a Diſtance to remain there with any Safety, ſince the Picquet could not come time enough to their Aſſiſtance, ſhould they be Attack'd; but by their drawing near the Camp at Night, the Enemy can't ſo eaſily inſult them; or if they Attempt it, they can be immediately ſuſtain'd by the Horſe and Foot Picquet.

In order to put it more out of the Power of the Enemy, the Night-Poſts are frequently chang'd, and new ones Aſſigned them every third or fourth Night, or oftner if there is Occaſion; by which means the Enemy can't be ſure of the Place they are poſted at, which will therefore render their Attempt very uncertain.

Immediately after the Reveille has Beat, the Grand-Guards March to their Day-Poſts, and ſend ſmall Parties a little before them to Reconnoitre all ſuſpected Places, to avoid falling into an Ambuſcade; which they might eaſily do without this Precaution, ſince they ſeldom march to their Day-Poſts, but that they diſcover a Party of the Enemy's Horſe, or Huſſairs, at or near the ſaid Poſts.

The Lieutenant-Generals of the Day are the proper Officers to whom the poſting of the Grand-Guards belong; and after they are poſted by them, none but the Commander in Chief of the Army, and the Generals of Horſe and Foot, have a Power of altering them.

The

The Men of the Grand-Guard always carry Forage with them to feed their Horſes: However, I preſume they are never allow'd to unbridle the Whole at the ſame time; but that one Rank is always kept ready to mount, unleſs they are ſo Advantagiouſly Poſted, that they command the View of the whole Country.

During the Night, they always keep one Rank mounted, which they Relieve time-about, and ſend frequent Patrols round their Advanced Guards and Videts, to keep them Alert.

A little before Day they all Mount, and continue ſo 'till they March to their Day-Poſts.

When any of the Grand-Guard diſcover any Number of Men, whether Horſe or Foot, they are to mount immediately, and to ſend out a Corporal and four or ſix Troopers, who are well mounted, to Reconnoitre them near, in order to diſcover whether they are Friends or Foes, and their Numbers; and when it proves to be the Enemy, and that their Numbers are conſiderable, they are to ſend an Account of it immediately to the General of the Day, that he may order the Picquet to draw out, that they may be ready to oppoſe them, in caſe they ſhould Attack the Grand-Guard.

The Officer who commands that Part of the Grand-Guard from which the Enemy was diſcover'd, ſhould likewiſe ſend an Account of it to thoſe Detachments which are poſted near him, who are to ſend the ſame Account to the next, and ſo from one to another, that they may all prepare for their Defence.

The Grand-Guards are not to quit their Poſts, 'till obliged to it by Superior Numbers; and even in that caſe, they are not to go off with Precipitation, but to retire in a ſlow and regular manner before them, and to diſpute every Spot of Ground that will admit of it, in order to put a Stop to them 'till the Picquet can be brought to oppoſe them.

Where there are ſeveral Captains order'd for the Grand-Guard of each Wing, Field-Officers, in proportion to the Number who Mount, are appointed to command them; in which caſe all Reports, from the ſeveral Detachments of the Grand-Guard, relating to the Diſcovery of the Enemy, *&c.* are to be made to them, and by them to the General of the Day; and according to the Diſpoſition of the Enemy, the Field-Officer who commands the Grand-Guard may join the Whole into one or more Bodies, as he ſhall judge proper

for the Service; without which Power, the Detachments may be Attack'd and Beat one after another, who when join'd may be ſufficient to Repulſe the Enemy, or put a ſtop to their Progreſs 'till the Picquet can come to their Aſſiſtance.

As ſoon as the Grand-Guard is relieved, the Officer who commands it is to make his Report to the Lieutenant-General of the Day.

ARTICLE III. *Guards Extraordinary.*

By theſe are meant thoſe Guards, or Detachments, which are only commanded on particular Occaſions; either for the further Security of the Camp, which are call'd Out-Poſts, or to cover the Foragers of the Army, for Convoys or Eſcorts, or for Expeditions; ſo that the proper Term is rather Extraordinary Commands, or Detachments.

Theſe Commands, by what Denomination ſoever call'd, are done by Detachment; and each Battalion, whether ſtrong or weak, furniſhes an equal Proportion of private Men to them.

OUT-POSTS.

When a Body of Men are poſted beyond the Grand-Guard, they are call'd Out-Poſts, as being without the Rounds, or Limits of the Camp.

The Occaſion of their being commanded, is generally to prevent the Army from being Surpriz'd, or diſturb'd in the Night by the Enemy, or to ſecure a Paſs or Ford on a River or Village, or Villages, that may lie between the two Armies; as alſo to keep a Communication open with your own Garriſons, or cover your Convoys of Proviſions, to prevent their being annoy'd by the Enemy.

All the Out-Poſts which lie near the Camp are Reliev'd every Morning with the Guards Ordinary; but thoſe which are at any great Diſtance, ſuch as three, four, or five Miles, are generally reliev'd but once in four or eight Days.

The ſame Directions which are given for Parading the Men for the Guards Ordinary, muſt be obſerved in Parading of thoſe for the Out-Poſts, with this Addition, that the Adjutants muſt ſee that the Men who are to continue any time on Duty, are ſufficiently provided with Ammunition-Bread, and Pay.

When

When the Out-Guards are poſted in Villages, they ſhould engthen themſelves in them as much as poſſible, by throw- of Barricades croſs each Street, or Entrance into them; t when the Entrances are too many to be Defended any ne, they ſhould likewiſe ſtrengthen the Church-yard, or y other Part of the Village, which they find more proper their purpoſe, to retire to when they are forced from e others, that they may be able to defend themſelves 'till eliev'd by their Army; but when an Out-Poſt has not the onveniency of a Village, Church-yard, or Houſe, a Fort, mpos'd of Faſcines and Earth, ſhould be thrown up to ſe- re them, which may be done in a very ſhort time; other- iſe the Detachment may be carried off any Night by the nemy.

When the Out-Poſts which lie near the Camp have been liev'd, they are to ſend an Orderly Man from each to At- nd at the Major of Brigade's Tent of the Day, in order to nduct the Guards which are ſent to Relieve them; as alſo carry what Orders the Major of Brigade of the Day ſhall ceive for thoſe Poſts, from their time of Mounting 'till they e Reliev'd; after the Delivery of which, the Orderly Men e to return to the Major of Brigade's Tent, and acquaint m of their having deliver'd them. Theſe Orders ſhould al- ays be ſent in Writing, and ſeal'd up, leſt any Miſtake ould happen thro' the Negligence or wrong Conſtruction the Orderly Men; as alſo that the Officers, who Com- and thoſe Poſts, may be able to juſtify their Conduct, by oducing the ſaid Orders, in caſe the obeying them ſhould attended with any ill Conſequenee.

The Officers ſhould take particular care to ſend ſuch Order- Men, whoſe Fidelity and Sobriety they can relie on moſt.

The Out-Poſts are to Turn out, and receive the Generals ho come to Viſit them, under Arms; but not to Beat a rum, tho' the Commander in Chief of the Army ſhould ome to Viſit their Poſts.

The Out-Poſts which are near the Camp are to have the arole which is given to the Army, ſent them in Writing by heir Orderly Men; but thoſe who are at a Diſtance ſhould ave a Parole and Counter-Sign of their own ſent by an Or- erly Trooper; the Care of which belongs properly to the djutant-General of the Army, as thoſe which lie near the amp do to the Major of Brigade of the Day.

The Commanding Officer at each Out-Poſt is to ſee his ight Sentrys poſted before it is dark, and at the Advance

Poſts

Posts he is to place them double, for the Reasons alrea Premised.

During the Night, the Sentrys at the Out-Posts should Reliev'd every Hour; and between every Relief a Patro should be sent round them to keep them Alert; so that by t Relief and the Patrole all the Posts will be Visited eve Half Hour. My Reason for this, is not only to keep the very watchful, but likewise to prevent the ill Consequenc that may attend their Deserting to the Enemy, or quittin their Posts, since they can't be gone long before it is foun out; and as often as a Sentry is missing, the Officer wh Commands the Out-Post is immediately to change his Cou ter-Sign, and to send it to all his Sentrys: For should the Sen try who is missing Desert to the Enemy, and discover th Counter-Sign, they might impose on your Sentrys, and Sur prize the Guard; but by their being Visited so often, it wi be found out before they can possibly have time enough t Execute the Design, unless your Post lies very near the En my, in which case it is requisite for the Whole to be as Ale as the Sentrys. It is therefore incumbent on the Officers wh Command Out-Posts to be very exact in this Part of the Duty, or they and their Parties may be easily destroy'd b the Treachery of a Sentry.

When they are obliged to change their Counter-Sign fo the above Reason, they should send an Account of it imme diately to all Guards, or Out-Posts, with whom they have Communication, that they may do the same, lest the Enem should Attempt to Surprize them.

As the Safety of an Army may often depend on the Ou Posts, the Officers who Command them can't be too exa in the Discharge of their Duty; they ought therefore to b very Vigilant, and not think giving the necessary Orders suf ficient, but see them executed also; otherwise they may b deceiv'd by trusting entirely to Reports. 'Tis on those Com mands where Officers have frequent Opportunities of distin guishing themselves: It is therefore to be presum'd, that who ever has a Regard to his Reputation or Fortune, will not b so much wanting to himself, as to neglect the commo Rules which are here laid down for his Conduct.

The Officers who command Out-Posts, should order the Men to stand to their Arms a little before Break of Da and to continue so 'till it is so light that they can see a Mi or two from them, it being usual for Troops to advance ne a Post in the Night, but defer attacking it 'till they can d

stinguis

guiſh one Man from another, for fear of deſtroying their
n inſtead of the others. Beſides, as the Morning is the
e that every Man is moſt Sleepy, it is therefore the more
eſſary to uſe this Precaution, in order to have them tho-
ghly awake, that they may be the better prepared for
ion, in caſe of an Attempt.

low far an Officer who commands an Out-poſt ſhould
ſevere in the maintaining of it againſt a ſuperior Body of
ops, can't be declared, without knowing both his Orders
Situation; but tho' they ſhould be general, he ought not
uit it, if there is a Probability of his maintaining it 'till
an be reliev'd by his own Army, unleſs he has Orders
etire upon the Approach of a ſuperior Force: but if his
ders are Poſitive, and directs him to defend it to the laſt
n; he muſt obey them, even againſt a whole Army,
hout reflecting on the Conſequences. But ſuch Orders as
ſe are never given, unleſs the Preſervation of your Army,
he Country, depends on it: For as the Cuſtom of War
therwiſe, it would be deem'd Madneſs, and not Bravery,
a Party of Men to pretend to defend themſelves in a
llage, Houſe, Church, or any Place that is not tolerably
ll fortified, againſt an Army, when they can't be ſupported
their own Troops, but muſt be taken when attack'd:
t when an Officer is poſted in a Place that can't be taken
thout Cannon, he is not to ſurrender it 'till he is regular-
attack'd and a Breach made, or the Place ſo batter'd that it
no longer tenable, let them ſend ever ſo many threatning
mmons of Hanging, or putting all to the Sword if they
n't, ſince the Rules of War don't authorize ſuch Pieces
Cruelty. Beſides, a generous Enemy will be ſo far from
mmitting it, that they will eſteem and value him for his
haviour, if he does not perſevere beyond what a prudent
d brave Man ought; whereas, ſhould he ſurrender before
e is reduced to a Neceſſity of yielding, they will look upon
m as a Man void of Courage and Conduct, and deſpiſe
m as one whoſe Fear had betray'd him into an unworthy
ction; and if an Officer is deſpis'd by the Enemy for his
l Conduct, as he certainly will, he ſurely deſerves the high-
t Puniſhment from his Friends for it.

ARTICLE IV. *Foraging-Parties.*

Theſe Parties are to ſecure the Foragers from being taken
y the Enemy, or diſturb'd while they are Foraging.

Ac-

According to the Danger which your Foragers may r by the Place they are to forage in being near to, or r mote from the Enemy, the Covering Parties are ſtronger weaker.

In encloſed Countries, the Covering Parties conſiſt the moſt Part of Foot; but in a Champain Country, t are generally compos'd both of Horſe and Foot. Th Detachments march generally from the Camp the Ni before the Army is to Forage, in order to poſſeſs themſel of the Poſts which they are to guard, before the Forag leave the Camp; and as ſoon as all the Foragers have g their Forage, and return'd with it to the Camp, the Cove ing Party does the ſame.

When the Army is large, or that they lye near the Enem they ſeldom ſuffer the whole Army to Forage the ſame Da but order one Wing to Forage one Day, and the oth Wing another Day; in which caſe, the Wing which Fo ragers ſends Detachments to cover their own Forage neither ſhould they be allowed to ſend above three Men of Tent from the Cavalry to Forage at a time, that they m have a ſufficient Number to defend the Camp 'till the Fo ragers return: But leſt the Enemy ſhould take the Advanta of your foraging, and endeavour to attack your Camp i their Abſence, upon the firſt notice of their March the G neral orders the Signal to be made for the Foragers to r turn, which is generally the Firing of three Pieces of Ca non; on the hearing of which, the Foragers are to leav their Forage and repair immediately to their Regiments, an the Covering Parties are to return likewiſe to the Camp.

As theſe Detachments are poſted between the Enemy an the Foragers, they are not to ſuffer any of the Foragers t paſs beyond them, in ſearch of Forage, leſt they ſhould b taken; which Danger they would always run, without re flecting on the Conſequence, were they not detain'd fro it by the Covering Parties: It is therefore the Duty of th Officers on theſe Commands to prevent their doing of i and to compel them by Force to keep within the Bound preſcribed them.

ARTICLE V. *Convoys or Eſcorts.*

Theſe are to conduct the Bread-Waggons and other Pro viſions; Dry Forage, at the Opening or Cloſing of the Cam paign; Ammunition, heavy Cannon or Field-Pieces; as all Perſon

ſons of Diſtinction who are coming to or going from Camp.

The Convoys are generally done by Detachment; but en they are to paſs near the Enemy's Garriſons, or liable e intercepted by a conſiderable Body of their Troops, it ſual to command entire Brigades both of Horſe and Foot hat Service; or in Lieu of Regiments of Foot, a ſuffi-nt Number of Companies of Granadiers, for the grea-Expedition.

ARTICLE VI. *Expeditions.*

Theſe Parties are ſent into the Territories belonging to or der the Protection of the Enemy, to deſtroy the Country, ay it under Contribution; as alſo to intercept their Con-ys, and ſtreighten them in their Camp: But as theſe Par-s can't remain long in a Place, leſt the Enemy ſhould fall on them, they are generally compos'd of Cavalry, the In-try not being Expeditious enough for that ſort of Service. They are likewiſe ſent to fall upon the Enemy's Foragers en in the Rear of their Camp; but as this is attended with reat deal of Danger and Difficulty, it is very ſeldom un-rtaken.

Formerly theſe ſort of Exploits were very much in gue, particularly with the *French*, who call it, *La Peti-Guerre*; but of late they are much left off, ſince they on-ſerve to render the poor Inhabitants more miſerable, or rticular Officers, whoſe Horſes or Baggages they take, un-ſy in their Affairs, without contributing any thing to the ervice, or the bringing of the War the ſooner to a Con-luſion. Beſides, by the great Fatigue which it brings on our own Troops, a great many Horſes will not only be ender'd unfit for immediate Service, but entirely loſt; which Reaſon is ſufficient, in my Opinion, to diſcontinue he Practice, at leaſt not to uſe it, but on particular Occa-ions.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

General Rules for the Incamping of an Ar with the Particulars for the Incamping a Regiment of Horſe and a Battalion Foot; and two Plans of the ſame.

ARTICLE I.

FROM the Colours of the firſt Line to the Colours of the ſecond Line, Allow'd in Front to each Squadron of Horſe and Dragoons } Yar

Interval between each Squadron

To each Battalion of Foot

Interval between each Battalion.

Theſe are the true Proportions when the Ground which the Army is to incamp, will allow of it; but wh it won't, they then contract the whole, by taking 20 Pac from each Battalion, and five or ſix from each Squadro and ſo in Proportion from every Interval.

The 100 Paces given to a Battalion of Foot, tho' it co ſiſted of 13 Companies, is ſufficient; and 30 Paces allow to a Squadron compos'd of two Troops, is ſo too; but thoſe Squadrons conſiſting of three Troops, as all the *Engliſh* were during the late War, the 30 Paces are not ſuffic ent: For tho' a Squadron of two Troops ſhould conſiſt as many Private Men as a Squadron of three Troops, the Manner of Incamping is not the ſame; becauſe a Squ dron of two Troops form only one double Street: but Squadron of three Troops form one double and one ſing Street: ſo that, according to the Rule of Proportion, wh 30 Paces are given to a Squadron of two Troops, 45 Pac ſhould be given to a Squadron of three Troops, otherwi theſe Squadrons will be very much ſtraiten'd in their I campment, if they keep within the Bounds preſcribed.

As the foreign Troops of Horſe and Dragoons have a eater Number of private Men in each than ours, ſo their uadrons ſeldom conſiſt of more than 2 Troops; and as oſt of our Rules in War are taken from them, I ſuppoſe is was the Reaſon for the eſtabliſhing of the above Proortion of Ground to each Squadron, without conſidering e Difference between the Incampment of a Squadron mpoſed of 3 Troops, and thoſe conſiſting only of two: nd ſince the Cuſtom of giving no more Ground to every quadron without Diſtinction, than 30 Paces, has ſo far evail'd, as to become almoſt an eſtabliſh'd Rule all over *urope*; it would be Preſumption in me to imagine, that the w Remarks here made, will have ſufficient Weight to rocure the Addition of 15 Paces to thoſe Squadrons conſting of 3 Troops; for which Reaſon I have annex'd a lan of the Incampment of a Regiment of Horſe or Dragoons of 9 Troops conſiſting of 3 Squadrons, in a different Manner from the uſual Method, in order to remedy the Inonveniency here complain'd of in the Want of Ground.

As the uſual Method is to incamp the Squadrons ſeparatey from one another, by leaving an Interval between each of o Paces; I have, in this Plan, incamp'd the 3 Squadrons ogether (much in the Form of a Battalion of Foot) and divided the 2 Intervals on the Right and Left of the Center Squadron, conſiſting of 40 Paces, amongſt the 9 Troops, eaving only the Intervals on the Flanks of the Regiment pen for thoſe of the firſt or ſecond Line to paſs through.

By the taking in of the ſaid two Intervals (which were of no manner of Uſe but to divide the Squadrons, and give Rogues a greater Opportunity of robbing the Officers Tents in the Night-time, by having thoſe Paſſages to the Front between them, ſince thoſe on the Flanks of the Regiment are ſufficient to anſwer the whole Deſign and Intent of Intervals, that of a Paſſage for the marching of Troops from one Line to another) the Regiment will then have 130 Paces in Front to incamp on; that is, the 90 Paces allow'd for the 3 Squadrons, and the 40 Paces for the two Intervals; by the Addition of which, the Incampment of the Regiment will not be only much more commodious, but alſo, in my Opinion, much more regular than by the uſual Method, as I am perſuaded, will plainly appear when the Inconveniency of the One, and the Conveniency of the other is ſet in a true Light, the which I ſhall endeavour to do in as conciſe a Manner as poſſible.

By

By the uſual Method of incamping the Squadrons ſepa-
rately, the *Engliſh* one, which always conſiſted of 3 Troops
form'd one double, and one ſingle Street, which makes three
Lines of Tents, and three Lines of Horſes; ſo that in a Regi-
ment of 9 Troops, they had 3 double Streets, and 3 ſingle ones.

The Inconveniency of ſingle Streets is very great; for
when the Horſes in thoſe Streets break looſe from the Pic-
quets, (which but too often happens, notwithſtanding all the
Care that can poſſibly be taken to prevent it) they frequently
run amongſt the Tents of the Troop in the Rear of them
(there being nothing to ſtop them from doing it) and do
conſiderable Damage both to the Tents, and the Arms and
Accoutrements in them; as alſo frequently tread upon, and
hurt the Men who are aſleep in the Tents; but the leaſt Evil
that can happen by it, is that of Treading down, and Eating
the Forage of the other Troop, and thereby occaſioning
Diſputes and Quarrels amongſt the Men.

The double Streets are not attended with theſe Inconveni-
encies; for, by drawing a Cord a-croſs the Front and Rear
of each Street, when the Horſes break looſe, they can't get
to the Tents or Forage, for the Mangers which are on both
Sides of the Street; nor out of the Line, for the Cords which
are faſten'd a-croſs both Ends of the Street; by which means
the Tents and Forage are not only ſecure, but the Horſes
likewiſe; for by their getting out of the Line they are
ſometimes entirely loſt, or not found again in a Day or two,
when they happen to break looſe in the Night.

By Incamping according to the Method of the annex'd
Plan, the above Inconveniencies of ſingle Streets, will be,
in a great meaſure, avoided, ſince the Whole will conſiſt but
of 4 double Streets, and only one ſingle one, even in a Re-
giment of 9 Troops; but to thoſe Regiments which conſiſt
of 6, 8, 10 or 12 Troops, their Incampment will all be
form'd of double Streets; whereas by the other Method a
Regiment of 6 Troops had 2 double and 2 ſingle Streets;
but by this, they will only have 3 double Streets, as will ap-
pear by the manner of incamping the 6 Troops on the
Right of this Plan; and the former Method of incamping
the Squadrons ſeparately, will be ſeen by the 3 Troops on
the Left of it, which conſiſts of one double, and one ſingle
Street; ſo that this Plan will ſhew the Form of both Me-
thods in ſo plain a Manner, that every one may comprehend,
with the greateſt Eaſe what is here treated of, and thereby
ſee the Advantage which this way of incamping has over
the

he former, without giving the Reader any further Trouble; or if the Reaſons here made uſe of, and the Regularity of the ne compar'd with the other, are not ſufficient to convince im of the Truth of it, the endeavouring at it, by producing ther Arguments, might tire his Patience, but not gain upon is Reaſon, and conſequently render the Attempt fruitleſs.

Tho' the Incampment of a Regiment of Horſe or Dragoons, by this Plan, appears like that of a Battalion of Foot, et it is not ſo in Effect; for the Troops which compoſe he ſeveral Squadrons are continued in their former Stations. The 3 Troops on the Right being thoſe of the firſt Squaron; the 3 on the Left, thoſe of the ſecond Squadron; nd the 3 in the Center, thoſe of the third Squadron; ſo that he Squadrons are kept entire as before, and therefore can't e objected to on that Score: and tho' the Officers are incamp'd regularly in the Rear of the Regiment, yet their Tents may be pitched in the Rear of the Squadrons to which they belong; ſo that the Alteration here made, does not touch ny one eſſential Point, in my Opinion, but only reduce he whole to a more convenient and regular Form than the common Method of incamping the Squadrons of a Regiment ſeparate from one another: and tho' it is neceſſary that here ſhould be Intervals left between every Squadron when they are drawn out in Line of Battle, yet I can't ſee any Reaſon for their being incamp'd ſo, ſince they take up the ſame Space of Ground as before, and that the Intervals on the Right and Left of every Regiment are left open and free, which are ſufficient for the Service required by them.

ARTICLE II.

The Troopers Tents muſt be larger than thoſe for the Foot, that they may hold the Horſe Accoutrements, to preſerve them from the Weather; for which Reaſon they are generally about 7 Foot broad, and 9 Foot deep, though ſometimes they are larger: however, the Size here mention'd is ſufficient to contain 5 Men, and all their Accoutrements.

The Quarter-Maſters Tents are pitched at the Head of each Troop, with the Door opening to the Front, as thoſe of the Serjeants of Foot do.

The Troopers Tents face the Streets, as the Foot do, and their Horſes ſtand with their Heads towards the Tent-Doors.

They generally allow 4 Foot for the Breadth of every Horſe, and 10 Foot for his Length.

As 4 Foot is allowed for the Breadth of every Horſe, when there are 5 Men in a Tent, the diſtance from the Front-Pole of one Troop-Tent to another muſt be 20 Foot; and when there are but 4 Men in a Tent, the Diſtance between Pole and Pole muſt be 16 Foot; and ſo in Proportion, according to the Number of Men in each Tent: therefore a Troop conſiſting of 50 Horſes muſt have a Street 200 Foot long; according to which Number in each Troop, the following Plan is calculated.

The 130 Yards or Paces in Front are divided amongſt the 9 Troops as follows.

	Paces
For the Tents of 9 Troops, allowing 9 Foot or 3 Paces to each	27
Four Double Streets, at 18 Paces each	72
One Single Street	13
Three Back Streets, for the laying of the Forage, at 6 Paces each	18
	130

The 18 Paces for the Double Street is divided to the two Troops as follows:

	Paces
From the Tent Doors to the Mangers, 3 Foot each Troop	2
For the pitching of each Manger in Breadth, 3 Foot	2
Standing for the Length of a Horſe, 10 Foot, which to two Troops is	6
Remaining in the Center of the Street, between the Standing of the Horſes of both Troops	7
	18

Diviſion of the Single Street of 13 Paces

	Paces
Between the Tents and the Manger	1
Space for the Breadth of the Manger	1
From the Manger, for the Length of the Horſes, 10 Foot	3
Street in the Rear of the Horſes.	4
For the laying of the Forage of the Center Troop of the Second or Left Squadron	3
	13

The

The Depth of the Regiment, from the Front to the Rear, is as follows.

	Paces
From the Standards and Kettle Drums to the Front of the Quarter-Maſter's Tents.	6
From the Front of the Quarter-Maſter's Tents to the Side next the Rear of the Troopers 10th or laſt Tent	71
From the foreſaid Side of the laſt Troop Tent to the Front Pole of the Subaltern's Tents.	20
From the Front Pole of the Subaltern's Tents to the Front Pole of the Captain's	20
From the Front Pole of the Captain's Tents to the Front Pole of the Lieutenant-Colonel's and Major's	24
From the Front Pole of the Lieutenant-Colonel's and Major's Tents to the Front Pole of the Colonel's	16
From the Front Pole of the Colonel's Tent to the Front Pole of the Staff-Officer's Tents.	18
From the Front Pole of the Staff-Officer's Tents to the Front Pole of the Grand-Sutlers	30
From the Front of the Grand-Sutlers to the Front of the Petit-Sulers and Butchers.	50
Depth of the Regiment from the Standards to the Petit-Sutlers and Butchers - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -	255

The Standards and Kettle-Drums are to be placed oppoſite to the Back-Street of the Third or Center Squadron, as mark'd in the Plan. The Standard-Guard Tents are to be pitched betwixt the Standards and the Head of the ſaid Back Street.

As it is uſual for the Subalterns of Horſe to have a Tent each, I have therefore placed two in the Rear of each Troop; and tho' by the former Method of incamping they were generally pitch'd in a Line with the Troopers Tents, and faced towards the Streets as they did, yet, in this Plan, I have placed them according to the Manner of the Foot, by facing them towards the Captains Tents with a Street of 20 Paces between them: and as the Officers of the Cavalry have their Horſes ſtand in the Rear of their Tents, I have therefore mark'd the Places where they are to ſtand; and tho' the Subalterns Horſes are placed in the Rear of their Tents, yet they may be incamp'd in a Line with the Troop-Horſes, if the commanding Officer thinks proper; the doing of

which will have this Advantage in it, that if they break lo they can neither get out of the Line, nor amongſt the T or Forage; whereas by ſtanding in the Rear of their o Tents, as mark'd in the Plan, they can do both.

The Quarter-Maſters Horſes always ſtand in a Line v thoſe of the Troop, but the Field-Officers, Captains Staff-Officers Horſes, in the Rear of their own Tents.

The Size of the Officers Tents are not fix'd, ſome giments having them of one Size and ſome of another: ho ever every Regiment is regular in this Particular, that all Officers of the ſame Rank are obliged to have their Te of the ſame Dimenſions, and made in the ſame Form.

The Size of the Troop-Tents is ſufficient for thoſe of Quarter-Maſters, only that they are allowed to have the little higher, with a ſmall Marqui to throw off the Rain.

As the Subalterns of the Horſe have each a Tent, the need not be above a Foot larger than the Quarter-Maſter that is 8 Foot broad, and 9 Foot deep; and the Captain' Foot broad, and 10 deep. The Lieutenant-Colonel's a Major's Tents, about a Foot larger than the Captain's. Colonel has generally 2 Tents, as mark'd in the Plan, a D ning-Tent, and Bedchamber-Tent. The Bedchamber-T about the Size of the Captains; and that to dine in, is co monly 12 Foot broad, and 14 Deep.

As the Subalterns of the Foot lie two in a Tent, the ſhould be as large as the Captain's.

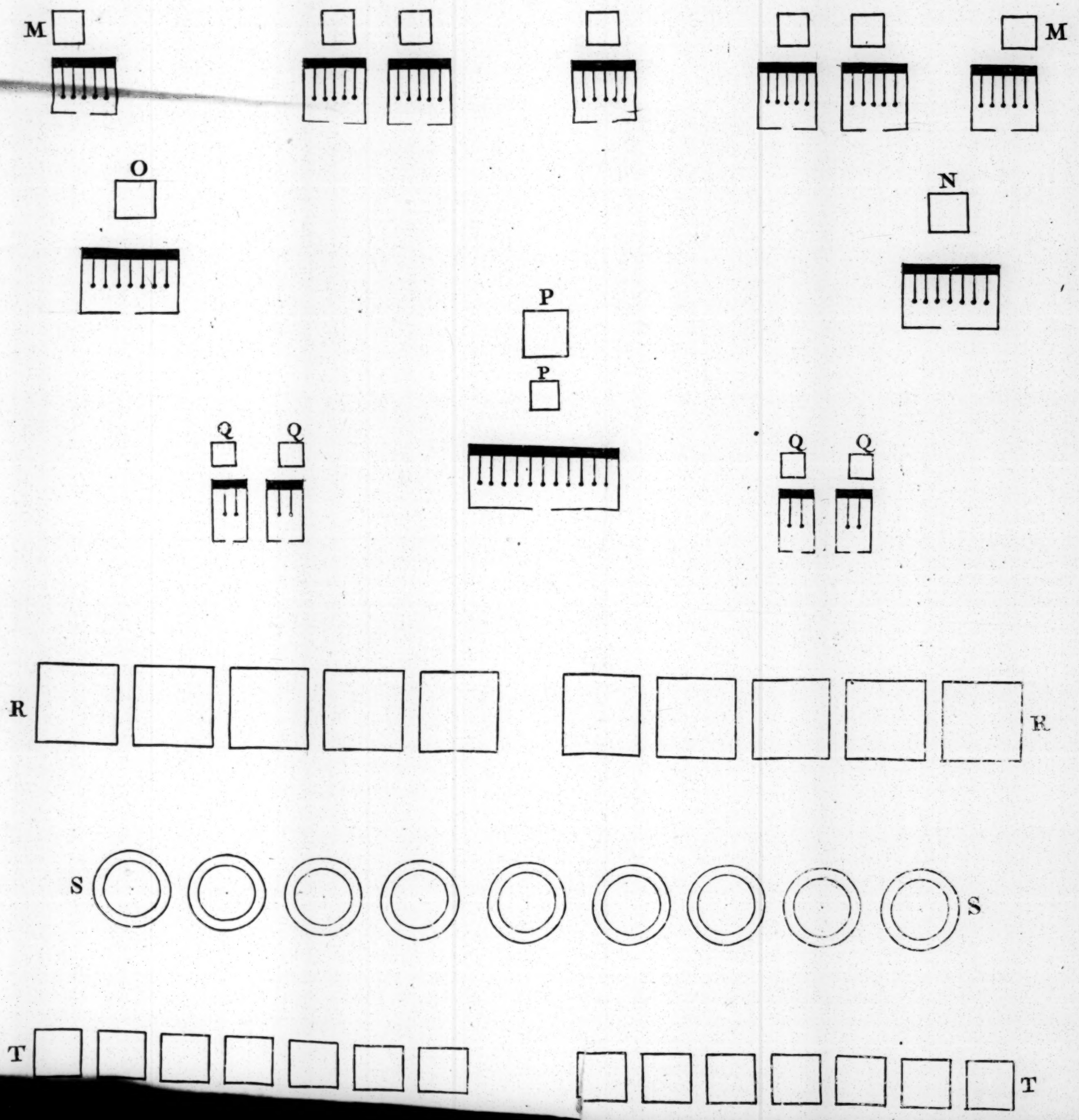
The Dimenſions here given for the Officers Tents, m be thought by ſome too ſmall; and if they were only to camp in *Hide-Park*, I ſhould be of the ſame opinion; let thoſe Gentlemen who think ſo, only make one R Campaign, and I am convinc'd, they will wiſh them rat of a leſs Size than a greater.

The Circles which are drawn in the Plan between Grand and Petit-Sutlers, are mark'd for the Kitchens, Places where the private Men are to dreſs their Victu They are made in the following manner.

Firſt, you draw a Circle or Square on the Ground what Dimenſion you pleaſe, after that you dig a Trench Ditch round it of about 3 or 4 Foot broad, and 2 deep, which it will reſemble the Bottom of a Cock-pit. W this is done, you are then to cut Holes or Niches in Side of the Circle or Square of Earth which is left ſta ing within the Ditch. Theſe Holes may be about a F

ſqua

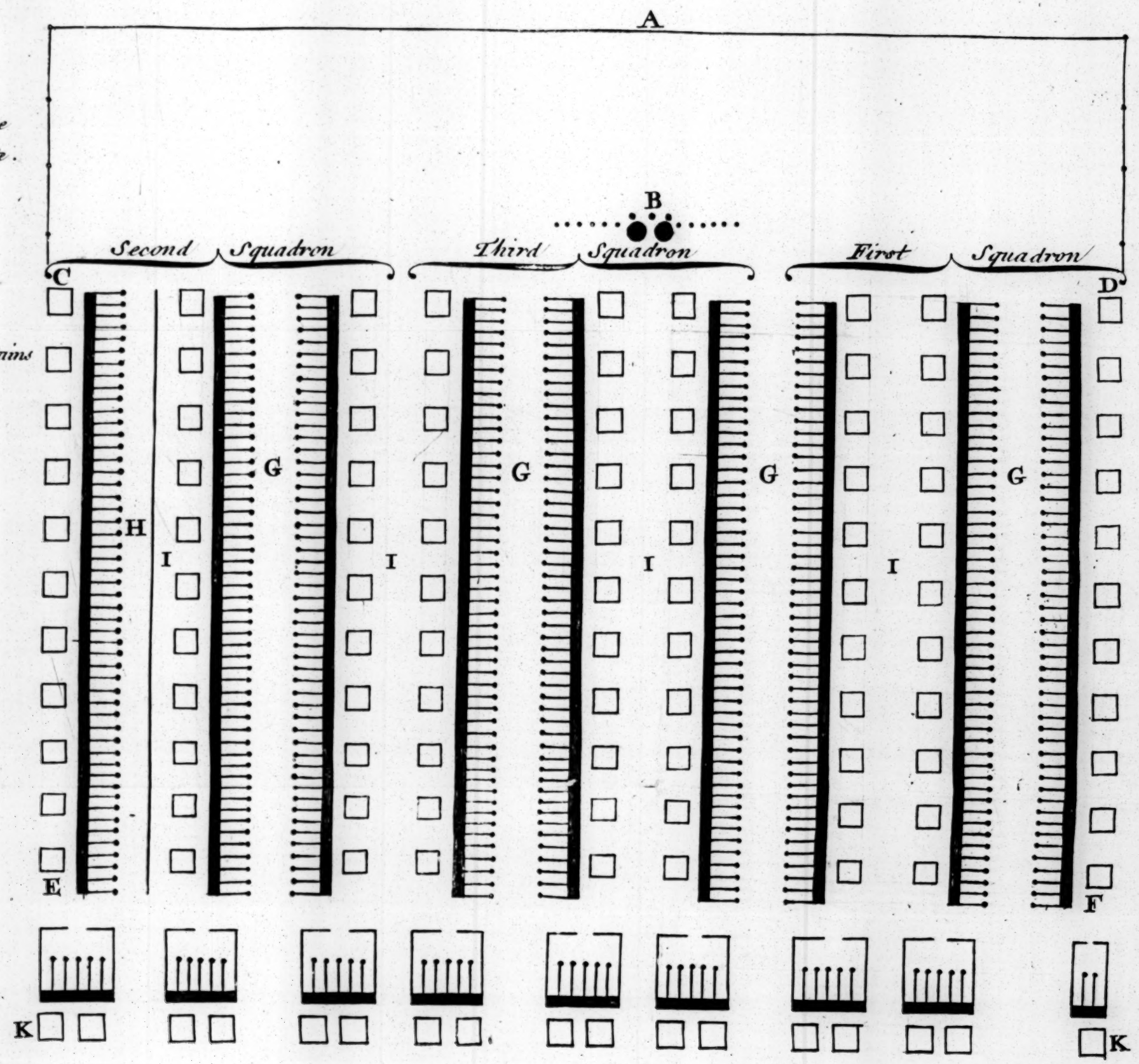
L



The Ichnography of the Incampment of 9 Troops forming 3 Squadrons consisting of 50 Men and Horse in each Troop.

Explanation.

A. *the first Line of Parade.*
B. *the Standards and Kettle Drums.*
C.D.E.F. *the whole Incampment of the Quarter Masters and the Private Men with their Horses.*
G. *the 4 double Streets of Horses.*
H. *the single Street of Horses.*
I. *Back Streets to secure the Forrage.*
K. *Line of Subalterns Tents.*
L. *Street between the Subalterns and Captains Tents.*
M. *Line of Captains Tents.*
N. *the Lieu.t Colonels Tent.*
O. *the Majors Tent.*
P. *the Colonels Tent.*
Q. *the Staff Officers Tents.*
R. *the Line of Grand Sutlers.*
S. *the Kitchens for the Troopers.*
T. *the Petit Sutlers and Butchers.*



re, the upper Part of which ſhould be within 3 or 4
es of the Surface, from whence they are to cut ſmall
es of 4 Inches Diameter, down to the great ones, in
ch the Fire is to be made, and the Heat conveyed thro'
ſmall Holes to the Bottom of the Kettles which are
ed on the Top of them. Theſe Fire-Places may be
e within 3 or 4 Foot of one another, quite round the ſaid
cle or Square; and if you erect one of theſe Kitchens,
which I mean an entire Circle or Square) for each Troop
Company, they need not be larger than what will con-
as many Fire-Places as you have Tents Pitched for your
oop or Company; for as all the Men who lie in a Tent
of one Meſs, every Meſs muſt therefore have a Fire-
ce, that they may have no excuſe for their not boiling
Pot every Day.

There are ſeveral Advantages by making of the Kitchens
ere directed.

irſt, A very little Fuel will ſerve to Dreſs their Victuals;
as the Fire-Places are open at the Side, like the Mouth
n Oven, the Air which enters there forces all the Heat up
ſmall Hole to the Bottom of the Kettle, and conſequent-
oils it very ſoon; and as the Kettle covers the ſaid Hole,
Rain can't come to extinguiſh it, or create the Men any
uble in keeping of it in.

econdly, They are not in great Danger of Accidents by
Fire's being blown amongſt the Tents or Forage: For if
Men only lay a Sod or Turf on the Top of the Hole
en they take off the Kettle, it can't be diſpers'd by the
ind, which, without this Conſideration, they ought to
in order to keep the Fire-Places dry.

hirdly, The Cutting of a Ditch round the Kitchens, does
only enable them to make the Fire-Places, but likewiſe
vents the Fire from catching hold of the Stubble or Graſs,
ich, in very Dry or Hot Weather, it is apt to do, and en-
ger the Burning of your Camp, which I have often ſeen
the want of this Precaution. Beſides, the oppoſite Bank
he Ditch ſerves as a Seat for the Men who are employ'd
Dreſſing the Victuals.

ourthly, and *Laſtly*, By having of Kitchens made in this
nuer, the Officers can with a great deal of Eaſe look into
Conduct and OEconomy of their Men, and oblige the
eral Meſſes to boil the Pot every Day, for the Reaſons
ady mentioned in the 3d Article of the 13th Chapter.

I ſhall, in the following Article, proceed to the Particulars for the Incamping of a Battalion of Foot of 13 Companies, with a Plan of the ſame.

ARTICLE III.

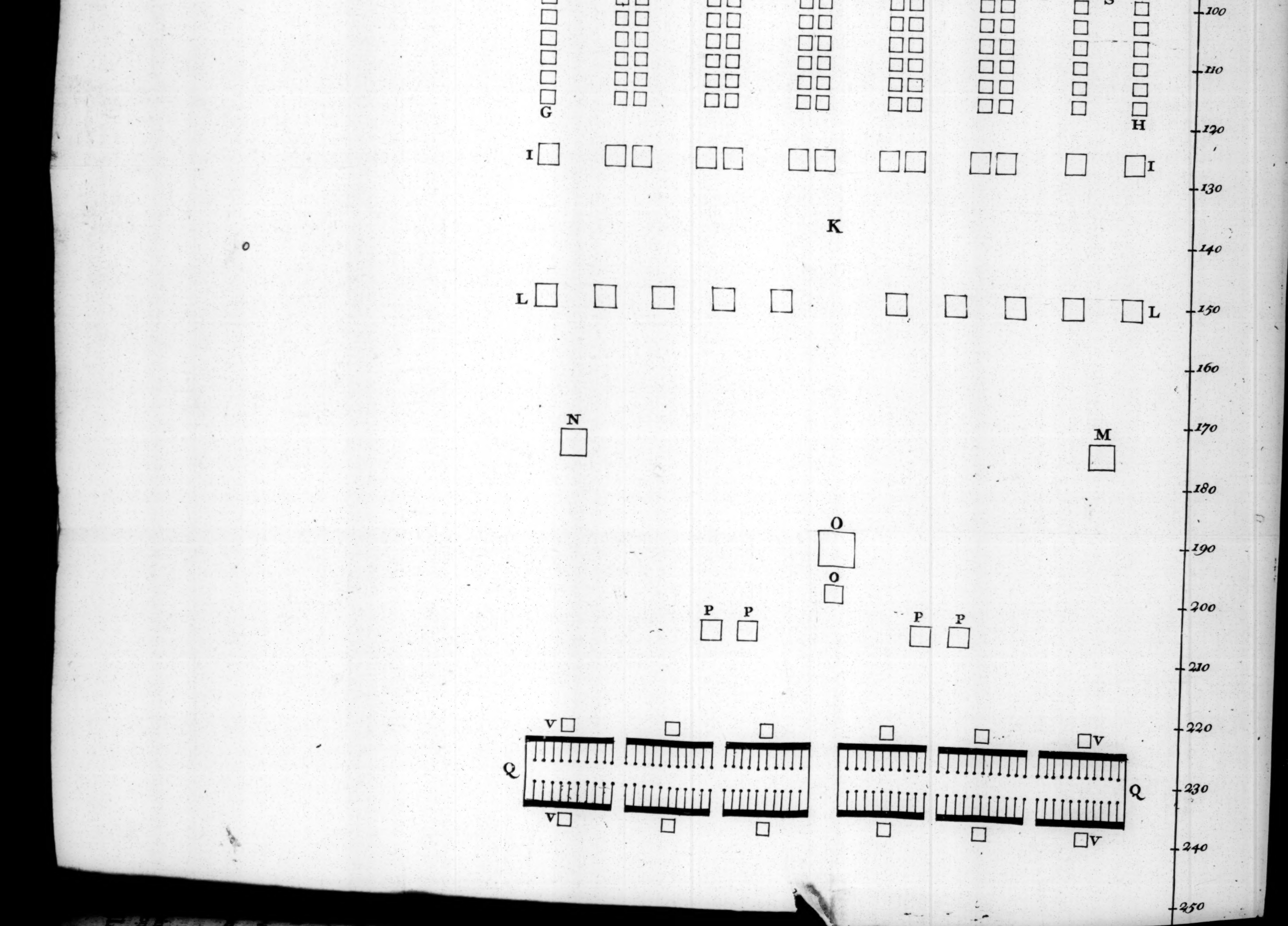
The 100 Paces in Front allowed to a Battalion of Foot muſt be divided amongſt the 13 Companies as follows.

	Paces
For the Tents of 13 Companies, allowing 2 Yards Square for each Tent, which is the uſual Size of thoſe for the Foot, is	26
For the Single Street belonging to the Company of Granadiers,	8
Six Double Streets at 10 Paces each,	60
Five Back-Streets at one Pace each,	5
	99

Depth of the Regiment from the Quarter-Guard to the Petit-Sutlers is as follows.

	Paces
From the Bell of Arms of the Quarter-Guard to the Front of the Colours and Drums,	7
From the Front of the Colours and Drums to the Bell of Arms of the Regiment,	3
From the Bell of Arms to the Front-Pole of the Serjeants Tents,	4
For the Pitching of 11 Tents, including the Serjeants, at 2 Paces each,	22
For 10 Croſs Streets between the ſaid Tents, that they may go round to faſten the Pins, at a Pace each,	10
From the Soldiers laſt Tent to the Front-Pole of the Subalterns,	19
From the Front-Pole of the Subalterns Tents to the Front-Pole of the Captains,	22
From the Front-Pole of the Captains Tents, to the Front-Pole of the Lieutenant-Colonel's and Major's,	24
From the Front-Pole of the Lieutenant-Colonel's and Major's Tents, to the Front-Pole of the Colonel's,	11
From the Front Pole of the Colonel's Tent, to the Front-Pole of the Staff-Officer's,	11

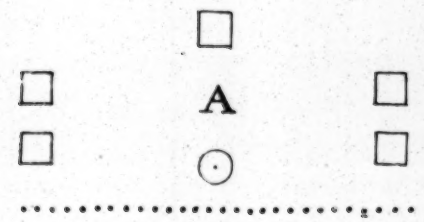
Fron

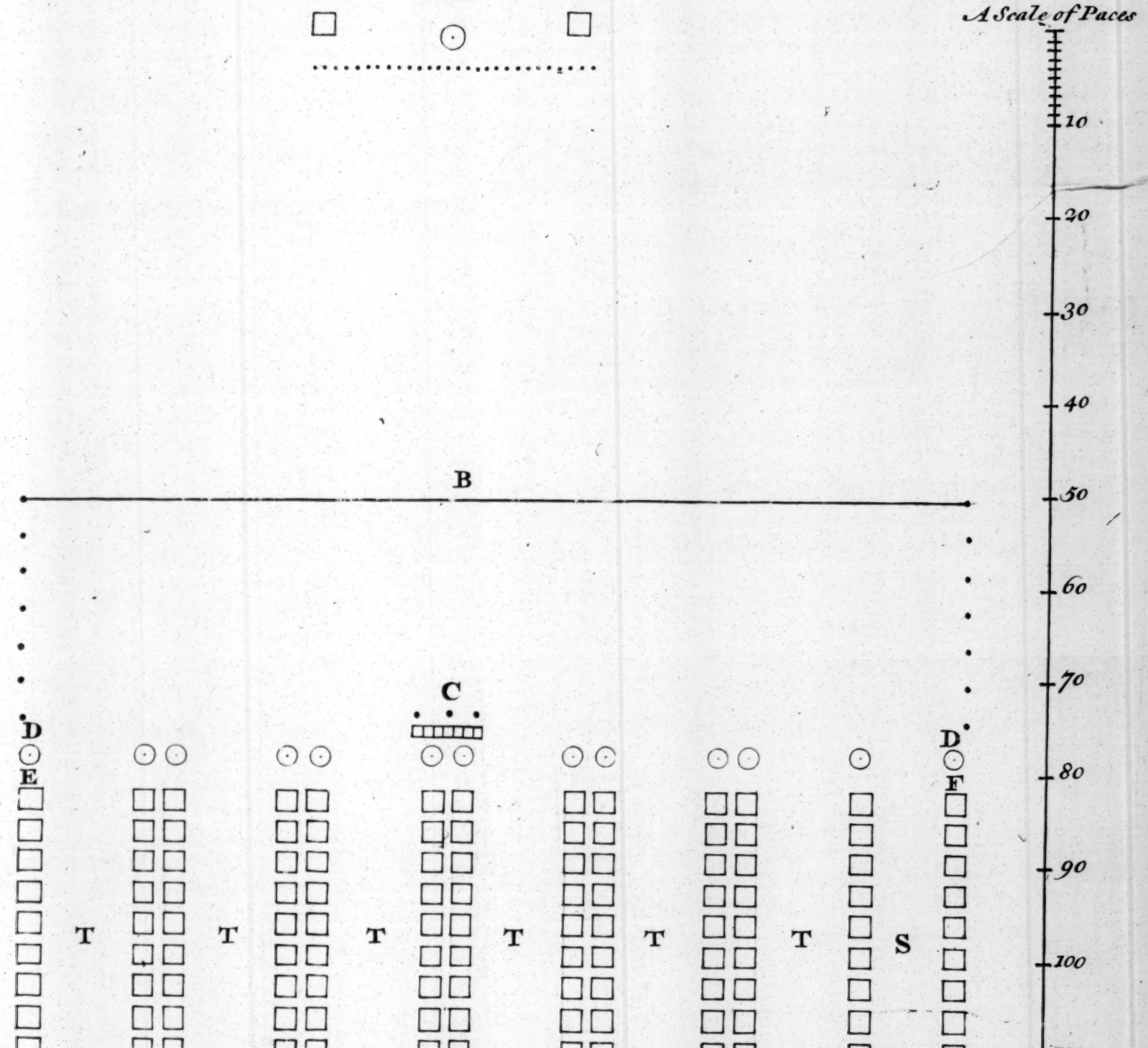

G
H
I
I
K
L
L
N
M
O
O
P
P
P
P
V
V
V
V
Q
Q
100
110
120
130
140
150
160
170
180
190
200
210
220
230
240
250

The Ichnography of the Incampment of a Battalion of Foot consisting of 13 Companies.

Explanation

A. *the Incampment of the Quarter Guard.*
B. *the first Line of Parade.*
C. *the Colours and Drums.*
D. *the Bells of Arms.*
E.F.G.H. *the whole Incampment of the Serjeants and Private Men.*
I. *the Line of Subalterns Tents.*
K. *the Street between the Subalterns and Captains Tents.*
L. *the Line of Captains Tents.*
M. *the Lieu^t Colonels Tent.*
N. *the Majors Tent.*
O. *the Colonels Tent.*
P. *the Staff Officers Tents.*
Q. *the Incampment of the Officers Horses.*
R. *the Line of Grand Sutlers.*
S. *the single Street of the Grenadiers.*
T. *the 6 double Streets of the Battalion.*
V. *Tents for the Servants who look after the Horses.*





rom the Front-Pole of the Staff-Officers Tent to First-Line of the Officers Horſes.	20
llowed for two Lines of Horſes, which are to In-camp after the manner of the Cavalry,	12
rom the Incampment of the Horſes to the Front of the Grand-Sutlers,	20
rom the Front of the Grand-Sutlers to the Petit-Sutlers and Butchers,	50
	300

The Colours and Drums are to be Placed before the two enter Companies of the Battalion, as Mark'd in the an.

The Quarter-Guard is to be Drawn up directly oppoſite the Colours, and to Front towards the Regiment, and ot to extend from Right to Left above 30 Paces.

The Officer's Tent of the Quarter-Guard (which is made the Size and Form of thoſe for the Serjeants) is to Face wards the Battalion, and thoſe for the Men towards one nother: that is, thoſe Pitch'd on the Right are to Face to e Left, and thoſe Pitch'd on the Left are to Face to the ight. The Quarter-Guard Bell of Arms is to be Pitch'd irectly oppoſite to the Officer's Tent-Door; and when the Men ſtand to their Arms, they are to draw up in a Single ank before the Bell of Arms, as Deſcrib'd by the Line Mark'd with Points or Dots in the Plan.

If the Officers Horſes are Incamp'd in a Double Line in he Rear, as Deſcrib'd by the Plan, they will be in no Dan-er of loſing them when they break looſe from the Pickets; or by the Servants faſtening of Cords croſs the ſeveral Doors, it will effectually prevent their getting out of the Line in which they Stand.

The Kitchens for the Private Soldiers and the Incamp-ment of the Petit-Sutlers and Butchers could not be inſerted n the Plan, the Sheet not being large enough to contain the Whole; but as they are Mark'd in that of the Horſe, I pre-ſume it will be ſufficient.

The Houſes-of-Offices for the Front-Line muſt be ad-vanced beyond the Quarter-Guard at leaſt 50 Paces; and thoſe for the Rear-Line about the ſame Diſtance in the Rear of the Petit-Sutlers and Butchers.

There is a Serjeant of a Regiment and a Man of a Com-pany appointed to aſſiſt the Quarter-Maſter, during the Cam-

paign, in marking out and keeping the Camp Clean; as also for the Performing of all other things which appertain to their Duty, such as the Receiving of Ammunition-Bread, or any other Provisions which shall be distributed to their Regiments; all Ammunition, Working-Tools, Carriages, Cloaths and Accoutrements; for which reason they do no other Duty during the Campaign, except on such where the Regiments mount Entire.

The Serjeant is call'd the Quarter-Master's-Serjeant, and the Soldiers the Camp-Colour-Men. Each Camp-Colour-Man-carries either a Spade or a Hatchet, which are deliver'd to them from the Train.

When the Army marches, the Quarter-Masters and the Camp-Colour-Men are order'd before to take up the Ground on which they are to Incamp; and as soon as the Quarter-Master-General, or his Deputies have given them their Ground, they are to mark out the Incampment of their Regiment, and when that is done, they are to make their Necessary Houses, and to get them finish'd, if possible, by the time the Regiments arrive, that the Camp may be kept Sweet and Clean; for which Reason the Sentrys must have strict Orders not to suffer any one to ease himself any where else; and when any Soldier, Serjeant or Sutler, is found offending therein, the Commanding Officer should order him to be severely Punished.

When the Army continues any time in Camp, new Houses-of-Offices are to be made every sixth or seventh Day, and the old ones carefully Stop'd up. The Camp-Colour-Men are likewise to open a Communication betwixt Regiment and Regiment, of a sufficient Breadth for a Grand-Division to march in Front, tho' they should Remain but one Night in a Camp; but when that Work proves too much for them to Perform, the Majors must order them to be relieved by other Men, and see the Communications made.

The Quarter-Masters and their Serjeants are to see that the Streets are swept clean every Morning, and that the Butchers and Sutlers bury their Garbidge and Filth every Day; and that all dead Horses are immediately Buried, that the Air may be kept from Infection. They are likewise to Examine the Meat and Drink which is sold by the Butchers and Sutlers, that they may not vend unwholesome Provisions; and whenever they find any bad Provision, or any one attempting to Sell it, they are immediately to seize both the Provisions and the Owner, and to acquaint the Commanding Officer

Officer with it, that he may give Directions for their being Try'd by a Court-Martial, in order to their being ſeverely Puniſh'd for the ſame.

The Major of every Regiment is to inſpect nicely into all theſe Particulars, and not rely wholly on Reports, but to ſee that they are punctually Executed.

They are likewiſe to look into, and regulate the Prices of all the Proviſions which are ſold by the Sutlers and Butchers attending their Regiments, that the Soldiers may not be impoſed upon. Neither are they to admit of any Tents, Hutts or Kitchins in the Front, or any thing but the Quarter-Guard, and the Neceſſary-Houſes.

The Quarter-Maſters are to be very exact in Entering regularly in their Books, all the Ammunition-Bread, or Proviſions, and all manner of Stores which they ſhall Receive for and Diſtribute to their Regiments, that they may give an Account of the ſeveral Particulars when required.

ARTICLE IV.

The Reveille is never Beat the Day the Army Marches, unleſs particularly Ordered, but the General inſtead of it.

At the Beating of the General, the Officers and Soldiers are to Dreſs and Prepare themſelves for the March.

At the Beating of the Aſſembly or Troop, they are to ſtrike all their Tents, pack up and load the Baggage, and ſend it with a proper Guard, to the Place where the Whole is appointed to aſſemble. After this, the Quarter and Standard-Guards, and the Rear-Guards are to be Drawn in, the Troops and Companies to Draw up in their Streets, and to be Told off, that they may be ready to Form into Squadron and Battalion at the next Signal.

At the Hour appointed for the Army to March, the Drummers are to Beat a March at the Head of the Line; and as ſoon as they ceaſe Beating, the Squadrons and Battalions March out and Form at the Head of their Incampment, Compleat their Files, and Tell off the Battalions by Grand or Sub-Diviſions, as it ſhall be Ordered: And when the March is beat a ſecond time on the Right or Left of the Line, all the Squadrons and Battalions are to Wheel towards the Flank, where the March was beat, and begin the March as ſoon as wheeled.

The Horſe have different Terms for the two firſt Signals for the March of an Army. The Beating the General is called

called by the Horſe, Sounding to Boot and Saddle; and t
Aſſembly is Sounding to Horſe: However in the Gene
Order given out to the Army, they are called by the Ter
which are uſed by the Foot.

The uſual Time for the Regimental Quarter-Maſters,
Camp-Colour-Men, and the Eſcort to Aſſemble, is at t
beating of the General.

When the Army is to March towards the Right, th
then Parade at the Head of the Right Wing of Horſe; a
if they March to the Left, they are to Parade at the He
of the Left Wing; but when the Army is to March direct
towards the Front, the Camp-Colour-Men, &c. Para
then at the Head of the Firſt Line of Foot. Theſe are t
General Rules laid down for the Aſſembling of the Cam
Colour-Men, and as ſoon as they are Paraded, they are
March with the Quarter-Maſter-General to the Place wh
the Army is to Incamp.

ARTICLE V.

A little before the Opening of the Campaign, it is t
Duty of the Quarter-Maſter-General to Draw out on Pa
the Incampments of the Army; in the doing of which h
to have a due Regard to the Seniority of the ſeveral Corp
as alſo in Placing the General Officers to their Comma
according to their Rank: After which he is to Preſent i
the General in chief for his Approbation.

This Plan, or Draught of the Incampment, is likew
called The Line of Battle; ſince the Troops always Inca
in the ſame Order in which they draw up in the Line, t
if the Enemy, by a ſudden March, ſhould endeavour to Su
prize you in your Camp, you may be ready to enter up
Action as ſoon as you are Formed at the Head of your I
campment: And though the General may think it neceſſa
to alter the Diſpoſition of his Troops when he is going
Attack the Enemy, yet the Incampment of the Army is n
Changed on that Account, but remains as at firſt Fixed, u
leſs other Reaſons induce him to it.

In Forming the Incampment, the Troops are divide
into Brigades, and the Brigades into two Lines, which a
diſtinguiſhed by the Firſt and Second, or Front and Re
Lines.

A Brigade of Foot generally conſiſts of 4 Battalions, a
that of Horſe or Dragoons of 6 Squadrons; but as the Ter

Battalion and Squadron is frequently uſed, tho' the Num- each conſiſts of is not mentioned, it is to be underſtood, t, in the general way of ſpeaking, a Battalion of Foot is mputed at 500 Men in Rank and File; and a Squadron of rſe and Dragoons at 150.

The Method of forming the Foot into Brigades, is as fol- ws: The ſeveral Battalions are divided, according to Se- rity, into four equal Parts or Diviſions.

The firſt Part is to conſiſt of the eldeſt Battalions; the ſe- nd Part of the next eldeſt; the third Part of thoſe next to ſecond; and the fourth Part of the youngeſt Battalions.

The Battalions being thus divided into four Claſſes, the Brigade is compoſed of the eldeſt Battalion of each ſs; the ſecond Brigade of the Second Battalion of each ſs; the third Brigade of the Third Battalion of each; and on in this manner 'till the Whole are formed into Brigades; which Method, there will be a Battalion of every Claſs ach Brigade, and thereby intermix the old and young Bat- ons: For, as entire Brigades are frequently Detached, leſs they were mixed in this Manner, One compoſed of r young Battalions might be commanded on an Affair of portance, and, for want of Experience, fail of Succeſs; by intermixing the experienced and unexperienced Bat- ons together, that Danger is in a great meaſure avoided; ich, in my Opinion, ſhews the Method not only Right, Neceſſary.

The Battalions draw up in Brigade, thus: The eldeſt Bat- on is placed on the Right of the Brigade, the ſecond Bat- on on the Left of it, and the two youngeſt in the Center, third Battalion being on the Right of the fourth. This le, of placing the eldeſt Battalion on the Right of the Bri- de, is only obſerved by the Brigades which are poſted in Right Wing; but thoſe in the Left draw up the Reverſe, eldeſt Battalion being poſted on the Left of the Brigade, d the ſecond Battalion on the Right of it, and ſo from Left Right.

When the Brigades are formed, they are divided into two nes, as follows.

The firſt and ſecond Brigades are poſted on the Flanks of Front Line; and the third and fourth Brigades on the anks of the Rear Line.

The fifth and ſixth Brigades are placed in the Front Line, the Inſide of the firſt and ſecond; and the ſeventh and hth Brigades are placed in the Rear Line, on the Inſide of the

the third and fourth; and ſo on in this manner 'till they are all formed in both Lines, the youngeſt Brigades drawing up in the Center: For as the Flanks of the Lines are more liable to the Attacks of an Enemy, than the Center, by their lying open, they are eſteemed the Poſts of Honour, and therefore belong to the eldeſt Brigades; but as the Front Line is more expoſed than the Rear, ſince it begins the Attack, while the other only Suſtains it, the Left Flank of the Front Line is, undoubtedly, the ſecond Poſt of Honour, and therefore belongs to the ſecond Brigade; ſo that the Right Flank of the Rear Line can only be looked upon as the third Poſt of Honour, and the Left Flank of the ſaid Line as the fourth.

This is the Method when the Troops which compoſe the Army belong to one Prince; but as the Army in *Flanders* conſiſted of Troops of ſeveral Nations, every Nation had a diſtinct Poſt in the Line; ſo that the firſt or eldeſt Nation had all their Troops on the Right; the ſecond Nation had all theirs on the Left; the third had theirs on the Left of the firſt; the fourth on the Right of the ſecond, and the fifth (if they conſiſted of ſo many Nations) had all theirs in the Center. And tho' this may ſeem, at firſt View, contrary to the foregoing Rule, yet, by looking on every Nation only as a Brigade, (which muſt be done in this Caſe) it will be found, in every Reſpect, conformable to it.

The Troops of each Nation are generally divided in both Lines, that thoſe in the firſt may be ſuſtained by their own Troops; as alſo that each Nation may ſhare equally of the Danger: For as the Front Line is more expoſed, in Battles, than the Rear, the placing the Troops of any one Nation entirely in the Front Line is never done, but on extraordinary Occaſions; it being reaſonable to conclude that their Loſs will be greater than thoſe in the Rear Line, whenever they engage.

The firſt Nation poſts their eldeſt Brigade on the Right of the Front Line, and their ſecond Brigade on the Right of the Rear Line. Their third and fourth Brigades are placed on the Left of the firſt and ſecond Brigades, and ſo on by Seniority 'till the two youngeſt Brigades are drawn up on the Left of their own Troops in both Lines, the youngeſt Poſts being thoſe which lie neareſt the Center.

The ſecond Nation draws up their two eldeſt Brigades on the Left Flank of both Lines, and their two next Brigades on the Right of the firſt and ſecond Brigades, the Left being with them the Poſt of Honour; ſo that their youngeſt Brigades cloſe the Right of their own Troops.

The

The other Nations obſerve the ſame Rule, according as ey are poſted in the Right or Left Wing.

Tho' the Horſe and Dragoons now Roll with one ano-er upon every Command, and go all under the Denomi-ation of Cavalry, yet in the Line of Battle they are kept in ſtinct Bodies, and placed in ſeparate Brigades; it being a ule never to mix the Horſe and Dragoons in the ſame rigade.

The Regiments of Horſe are formed into Brigades in the me manner as the Battalions of Foot; and tho' a Regiment Horſe conſiſts of ſeveral Squadrons, yet they are kept to-ether in the ſame Brigade, and never divided, unleſs a Re-iment ſhould contain more Squadrons than a Brigade is ge-erally compoſed of, as moſt of the *Imperial* Regiments do.

The ſame Rule is obſerved by the Regiments of Dra-oons, in forming them into Brigades, as the Horſe are.

The Horſe are divided and Incamp'd on the Flanks of the oot of both Lines, and poſted according to Seniority of rigades, or Nations, on the Right and Left, as above di-ected for the Foot.

The Dragoons are Divided and Incamp'd on the Flanks the Horſe of both Lines, and poſted according to Seni-ity, as the Horſe are; ſo that the Dragoons are placed on e Extremity of the Lines, and have thereby the Poſt of the orſe; but this was not given them by way of Pre-emi-nce, but Conveniency: For as the Dragoons, by their ſt Inſtitution, were only mounted upon little light Horſes, d deſign'd for Expeditious Foot, they were therefore poſ-d on the Flanks of the Army, that they might be ready to larch on every Occaſion, ſuch as Convoys, covering Par-s, ſecuring of Paſſes or Fords, or Expeditions of the like ature, in order to ſave the Horſe for the moſt Important cts of War, Battles; in which the Cavalry have ſo great Share, that they are generally either Gained or Loſt by em; there being very few Inſtances of the Foot having ined a Battle after their Cavalry were Beat.

Theſe are the General Rules for the forming an Incamp-ent, or Line of Battle.

In the Incamping of an Army, the firſt Point which the uarter-Maſter-General is to conſider of, is the Security of e Camp, that it may not be liable to any ſudden Surprize, leaving the Flanks open and expoſed to the Enemy; for h ch end it is uſual to cover them with Towns, Villages, oods, Moraſſes, or Rivers, when ſuch can be met with where

where the Army is to Incamp, that the Enemy may not be able to approach the Flanks without Difficulty, or march a conſiderable Body of Men to Attack them there.

The ſecond Conſideration, is to have Wood, Water and Forage near the Camp, for the Conveniency of the Men and Horſes.

In the Incamping an Army, the Front is to be always towards the Enemy; but the Troops which Beſiege a Town Incamp with their Front from the Town, that they may be ready to draw out and oppoſe any Succours which the Enemy may endeavour to Throw into it. Beſides, as the Guard of the Trenches is always in proportion to the Strength of the Garriſon, the Rear of the Camp is in no Danger of Sorties from the Town. This is the general Rule; but when a Town is Beſieged, where the Beſiegers have nothing to apprehend from without, by having only the Garriſon to Encounter, (as is now the Caſe of thoſe before *Gibralter*) I preſume they will then Incamp with their Front towards the Town.

As the General Officers claim a Right to have Houſes aſſigned them for their Quarters, when Towns or Villages are near the Camp; one of the Quarter-Maſter-General's Deputies is always appointed to take up Quarters for them; in the doing of which, he is to have a particular Regard to the Rank of each; and as ſoon as he has fixed upon the Houſes he writes their Names on the Doors, and puts their Reſpective Quarter-Maſters in Poſſeſſion of them, every General Officer being to ſend one with him for that Purpoſe.

The Train is generally Incamp'd in the Rear of the ſecond Line, and upon an Eminence, that, if any Accident ſhould happen to the Powder, the Army may receive no Damage by it.

Moſt Nations have a Regiment belonging to the Train compoſed of Gunners and Motroſſes, and Commanded by Artillery-Officers; which Regiment never Draws up in the Line, or Rolls with the Army, but does only Duty in the Train, and always Incamps and Marches with it, and at Sieges they aſſiſt in Erecting the Batteries.

Tho' the Train attends on the Army, yet it is a ſeparate and diſtinct Body, under the Direction of their own Officers and Independant of every General in the Army, but the Commander in Chief, (always underſtanding by Commander in Chief, the Officer commanding in Chief a Body of Men with whom they ſhall be Detached) whoſe Orders they

rece

ceive from his Adjutant-General, and not from the Ge-
eral Officers of the Day, as the reſt of the Army does.

There is always an Eſcort, which generally conſiſts of
Horſe, Commanded with the Camp-Colour-Men, to ſe-
ure them from the Enemy while they are Marking out the
round, and 'till the Army arrives.

If it is only a common Eſcort, commanded by an Officer
nferior to the Quarter-Maſter-General, the Eſcort is then
nder the Direction of the Quarter-Maſter-General, and
oſted by him as he ſhall think proper: But as conſiderable
odies of Troops, Commanded by General Officers, are
etached with the Camp-Colour-Men when they appre-
end any Oppoſition from the Enemy, the General who
ommands the Eſcort has the ſole Direction and Poſting
f it.

When the Quarter-Maſter-General has taken a thorough
iew of the Ground, and fixed the Right and Left of both
ines, he generally leaves the reſt to be performed by his
eputies, and goes with a Party of Horſe to Reconnoitre
e Country which lies towards the Enemy, in order to ſee
what Roads they can approach the Camp, that he may
quaint the General with the ſeveral Particulars as ſoon as
e Arrives, for his giving the neceſſary Directions to the
enerals of the Day, to poſt a ſufficient Number of Men on
e Grand-Guard and Out-Poſts, for the Security of the
amp, and the Places where they are to be poſted, which
e Generals of the Day are to ſee done.

The Quarter-Maſter-General is to Reconnoitre the
ountry to find out Forage for the Army, and to fix the
laces where they are to Forage from time to time; as alſo
o Regulate the Eſcorts, and the Places to poſt them in, to
ecure the Foragers: And when either of the Wings, or the
Whole is order'd to Forage, the Quarter-Maſter-General,
r one of his Deputies, is always to go along with the Of-
cer who Commands the Eſcort, in order to Conduct him
o his Poſt, and to inform him of the Situation of the Coun-
y, that he may make a proper Diſpoſition of his Men,
oth for keeping the Foragers within due Bounds, and to
revent their being fallen upon by the Enemy.

The Quarter-Maſter-General is to provide Guides to
onduct the Lines, Artillery and Baggage, when the
rmy Marches; as alſo for the Foragers, and all Detach-
ents and Out-Poſts that may require them.

In great Armies there is always a Company of Guides
ſtabliſhed for that Purpoſe; which Company is under the
are and Direction of the Quarter-Maſter-General.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

Duty of the Troops at a Siege.

IN this Chapter I ſhall only treat of thoſe things which relate to the Workmen and the Guard of the Trenches, with ſome other Particulars neceſſary to be known by thoſe Officers who have not been on ſuch important Commands, in order to give them an Idea of their Duty.

As the Method of carrying on the Approaches is the Duty of the Ingineers, whoever would be informed of thoſe Particulars, muſt conſult the Works of Mr. *Vauban*, Mr. *Coborne*, and others who have excelled in that Art.

ARTICLE I.

The Foot are not only commanded as a Guard to the Trenches, but are likewiſe employed in the Raiſing of the Works, and the making of the ſeveral Materials required, ſuch as Gabions, Hurdles, Sauciſſons, Faſcines and Pickets: For the doing of which the Men are regularly paid every Day, or every two Days at fartheſt, according to the following Prices.

Each Workman in the Trenches had *per* Night	0	0	8
Thoſe who were employed on the Batteries had each in the 24 Hours,	0	1	4
The Voluntiers who were retained during the Siege, for to fill up the Ditch of the Town, laying of a Bridge over it, or ſuch dangerous Enterprizes, had each every 24 Hours, whether employed or not,	0	2	6
Wool-pack Voluntiers, when employed, had each	0	5	0
For the Planting of a Gabion, and filling it with Earth, when the Approaches were carried on by Demi-ſapp,	0	0	6
For the making of a Faſcine and Picket	0	0	3
For a Sauciſſon	0	0	6
For a Hurdle	0	0	8
For a Gabion	0	1	4

Beſide

Beſides the Charges abovemention'd, there are a great many more which cannot be regularly ſtated; ſuch as Miners; others employed in Sinking of Wells or Pits to find out the Mines of the Enemy, for which they are ſometimes paid Half a Piſtole an Hour; others hired to reconnoitre the Breach, and fathom the Ditch, if it is wet. When ſome deſperate Attack is to be made on a little Out-work where a few Men are only required, they generally do it by ſuch who will go voluntarily, offering a Reward to each Man. Thoſe who work in the Sap have likewiſe extraordinary Wages; with ſeveral others of the like Nature, of which this Nation is very little acquainted, becauſe the *Dutch* were at the whole Expences of the Sieges during the late War; and as they were exceeding Chargeable, the Towns, when taken, were deliver'd into their Hands in order to reimburſe them; for which Reaſon, the Field-Deputies of the *States* appointed a Treaſurer at every Siege for the payment of the Workmen, *&c.* from whom the Majors of Brigade received the Money for thoſe of their own Nation, and gave it to the Majors of the Regiments, that they might clear their Men.

A Copy of the daily Orders (in which is inſerted the Number of Workmen of all kinds, as alſo the Number of Faſcines, *&c.* to be made by every Regiment) was deliver'd to the Treaſurer, that he might know what was to be paid; which Orders, together with the Receipts of the Majors of Brigade, were to him ſufficient Vouchers for the Payment of the Money. Theſe Payments were made every Day, or every two Days at fartheſt, without which the Works would go but ſlowly on: For though the Men ſo employed run a great deal of Danger, as well as undergo a great deal of Fatigue, yet the Deſire of getting Money does not only often the Labour, but makes the Danger alſo appear leſs; but unleſs the Men are punctually paid, it will be impoſſible for the Officers to keep them to their Duty.

The Men who are employed in the making the Trenches, begin to work as ſoon as it is dark, and leave off at break of Day; but when a Work is not finiſh'd, and that the going on with it in the Day-time may be done without expoſing the Men to too much Danger, freſh Detachments are ordered on when the others leave off, and go off at Night when the others come on; ſo that they are only to work 12 Hours, or the length of the Night or the Day. It is the ſame with thoſe who work on the Batteries; but as the Can-

non of the Beſieged fired conſtantly at the Batteries, in order to diſmount the Guns planted on them, and thereby often damage both the Parapet and Platforms, they are therefore obliged to keep a ſufficient Number of Workmen in a conſtant Readineſs to repair them, at whatever time it ſhall happen; which Men are generally continued on that Command 24 Hours, and are therefore paid double Wages, which is one Shilling and four Pence each.

The working Parties are always done by Detachment, every Battalion at the Siege, except thoſe which mount the Guard of the Trenches, giving an equal Number of Men to the Works, with the ſame Number of Officers and Serjeants to command them as is uſually order'd for other Duties. Drummers are never commanded with theſe Detachments.

The Workmen march without Arms, and carry only ſuch Tools as are proper for the Works on which they are to be employ'd, ſuch as Pick-Axes and Spades; and the Officers who command them have only their Swords and Scarfs; and notwithſtanding theſe Commands are both painful and dangerous, yet they do not paſs for Duties of Honour, but only thoſe of Fatigue; and therefore begin with the Youngeſt, as the others do with the Eldeſt. But before we proceed further, it will be proper to mention the neceſſary Preparation of Materials, which are to be made by the Foot, before the Trenches are opened.

As ſoon as the Town is inveſted, Bills and Hatchets are deliver'd, by the Train, to the ſeveral Regiments for the making of Faſcines, *&c.* on the receiving of which, the Quarter-Maſters are to give Receipts that, thoſe which are not returned to the Train at the End of the Siege may be charged to the Regiments which do not.

Orders are then given for each Regiment to make ſuch Number of Faſcines, Pickets, Sauciſſons, Gabions and Hurdles, in which the proper Dimenſions of each is particularly ſpecified, for the Information of thoſe who are to make them; the common Proportions of which I ſhall here inſert, and are as follows.

A Faſcine, is only a Faggot, made of the green Branches of Trees, about ſix Foot long, with four or five Bindings and of the Thickneſs of a common Faggot. They are not only uſed in the Parapet of the Trenches and Batteries, but likewiſe in the filling up of Ditches for the paſſing of them.

Pickets, are Stakes about four Foot long, and made ſharp at one End, by which the Faſcines are faſten'd to the Ground

A Sa

A Sauciſſon, is a Faſcine of about 16 Foot long, made of very ſmall Branches, and no thicker than an ordinary Faſcine, having the Bindings within 16 or 18 Inches of one another. They are uſed in the Platforms of Batteries, and for the making of Blinds, when any of the Works are enfiladed.

Hurdles are ſo well known, from their being conſtantly uſed in Sheep-folds, that there is no occaſion for an Explanation. When the Trenches are very wet or dirty they are laid at the Bottom of them, for the Conveniency of walking. They are alſo uſed for the paſſing of Moraſſes.

Gabions are round wattled Baskets, open both at the Top and Bottom. They are of different Sizes; but thoſe which are generally made uſe of, are about four foot Diameter, and five or ſix foot high. They place them frequently on the Platforms of the Batteries, and fill them with Earth, which makes the Parapet, or, as it is called in the Terms of Fortification, the Merlons of the Battery. The Merlons, are only the Pieces of the Parapet or Wall which riſe up between the Embraſures to ſecure the Gunners from the Fire of the Beſieged. Gabions are always uſed when the Approaches are carried on by a Demi-ſap; or when they cannot ſink a Trench, by meeting with wet or marſhy Ground, they make uſe of Gabions to carry on the Approaches above Ground. Wool-Packs and Sand-Bags are alſo proper in ſuch Places, as well as for the making of Lodgments.

When the Orders are given for making Faſcines, *&c.* every Regiment is to ſend out proper Detachments to the adjacent Woods, or Places appointed for that Purpoſe; and when the Men have made the Number ordered, the Officers are to return with their Detachments to their Regiments; after this freſh Detachments are to be ſent every Day, till the whole Number directed are made; and ſo on during the Siege, for whatever Number ſhall be wanting.

The Officers who command theſe Detachments are to give in a Liſt of the Men to their Majors, with the Number of Faſcines, Sauciſſons, Hurdles and Gabions, placed oppoſite to the Names of the Men who made them, that they may be paid for the Number they have made, as ſoon as he receives the Money. The ſame Rule muſt be obſerved, in giving a Liſt to the Major, by the Officers who command the Workmen in the Trenches, *&c.* or by the Adjutant when they are detach'd from the Head of the Regiment; by doing of which no Diſpute can happen in paying them, nor give

them the leaſt room to think they are wronged; a Circumſtance of no ſmall Importance to the Service, ſince a contrary Proceeding is often attended either with Mutiny or Deſertion; and therefore every Cauſe that can incite them to it ought to be carefully avoided.

Detachments of Horſe and Dragoons are order'd at the ſame time with the Foot, to carry the Faſcines from the Places where they are made to the general Magazine of the Trenches, which is commonly at or near the Place where they intend to open them.

Theſe Detachments are likewiſe commanded by Officers; but the Troopers and Dragoons carry neither Swords, Carbines not Piſtols. Every one carries a Faſcine and a Picket, (which they lay before them on the Pummel of their Saddles) and march in File to the Place where they are order'd to lay them down; after which they return for more, and ſo on, 'till they bring the Number order'd. But when this proves too fatiguing to the Cavalry, the Peaſants are ſummoned in with their Waggons, as alſo thoſe belonging to the Train and Bread, in order to be employed in carrying them; and, on extraordinary Occaſions, all the Waggons belonging to the Sutlers are likewiſe ſent, and the General Officers are deſired to ſend theirs.

As the Gabions and Sauciſſons cannot be carried on Horſes, Waggons from the Train are always ſent for them.

When the Woods or Places where the Faſcines are made lie near the Camp, the Men who make them are frequently ordered to bring them to the Head of their own Regiments; from whence they are carried, as above-mentioned, to the general Magazine of the Trenches; to which Place the working Tools are likewiſe to be ſent from the Train, where Commiſſaries or Store-keepers are conſtantly to attend for delivering of them to the Workmen, and receiving them back when they leave off: For which Reaſon, the Officers who command the Workmen are, when they leave off work, to march their Detachments to the ſaid Magazine, and deliver the Working-Tools to the Store-keepers.

A Guard of Foot is always placed over the ſaid Magazine, to prevent any of the Tools or other Materials being taken from thence, but by the Direction of the proper Officers.

ARTICLE II.

When the Trenches are to be opened (which is always made a very great Secret, that the Beſieged may not know the

the certain time of doing it) a ſufficient Number of Battalions and Squadrons, with General Officers in proportion to Command them, are ordered for the Covering Party, to ſecure the Workmen from the Sorties of the Beſieged.

A little after Sun-ſet, the ſaid Battalions and Squadrons draw out at the Head of their Incampment, and March from thence ſo as to arrive at the General Rendezvous juſt as it grows dark, where they are join'd by the General Officers who are to Command them; as alſo by the Engineers who are to trace out the Works.

The Rendezvous ſo appointed, is generally at or near the Place where the Trenches are to be opened, and is therefore called afterwards the Parade of the Trenches.

When the Covering-Party is arriv'd at the Parade, the chief Engineer who has the Conducting of the Siege, acquaints the General who Commands the Troops with the Place where he intends to open the Trenches, and how far he propoſes to carry them on, with the Situation of the Ground betwixt that and the Town, that he may Poſt his Troops accordingly: For as the Engineers are obliged to Reconnoitre the Ground thoroughly Day after Day before they can determine where to make the Attack, they can therefore inform the General of the Places where the Regiments may be poſted to the beſt Advantage, both for their own Security as well as that of the Workmen.

The Men are to keep a profound Silence both in the Marching to take Poſſeſſion of their Poſts, and during the time they continue there, to prevent their being diſcover'd by the Enemy; and as ſoon as the Foot have placed a ſufficient Number of Sentries, to give notice when a Sortie is made from the Town, they are to lie flat on the Ground with their Arms in their Hands, unleſs their Situation is ſuch as to cover them from the Fire of the Enemy, by being poſted behind ſome riſing Ground, Hedge, Ditch, Wall, or old Ruins; but when thoſe are not to be met with, their lying flat on the Ground will be a Means of ſaving a great many of them, ſince they cannot be eaſily diſcover'd in that Poſition; and if they are not, only the dropping or ſpent Ball will then touch them; but ſuppoſing they knew where they were poſted, they will receive much leſs Damage by lying down than if they ſtood up, as every Man's Reaſon muſt immediately ſuggeſt to him; and therefore I ſhall not trouble the Reader with farther Arguments to prove it. The Horſe cannot purſue this Method; for they muſt continue Mounted all Night,

that, when a Sortie is made, one Part may be ready to ſuſtain the Foot, while the other endeavours to get between the Enemy and the Town, to cut off their Retreat.

The Workmen are order'd at the ſame time with the Covering-Party; for which Service every Battalion then off Duty is to furniſh an equal Number, ſuch as 100, 150, or 200 Men each, according to the Works which they propoſe to throw up that Night; which Detachments are to be on the Parade of the Trenches, juſt as the Covering-Party marches from thence to their Poſts, and to draw up (either ſix or three Deep) according to Seniority of Regiments, which the Major of Brigade of the Day is to ſee done, and to examine their Numbers, to know if they have complied with the Orders, in ſending the proper Complement.

As ſoon as the Workmen are Paraded, Pick-Axes and Spades are deliver'd to them, in the doing of which a Regard is had to the Nature of the Ground, that if it is hard or rocky they may give a greater proportion of Pick-Axes; but when of a ſoft and looſe Mould, the Number of Spades exceeds the other. In the diſtributing of the Tools to the Men, the Officers ſhould take care to intermix them in ſuch a manner, that as faſt as one Man looſens the Earth with a Pick-Ax, the one next him may have a Spade to throw it up with; and as this Rule muſt be obſerved in the drawing up of the Men to work, the intermixing of the Tools on the Parade will ſave the Trouble and Time of doing it afterwards; after this, a Faſcine and Picket is deliver'd to each Man.

As ſoon as the Covering-Party is poſted, the Engineers trace out the Approaches; but as the doing of it with common Lines would be of little uſe in the Night, from their not being eaſily ſeen, they trace them out with Straw Lines, that is, Ropes made of Straw. After this they return to the Parade, and acquaint the Major of Brigade of the Day what Number of Men with Tools they muſt have to the ſeveral Parts, and what Number without Tools, for the carrying of Faſcines, *&c.* and when the Diſpoſition of the Workmen is made, the Engineers conduct them to the ſeveral Parts traced out (each Man carrying a Faſcine and a Picket with him, beſides his Working Tool) where the Officers are to draw up their Detachments in a ſingle Rank behind the Line and facing it, leaving an Interval of three Foot betwixt each Man.

Note, The Meaning of the Expreſſion, *behind the Line* or *Trenches*, is the ſide from the Town, or next the Camp

and

and when the Word *Before* is uſed, is underſtood the Side next the Town.

When the Men are drawn up, as above directed, they are to place the Faſcines along the Straw Line, and faſten them to the Ground with the Pickets. After this is done, the Men with the Pick-Axes are to dig Holes behind them about four Foot from the Line on which the Faſcines were laid; and as faſt as they looſen the Earth, the Men with the Spades are to throw it on the Faſcines; and as ſoon as the Holes are about a Foot, or a Foot and half deep, the Men with the Pick-Axes are to ſtand in them, and dig the Ground which lies between the Holes, 'till they are all opened into one another; which being done, forms a Trench or Ditch running parallel to the Line on which the Faſcines were placed; and the Earth which comes out of the ſaid Trench being thrown on the Faſcines, raiſes the Parapet or Breaſt-work betwixt them and the Town; but as the Men will be vaſtly expoſed, if they are diſcovered, 'till the Depth of the Trench and the Height of the Parapet is ſufficient to cover them from the Fire of the Beſieged, the Officers muſt therefore oblige them to keep a profound Silence, and apply themſelves thoroughly to the Work, 'till that is done; after which, they may allow them to go on more moderately in the finiſhing of it, though without ſuffering them to be idle, which, after they are covered from the Fire of the Enemy, is generally the Caſe; unleſs they are well looked to. It is therefore the Duty of the Officers on theſe Commands, to walk conſtantly from Place to Place, in order to View every Part of the Work on which their Detachments are employed, ſince on their Diligence, that of their Men will depend.

The Men who are appointed to carry Faſcines only, are to bring them from the general Magazine to the Places where the others are at Work; in the doing of which, the Officers who Command them, are to take care that they are Diligent, leſt thoſe who are at work ſhould be forced to ſtop for want of Faſcines to raiſe the Parapet; the Conſequence of which may occaſion you the loſs of a great many Men, by being longer expoſed to the Fire of the Town than they would be when they are duly ſupplied.

As ſoon as the Faſcines, which were laid down firſt, are covered with Earth; another Row or Line of Faſcines muſt be placed on the Top of them, and faſtened down with Pickets; and when theſe are covered with Earth, a third Row of Faſcines muſt be placed on them; and ſo on in this

manner, by intermixing of Earth and Faſcines, 'till the Parapet is raiſed to its proper Height, which is Breaſt-high from the Foundation; which, if Faſcines are not wanting, and that the Ground is not exceſſively hard or rocky, may be done in a very ſhort time, at leaſt ſo high as to cover them from the Fire.

The Reaſon for their uſing Faſcines in the Parapet, is not only for the raiſing of it quicker, but likewiſe to Strengthen and Support the Earth, which, being looſe, could not ſtand without them. Beſides, as the Inſide of the Parapet muſt only have a little Slope, like the Eſcarpe of a Rampart, Faſcines are abſolutely Neceſſary, ſince the Earth would be continually falling down without them.

From the top of the Parapet, the Earth muſt run with a gentle Slope, like thoſe commonly made in Gardens, towards the Town. The Reaſon for this is, that when the Enemy come to Attack the Trenches, they may find nothing to cover them from your Fire; whereas if the Parapet had no greater a Slope on the Outſide than that on the Inſide, it would ſerve as a Breaſt-work to the Enemy when they came to Attack you.

The Banquet, or Foot Bank, is the ſpace of Ground which is left ſtanding betwixt the Parapet and the Brink of the Trench, and ſhould be at leaſt three Foot broad after the Parapet is finiſhed. It ſerves as a Baſis to the Parapet, and for the Sentries to ſtand on, to diſcover what paſſes betwixt the Trenches and the Town.

The Trench ſhould not be above three Foot deep in the ſolid Ground, or rather leſs, if you can raiſe the Parapet high enough without going ſo low, ſince the ſinking of a deep Trench ſeldom fails of making it exceeding dirty. It ſhould be at leaſt four Foot broad at the bottom, that the Soldiers may march in it two a-breaſt, or paſs by one another with eaſe.

Theſe are the common Proportions of the ſeveral Parts, the whole of which is called the Trenches: And tho' it is not only the Duty of the Engineers to inſtruct the Officers, that they may direct their Men in the making of the Works; but likewiſe to Viſit them from time to time, to ſee that each Part has its true Proportion; yet as thoſe Gentlemen are liable to Accidents, from the Danger they are often expoſed to, that may render them uncapable of performing their Duty, by which the Works may be retarded, or ill-executed, unleſs the Officers, from their own Experience, can ſupply

the

the Defect; I thought the inſerting of the above Particulars would be of Uſe to young Officers, by giving them ſome Notion what Trenches are, and in what Manner they are made, that, when they ſhall be ordered on thoſe Commands, they may not be entirely at a loſs how they are to proceed, in caſe they ſhould fail of the neceſſary Direction and Aſſiſtance of the Engineers, which proves too often the Caſe at moſt Sieges; nor is it to be much wondered at, for if the Engineers do their Duty, they are ſo often diſabled, that their Want muſt be ſupplied by the Diligence and Skill of the Officers.

At break of Day the Workmen leave off, and the Officers March their Detachments back to the Camp, making a Report firſt to the General who Commands in the Trenches what Number of their Men are killed and wounded, and the ſame to their own Colonels, as ſoon as they diſmiſs their Men.

At the ſame time that the Workmen leave off, the Battalions, which covered them, take Poſſeſſion of the Trenches, at leaſt ſuch a Number as ſhall be thought ſufficient, which are always the eldeſt, and the reſt return to the Camp. The Squadrons are likewiſe drawn off leaving a proper Detachment, if thought neceſſary.

When the Trenches are open'd, the Workmen are to be on the Parade of the Trenches always at Sun-ſet. The Major of Brigade of the Day is to be there at the ſame time, to look into their Numbers, and to Detach them from thence to the ſeveral Works, as the Engineers ſhall direct; to which they are conducted by old Experienc'd Serjeants, who are employed by the Major of the Trenches to look after the Works, and to aſſiſt him in performing of the ſeveral Parts of his Duty, and are therefore call'd, the Adjutants of the Trenches, for which they have extraordinary Pay.

The common Method of detaching the Workmen from the Parade of the Trenches, is, by beginning on the Right, and ſo on to the Left, 'till the whole are diſpoſed of; but as this Method proves very prejudicial to ſome Regiments, by having their entire Detachment ſent to thoſe Works which are vaſtly expoſed to the Fire of the Beſieged, and thereby loſe a conſiderable Number of their Men, while others receive little or no Damage; I ſhould therefore think it highly reaſonable, when this is the Caſe, that an equal Number of Men ſhould be taken from the Detachment of each Regiment, and ſent to the Works which are moſt expoſed,

poſed, by which means the Loſs will fall more equally on the whole; otherwiſe the Regiments which are drawn up on the Right will be great Sufferers, particularly when the Approaches are carried near the *Glacis*, ſince thoſe who are firſt detached, are generally employ'd on thoſe Works, and the others on things of leſs Moment, ſuch as the finiſhing of Works already begun, or the carrying of Faſcines, &c.

I own, that the detaching of the Workmen according to the Method propoſed, will create the Major of Brigade a little more Trouble; but ſurely that cannot be given as a good Reaſon for its not being done: for where the Lives of Men are in queſtion, impartial Juſtice ſhould be done them, whatever Pains it may coſt.

The poſting of Battalions betwixt the Workmen and the Town, is only done on the firſt breaking of Ground, they being afterwards to remain conſtantly in the Trenches; however they ſometimes make Detachments from the Regiments, of Lieutenant's and Captain's Commands, to ſupport the Workmen, and poſt them at the Head of the Trenches that they may be ready to march out and attack thoſe who ſally from the Town, in order to put a ſtop to their Progreſs 'till the Battalions can be brought up, to facilitate the Retreat of the Workmen, and to prevent their being purſued.

When a Sortie is made which obliges the Workmen to quit their Poſts (which a very ſmall Matter will do) the Officers who command them, are to endeavour all they can to prevent their diſperſing: for which end, every Officer is to draw his Detachment into a Body, and retire with them either into the next Trench, or at a proper Diſtance from the Works; where they are to remain 'till the Enemy are repulſed, and then return with them to their former Station in order to finiſh what they had begun. But as Orders, in theſe Occaſions, are not of ſufficient Force to oblige the Men to keep with their Officers, or return with them to their Work, after the Enemy retire, unleſs proper Punishments are annexed to the Breach of them, and, when found out, ſtrictly executed; and when neglected, proves a great Detriment to the Service by prolonging of the Siege: to prevent this, ſome other Expedient, than what has been hitherto found out, ſhould be thought of to keep the Workmen within moderate Bounds: and though it is a difficult Task, yet, I believe, it may, in ſome Degree, be effected by inflicting ſome corporal Puniſhment on thoſe who

do it (unleſs they are wounded) and ſtopping of their working Money, and dividing it amongſt thoſe who remain with their Officers, as a Reward for their complying with their Duty, and likewiſe to induce them to detect thoſe who ſhall quit their Commands; for without the Money is divided in this manner, they will not detect one another, but rather endeavour to conceal it from their Officers. As this Method was never practiſed that I know of, I therefore only offer it as a Notion of my own, in order to put thoſe who ſhall command, on theſe Occaſions, upon finding out a proper Remedy againſt an Evil which is conſtantly complained of, tho' ſtill ſuffered to go on.

ARTICLE III.

The Guard of the Trenches is never formed by Detachment, but is always compoſed of entire Battalions; the Number of which muſt depend on the Strength of the Beſieged, it being neceſſary to have a ſufficient Force to repulſe any Sortie they ſhall be able to make, either for the levelling the Trenches already made, to interrupt the Progreſs of thoſe carrying on, or nailing up of the Cannon on the Batteries.

As the mounting of the Guard of the Trenches is a Duty of Honour, it always begins with the eldeſt Regiments.

The Guard of the Trenches is only a Duty of 24 Hours, but the time of relieving is not fixed, ſince it is ſometimes done in the Morning, and ſometimes in the Evening; tho' formerly the Relief was always made in the Duſk of the Evening, to avoid, as they ſaid, the Danger which they muſt run from the Fire of the Beſieged, if they made it when it was light; but as they did not obſerve that Rule at the Sieges in *Flanders*, we muſt conclude, that doing it always in the Duſk of the Evening proceeded rather from Cuſtom than Reaſon: for when the Relief can be made with Safety in the Day-time, it is much properer than when it is dark, ſince they cannot then make ſo good a Judgment of their Poſts, or know by what Communication they can march to ſuſtain one another, in caſe of a Sortie, as when they mount in the Morning, or ſome time before it is dark. It's true, when they mounted in the Duſk of the Evening, the Majors of thoſe Regiments took a View of the Trenches in the Morning, to inform themſelves thoroughly of all the Particulars relating to their Poſts; as alſo thoſe belonging to the other Regiments, that, by knowing the Situation of the whole,

whole, they might the more readily march to ſuſtain one another, on the firſt Order they ſhould receive from the General who commands in the Trenches: after this they returned to the Camp, and made a Report of the ſame to their reſpective Colonels.

After the Trenches are opened, the Regiments which Mount, are always named the Day before in publick Orders, that they may be prepared for it: Neither do they furniſh any Men to the ordinary nor extraordinary Guards (their own Quarter-Guards excepted) nor working Parties, after ſuch Orders are given, 'till they are relieved, that they may march into the Trenches as ſtrong as poſſible, leaving no more Men on their Quarter-Guards, than what are abſolutely neceſſary for the Security of their Tents and Baggage.

General Officers are appointed at the ſame time to command the Troops in the Trenches, who mount and diſmount with them. The Number of General Officers are in Proportion to the Number of Battalions which mount; and when the Attack is very conſiderable, there is then a Lieutenant-General, a Major-General, and a Brigadier order'd for the Command, with whom a Major of Brigade frequently mounts, for the receiving and delivering of the General's Orders to the Troops in the Trenches, otherwiſe the eldeſt Major commonly performs that Duty, unleſs the General appoints another.

When there are more Attacks than one carried on at the ſame time, a proper Number of General-Officers are appointed for the Command of each.

The Regiments which mount the Trenches, are to march from their own Incampment, ſo as to be on the Parade an Hour before the Time appointed for the Relief, where they are joined by the Generals who are to command them.

When the Parade of the Trenches is not naturally covered from the Cannon of the Beſieged, by having a riſing Ground before it (which they always pitch upon for the opening of the Trenches, when ſuch a Place can be found near the Attack) a large Epaulement is then thrown up to ſecure thoſe who come to relieve, and that they may march from thence into the Trenches without being expoſed to the Fire of the Town.

The Regiments are to draw up by Seniority on the Parade of the Trenches; and as ſoon as they are all formed whatever Detachments are to be then made from them either for Guards to the Batteries, Magazines, or particular

advance

dvanced Poſts, are to be immediately Drawn out, with roper Officers to Command them, and Formed by the Major of Brigade who Mounts the Trenches, or the Officer who is appointed to do that Duty; after which the Regiments are to be Told off into Platoons, and the Officers divided equally to them, with which they are conſtantly to emain 'till they are Relieved.

The Regiments in the Trenches are to ſend each a Serant to the Parade, to conduct thoſe who come to Reeve them to their ſeveral Poſts, the Trenches being ſometmes of ſo great an Extent, and ſo Intricate, that without is Precaution, it will be difficult for them to find their Way, particularly when the Approaches are Advanced to the *Glacis*.

When the time of Relieving is come, the General orders e Regiments to March and Relieve the Guard of the renches.

They march in by Seniority, the Eldeſt Relieving that hich is Poſted at the Head of the Trenches, or moſt Advand Parallel. The reſt are to follow the ſame Rule, the Poſts Honour being thoſe which lie neareſt the Town.

When they come to the *Queuë*, or Tail of the Trenches, e Granadiers, led by their Officers, are to Rank off ſingly om the Right, or March two a-breaſt, if the Trench wide enough to allow of it; at the Bottom of which they e to March, to avoid being expoſed to the Fire of the Beged: For though they are not to be afraid of the Fire, t the Soldiers are never ſuffered to expoſe themſelves, but hen the Service requires it; and then they are not to dene it, though they ſhould be ſure of meeting with certain eath.

The Battalions are to march into the Trenches in the ſame anner, the Officers keeping with their reſpective Platoons: nd when they come oppoſite to the Regiments which they to Relieve, they are to Halt and Face them. After this, Sentries poſted on the Banquet, to Diſcover what paſſes wixt the Trenches and the Town, are Relieved; and the lonels who are to be Relieved, acquaint thoſe who come Relieve them with all things relating to the Poſts, what itional Night-Sentries are neceſſary for their further Seity, *&c.* during which time the Majors and Adjutants, ompained by the others, take an exact View of the Works ere their Regiments are Poſted, that if any Part of them damaged or broke down, or that the Parapet is not thick

thick enough to reſiſt the Cannon of the Beſieged, they may apply to the General of the Trenches for workmen to Repair them, or obtain his Leave for the doing it by a Detachment of their own Men, ſince none of thoſe, who belong to the Guard of the Trenches, can quit their Arms, or leave their Poſts without his Directions. They are likewiſe to Reconnoitre the ſeveral Communications leading to the other Regiments, that if any of them ſhould be Attacked, they may know when Ordered, how to ſuſtain them without Loſs of Time. When the Majors have looked into all theſe Particulars, (which ought by no means to be omitted, ſince ſeveral of their Men may be loſt for want of a due Inſpection into the Works) they are to make a Report of the ſame to their Colonels; after which, the Regiments that are Relieved march out of the Trenches, and return to the Camp.

As ſoon as the Old Guard is marched off, thoſe of the new are ordered to ſit down on the Banquet, holding their Arms between their Legs, which they are not to quit, or ſtir from their Poſts, but on occaſions of Neceſſity; and even then not without Leave of their Officers: Nor muſt they be ſuffered to Sleep, that they may be always ready to oppoſe every Attempt which the Enemy ſhall make on the Works: And on the firſt Noiſe, or Notice given of a Sortie, the Soldiers are to ſtand up in the Trench; and if the Noiſe increaſes, or that the Sentries confirm the Report the Battalions are to Form on the Reverſe of the Trench (which is the Side of the Trench oppoſite to the Banquet) and Remain there 'till the General of the Trenches ſhall ſend them ſuch Orders as he ſhall think proper.

The Relief of the Trenches is always made without Beat of Drum, and with as little Noiſe as poſſible, that the Beſieged may not know the exact Parts you are in, by which means their Fire can be given only at Random; whereas, if the Drum was to Beat, or a conſiderable Noiſe made, they could direct it with more certainty, and thereby make your Loſs greater.

Tho' it was the conſtant Practice formerly, for the Regiments to march into the Trenches with Flying Colours, and Planting them on the top of the Parapet, as ſoon as they had taken Poſſeſſion of their Poſts; yet towards the latter End of the Late War in *Flanders*, that Ceremony was laid aſide, and the Colours left in Camp under the Care of their own Quarter-Guard, or ſent to the Regiment which Incam-

ne

next them; having found by Experience, that it did not only ſhew plainly where the Regiments were Poſted, but proved likewiſe a Temptation to the Gunners of the Town to point their Cannon at them, by which they loſt a conſiderable Number of their Men, particularly the Sentries who were Poſted on the Banquet. And as the Carrying them to the Trenches was not in the leaſt eſſential, but rather Deſtructive to the Service, by expoſing their Men without any Real or Probable Advantage, nothing could be more Juſt and Reaſonable than the quitting of that Ceremony, ſince the *Engliſh* do not want ſuch Shews to Animate or Spur them on to their Duty. The *French*, however, keep up the old Cuſtom of carrying their Colours with them, from a Notion, perhaps, that it looks more Daring.

Tho' it is reaſonable to ſuppoſe, that the Care which lies on the Generals who command in the Trenches will oblige them to move frequently about the ſeveral Poſts, in order to keep the Troops Alert, and by their Preſence to Animate the Workmen who are carrying on the Approaches; yet there is a fixed Place where they are to be ſent to on every Occaſion, which is generally at or near the Battalion which is poſted in the Center, as being the moſt Convenieht in the ſending of Orders to, or the Receiving of Reports from the Whole, and where one of them (when there are ſeveral on that Command) ſhould always remain for that Purpoſe.

Whatever Intelligence the Colonels ſhall receive of the Motions of the Beſieged, they are to ſend an Account of it immediately, by an Officer to the General of the Trenches, that he may give the neceſſary Directions to the Whole.

When the Beſieged intend to make a vigorous Sally for the Levelling of your Works, or the Nailing of the Cannon on the Batteries, it is frequently preceded by ſome Sham ones; their Deſign in which, being to amuſe or draw off your Attention ſo far, that when they make the real one you may imagine it ſuch as the Former, and by that means neglect the neceſſary Precautions for your Defence; therefore an Officer muſt not ſuffer himſelf to be impoſed upon by that or any Stratagem of the like Nature. Beſides, they may juſt act the Contrary, by making the Real one Firſt; ſo that there is no knowing when they will make it, or judging of their Future Actions by their Paſt; for tho' Sorties are generally undertaken in the Night, yet there are Inſtances of ſome being made at Noon, which (from their not being expected at ſuch a time) have proved more ſucceſsful

than

than the others. I only mention this, to ſhew how neceſſary it is for the Troops in Trenches to be always on their Guard, and not to imagine themſelves in a State of Security from the Enterprizes of the Beſieged, while they are on that Duty.

At ſome of the Great Sieges in *Flanders* in the Late War, beſides the General Officers already named for the Trenches, a General of the Foot was appointed for the Command of each Attack, who had the Care and Direction of it during the whole Siege; but as this is quite out of the common Rule of the Service, by its never having been practiſed before, that I know of, I ſhall not pretend to determine on its being Right or Wrong, or trouble the Reader with a particular Detail of their Duty.

When the Attacks were commanded by Generals of the Foot in this manner, the Attacks were called after their Names; otherwiſe they were diſtinguiſhed by the Right, Left, or Center Attack; or by the Names of the Engineers who had the Conducting of them; or by the Names of the Baſtions where the Breaches were made.

A little before the Trenches are Relieved, every Regiment in them is to ſend a Return to the General, of what Men have been killed or wounded during the time they have been on Duty. The Officers who command the ſeveral Detachments of Workmen, are to do the ſame when they leave off Work; as alſo the Artillery-Officers who command in the Batteries; that he may acquaint the General who commands the Siege, with the ſeveral Particulars when he makes his Report to him, which is always done as ſoon as they are Relieved.

When a *French* Battalion is to Mount the Guard of the Trenches, it is always formed into Picquets, of 48, or 50 Men each, inſtead of Platoons.

Theſe Picquets are compoſed of an equal Number of Men from each Company, in the ſame Manner as the Ordinary Picquets are formed.

The Picquet which is drawn up on the Right of the Battalion, is compoſed of the Officers and Soldiers who are to go firſt on Duty. The ſecond Picquet, which is drawn up on the Left of the Firſt, conſiſts of thoſe who are the next on Command. All the other Picquets are Formed in the ſame Manner, and are drawn up in Battalions according to their Tour of Duty, thoſe who are to go on laſt being on the Left.

The

The Reaſons which they give for it are theſe: When Detachments are wanted in the Trenches, no time is loſt in making them, they being Formed and ready to march on the firſt Order. Beſides, ſhould an Accident happen to any Part of the Regiment by a Sortie, the Loſs will not fall on Particular Companies, but equally on the Whole.

Theſe are the Reaſons which they give for forming the Battalions that Mount the Trenches in this Manner; and which in my opinion, ſeem to carry a good deal of Weight: But as no other Troops but the *French* follow the ſame Rule, I ſhall be Silent on that Head, leaving every one to judge of it as they ſhall think Proper.

ARTICLE IV.

Beſides the Foot which are ordered for a Guard to the Trenches, there is alſo a Body of Horſe commanded to each Attack, who are Relieved every 24 Hours, as the Foot are, and are under the Direction of the General who commands in the Trenches.

They are always poſted at or near the *Queuë* of the Trenches, ſo as not to be expoſed to the Cannon of the Beſieged.

As ſoon as they Mount, the Officer who commands them ſends a Cornet on Foot into the Trenches to attend on the General, that when he has any Orders for the Horſe, he may ſend them by the Cornet.

The Number of Horſe which mount, are more or leſs according as it ſhall be judg'd neceſſary, they being deſigned, when the Enemy attack the Trenches, to cut off their Retreat to the Town; or if the Sortie is compoſed of Horſe and Foot, you may have Horſe to oppoſe theirs; ſo that a Regard muſt be had to the Quality of the Troops in Garriſon, and the Nature of the Ground which lies near the Approaches; for if it is not plain and open, neither their Horſe nor yours can act, and therefore a ſmall Number will be ſufficient: But when the Garriſon is ſtrong in Horſe, and the Ground proper for them to act in, a greater Body of Horſe is required on the Trench-Guard. But as the *French*, during the late War, depended more on the Strength and Regularity of their Fortifications than on a numerous Garriſon for the prolonging of a Siege, they ſeldom threw more Troops into a Town than what were ſufficient to man the Works; ſo that they very rarely made a conſiderable Sally, knowing that if

an Attempt of that kind ſhould miſcarry (which more frequently happens than not, if the Troops in the Trenches do their Duty) the Loſs of the Town would ſoon follow, by reducing the Garriſon too low to make a proper Defence; and as this was the Caſe at moſt of the Sieges in *Flanders*, the Horſe-Guards ſeldom conſiſted of above 200 at each Attack, (after the Trenches were opened) but oftner much leſs, there being very few Inſtances, if any, where the Service, for which they mounted, was required; and when it is not, the mounting of a great Number proves detrimental to the Service, by putting them on unneceſſary Fatigue, ſince a great many Horſes are thereby entirely loſt, and others reduced to ſo low a State as to render them unfit for preſent Service. However, neither this, nor any other Conſideration ought to prevail, or be allowed as an Excuſe for their not mounting a ſufficient Number on the Trench-Guard, whenever there is Reaſon to apprehend they may be wanted. But notwithſtanding the old Cuſtom of making great Sorties, for levelling the Works and nailing the Cannon, was, in a Manner, laid aſide; yet the *French* Governours fell upon another Method to retard the Progreſs of the Works, without much Danger to the Garriſon; which was, by making of frequent Sorties in the Night of an Officer and 20 Men, or a Serjeant and 12, who marched up to the Workmen, cried out *Tué*, *Tué*, with a loud Voice, then fired amongſt them, and immediately ran back into the Covert-way; and as they were only ſent to diſturb the Workmen, they had generally the deſired effect; for upon thoſe Sorties only, the Workmen could not be kept to their Duty by their Officers, but threw down the Tools and diſperſed; after which, few or none could be found again that Night to go on with the Works; ſo that without any Danger to the Garriſon the Progreſs of the Siege was as effectually retarded as it could be by great Sallies, unleſs they could make themſelves Maſters of the Batteries.

Theſe ſmall Sorties were ſometimes made three or four times a-night; and to encourage the Men to undertake them, the Governours always gave a Crown or ten Shillings a Man to thoſe who would go voluntarily; and though they ſuffer'd for it now and then, by the Troops in the Trenches, yet that never-failing Argument, Money, procured them always a ſufficient Number of the moſt bold and intrepid to offer themſelves; by which Method the Workmen were ſo often interrupted and alarmed, that ſome Nights they did not

finiſh

finiſh one Quarter of the Works which were begun; and notwithſtanding this was repeated Night after Night, yet I never heard of any Expedient fallen upon to ſtop it; from whence I conclude it was found impracticable; for as it could only be done by poſting of ſmall Guards, commanded by Serjeants, betwixt the Workmen and the Town, in order to intercept thoſe who Sally, yet as it was not done, I ſuppoſe it proceeded from the too great Danger which thoſe Guards muſt be expoſed to from the Fire of the Beſieged; otherwiſe it was impoſſible that ſo clear a Point could be overlooked.

There being frequent Occaſion at a Siege to make ſmall Attacks to diſlodge the Enemy from their advanced Poſts of little detached Works, which interrupt the Beſiegers in the carrying on of their Approaches; as often as Attacks of this kind are neceſſary, they are always performed by the Guard of the Trenches; for which End, every Battalion then on Duty muſt give their Proportion of Granadiers and others, according to the Number which ſhall be ordered, that the Loſs may fall equally on the whole; and not by particular Regiments, on account of Seniority, as was formerly practiſed, that Cuſtom being entirely laid aſide, and making them by Detachment inſtituted in their room, as a more juſt and reaſonable Way of proceeding; otherwiſe the oldeſt Regiments muſt be tore to pieces, while the young ones were ſafe in the Trenches looking on as Spectators. Beſides, unleſs this Method had been altered, the *Engliſh* muſt have been conſtantly deſtroyed at the Sieges in *Flanders:* For as the Guard of the Trenches was compoſed of the Troops of different Nations, of whom the *Engliſh* took Poſt, as belonging to the Oldeſt Crowned Head, or eldeſt Nation, as they called it, all thoſe Attacks muſt have been made by them; which ſufficiently evinces the Abſurdity of the Old Method, and the Equity of the New, in making every Battalion then on Duty ſhare equally of the Danger.

On particular Occaſions, when the Affair was very dangerous, and that a ſmall Number of Men was only required, it was done by Voluntiers (that is, ſuch who would go Voluntarily) offering a Reward to each Man; but even in this Caſe thoſe who command Regiments ſhould not ſuffer any more Voluntiers to go than their Proportion; otherwiſe they may loſe a conſiderable Number of their braveſt Men, by the Temptation of Money, while the Officers who act with more Caution and Prudence, ſave theirs, by not allowing

them to offer themſelves till they are called upon, in Hopes that their Places will be ſupplied by thoſe of other Regiments; ſeveral Inſtances of which could be eaſily given, were there an Occaſion.

The ſame Rule ſhould be obſerved in Relation to thoſe who are employed in the Sapp, Demi-ſapp, carrying of Wool-Packs, and the Half-Crown Voluntiers, (as they are called) ſince every Regiment can ſupply their Proportion of Men duly qualified for ſuch Undertakings; but as ſome may have neither Artificers nor Miners, they are always taken where they can be found, without any Regard to the ſaid Rule.

The Number of Half-Crown Voluntiers are more or leſs according to the Buſineſs which may be required of them, which is to fill the Ditch with Faſcines when the Breach is made, in order to attack it; as alſo to lay Bridges over it for the ſame Purpoſe: and tho' theſe Men have nothing to do 'till towards the End of the Siege, yet they are retained and paid from the opening of the Trenches, and are excuſed from all other Duty whatever 'till the Town is taken, or the Siege raiſed; but they pay dearly for it whenever they are employed, it being hardly poſſible for them to eſcape.

My Reaſon for inſerting the above Particulars, is principally deſign'd to inform thoſe, who have not been on ſuch Commands, of the proper Method of proceeding, that when they ſhall be engaged on the like Occaſions, they may know how to conduct themſelves accordingly; without which, they may be eaſily caught by the ſpecious Pretences or Compliments of deſigning Men (in putting the old Puncto of Seniority upon them) to the no ſmall Detriment of thoſe under their Care. The ſame may likewiſe happen in caſe of Voluntiers, by allowing a greater Number than your Proportion: For the Hope of Reward is ſo ſtrongly implanted by Nature, that it creates in Mankind even a Contempt of Death when the Proſpect is in View, as was frequently ſeen by the ſurprizing Actions which were performed at the Sieges in *Flanders*, by the giving of Money; which, when duly Regulated, is exceeding Proper, and proved of great Service in taking the Town much ſooner than they otherwiſe could have done; therefore it is not the Method of giving Money which is wrong, but the ill Uſe that may be made of it, by impoſing on Particular Regiments, unleſs the Officers who Command them are aware of the Bait.

ART I.

ARTICLE V.

The Preparations which are generally made for an Aſſault on a Conſiderable Outwork, or the Body of the Place, are as follows.

The Number of Troops which are commanded on theſe Occaſions, muſt depend on the Strength of the Place to be Attacked, and the Number of Men who can be brought to Defend it.

A Detachment from every Company of Granadiers at the Siege, with a proper Number of Battalions, are ordered to join the Guard of the Trenches; but to prevent any Diſpute about Precedency or Right, in making the Attack, the Battalions thus ordered ſhould be thoſe who are next on Command for the Trenches.

A Detachment of Hatchet-Men, with their large Axes, are likewiſe Ordered, that if the Paſſage of the Granadiers is obſtructed, by meeting with large Palliſades, either in the Covert-way, or in the Intrenchments behind the Breach, they may be ready to cut them down: For tho' the Bombs and Cannon from the Batteries break them generally down, yet they can't always reach them; for which reaſon there ſhould be Hatchet-Men ordered, for fear they ſhould be wanted.

There are likewiſe a ſufficient Number of Workmen ordered with Tools, and others to carry the proper Materials, ſuch as Wool-Packs, Sand-Bags, Gabions, Faſcines, and Pickets, for the making of a Lodgment on the Breach if ſo ordered, or an Intrenchment in the Body of the Outwork to cover you from the Fire of the Town, and to ſecure you againſt any Attempt which the Beſieged ſhall make to regain it.

Engineers are commanded with the Workmen, to direct them in Making the proper Lodgments, that no time may be loſt in the doing them.

There are always more Battalions ordered than are Neceſſary for the Attack, that ſome may remain as a Reſerve in the Trenches, which, in my Opinion, ſhould be thoſe of the additional Number order'd, whoſe Tour of Mounting the Trenches is furtheſt off.

The Battalions which compoſe the Guard of the Trenches, always March after and Suſtain the Granadiers, and the additional Battalions only Suſtain them.

The General Officers then on Duty in the Trenches command the Attack, unleſs the Number of Troops ſo ordered may require a Greater Number of Generals than are then on Duty, or one of a ſuperior Rank; in which caſe, the Command always falls to the eldeſt; but unleſs for the Reaſon juſt mentioned, the Command is never taken from the Generals of the Trenches.

The Diſpoſition of the Troops for the Attack is generally made as follows:

The Granadiers deſigned for the Attack, are to be poſted at the Head of the Trenches, or that Part of them which lies neareſt to the Work to be Attacked; the particular Diſpoſition of whom is as follows.

I. A Serjeant and 12 or 16 Granadiers are drawn out for the Forlorn Hope; they are not taken from one Company, but one from each of the 12 or 16 eldeſt Companies; or if they conſiſt of the Troops of different Nations, they are then taken in proportion to the Number of Battalions of each Nation.

II. A Lieutenant and 30 or 40 Granadiers formed by Detachment in the ſame manner, to Suſtain the Forlorn Hope.

III. A Captain, 2 or 3 Lieutenants, with 80 or 100 Granadiers, formed alſo by Detachment, to Suſtain the Lieutenant.

IV. A Detachment of 200 Granadiers, Commanded by a Major, to Suſtain the Captain.

V. The whole Body of Granadiers according to Seniority of Companies, or Nations under the Command of Field-Officers, in Proportion to their Numbers. They ſhould March as many in Front as the Ground they are to paſs over will admit of, or the Breach contain.

VI. The Hatchet-Men are to be poſted next to the Granadiers, and to March immediately after them.

VII. The Battalions which compoſe the Guard of the Trenches are poſted, according to Seniority, next to the Hatchet-Men, to Suſtain the Granadiers.

VIII. The Additional Battalions that are to go upon the Attack, are Poſted next to the Guard of the Trenches, in order to Suſtain them.

IX. After the Troops deſign'd for the Attack, the Detachments or Workmen, Commanded by their Officers, are poſted, that they may be ready to March, when ordered to make the Lodgments, with whom the Engineers are to March to Inſtruct them.

X. The

X. The Battalions appointed for the Reſerve, are poſted next to the Workmen; and when the others March out to the Attack, they are to move up to the Head of the Trenches, that, if the Troops which make the Attack require any Aſſiſtance, they may be ready to March out and Suſtain them, when they ſhall be ſo ordered by the General who Commands the Attack.

That thoſe who make the Attack may be as little expoſed to the Fire of the Beſieged as poſſible, all the Cannon on the Batteries are pointed againſt the ſeveral Works of the Town which Defend the Breach; on which they are to Fire inceſſantly, during the Attack, to keep the Enemy from the Walls.

The Signal commonly given for an Attack, is the throwing of a certain Number of Bombs into the Town at the ſame time; but if they are thrown into the Work which is to be Attacked, or towards the Gorge of the Baſtion in which the Breach is made, (that being the Place where the Beſieged Intrench themſelves for the Defence of it) it will be of great Service to thoſe who make the Attack. For as the Enemy will be obliged either to quit their Poſts, or lie flat on the Ground 'till the Bombs have broke, it will give the Granadiers (if they have not far to March) ſufficient time to Mount the Breach, and Attack the Intrenchment without meeting with much Oppoſition 'till they come there, provided the Batteries fire at the ſame time on the Defences of the Town.

When there are more Attacks than one to be made at the ſame time, (which, if the Breaches are ready, would be exceeding proper, in order to divide the Force of the Garriſon) each muſt have the ſame Proportion and Diſpoſition made for it, unleſs a greater Oppoſition is expected from the one than the other; in which Caſe, the Difference then lies in the Numbers ordered for each, but not in the Diſpoſition or Order of the Attack.

Sham Attacks are ſometimes made at the ſame time with the Real Ones; but as they are intended to Amuſe the Beſieged, to oblige them to divide their Troops, that thoſe who make the real Attack may meet with the leſs Oppoſition, the Workmen are generally omitted.

When an Attack is to be made on the Covert-way, the Troops which are appointed for that Service are generally divided into ſeveral Bodies, in order to Attack it at different Parts at the ſame time. The Number of Workmen, with

the ſeveral Materials before-mentioned, particularly Wool-Packs, are greater on theſe Occaſions; becauſe an Attack on the Covert-Way is generally deſigned to force the Enemy from thence 'till a Lodgment is made on the Glacis, or as it is commonly, tho' Erroneouſly, called the Counterſcarp; for as the Counterſcarp is the Wall of the Ditch which ſupports the Covert-way, to be Lodged on the Counterſcarp, properly Speaking, it is to be Lodged on the Brink of the Ditch; but, at preſent, that Term is generally Abuſed, by ſaying that they are on the Counterſcarp, when they are only at the beginning of the Glacis.

The moſt favourable time for the making of an Attack, is in the Day: For as the Actions of every Man will appear in full View, the Brave, through a laudable Emulation, will endeavour, at the Expence of their Lives, to out-do one another; and even the Fearful will exert themſelves, by Performing their Duty, rather than bear the infamous Name of Coward; the Fear of Shame being generally more Powerful than the Fear of Death. The Batteries will be likewiſe of greater Service, by their Firing with more Certainty on the Defences of the Town, and the Top of the Breach, to keep the Enemy from oppoſing the Granadiers in Mounting it. Beſides, in the Night, thoſe who go on firſt will run great Danger from the Fire of thoſe who Suſtain them; therefore an Attack on an Out-work, or the Covert-way, is generally a little after Sun-ſet, that Night may come on by the time the Attack is finiſhed, to favour them in making the Neceſſary Lodgments: But this Rule will not hold good in an Attack on the Body of the Place; for if Night ſhould come on before the Town is entirely reduced to your Obedience, great Inconveniencies would attend both your own Troops, and the poor Inhabitants; to avoid which, it is generally made in the Forenoon.

I do not pretend, by what is mentioned in this Article, to lay down certain Rules; but only to give a general Idea of Attacks, with the uſual Preparation of Workmen, *&c.* Diſpoſition of the Troops, with the Time of making them.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Method in Flanders *for the Receiving and Diſtributing of the Daily Orders; General Detail of the Army, (by which is meant the General Duty to be performed by the Officers and Soldiers) with the Form of Roſter, or Table, by which the Duty of Entire Battalions, and the Officers, is Regulated; and a Table of Proportion for the Detaching of Private Men from the Whole.*

ARTICLE I.

AS the Horſe and Foot don't interfere with one another in the Detail, but have a ſeparate one of their own, I ſhall therefore mention ſome Particulars relating to the General Officers, Majors of Brigade, and the Adjutant General, before I proceed to the Orders.

Tho' the General Officers have not particular Commiſſions to the Horſe or Foot, yet their Commands are diſtinct, as they are placed over the one or the other; for the Generals who are appointed to the Horſe, have the Care and Direction of them, and are only commanded on Duty with the Horſe. The ſame Rule is obſerved by the Generals who are appointed to the Foot; ſo that the Horſe and Foot don't Roll together, but have each their Duty apart: However, when a Detachment from each join, the eldeſt Officer, whether of Horſe or Foot, Commands both.

General Officers of the Day are appointed for the Horſe and Foot, each having a Lieutenant-General, Major-General, and Brigadier, who continue on that Duty 24 Hours; during which time they Receive the Orders from the General in Chief, and deliver them to the Generals of the Horſe and Foot, and Majors of Brigade of the Day, as ſhall be more particularly mention'd in its proper Place.

The

The Picquet is under the immediate Direction of the General Officers of the Day; and when it is order'd to March upon any Service, they have the Command of it: And as the Picquet is not to March from the Head of their ſeveral Regiments, but by the Direction of the Lieutenant-Generals of the Day, all Orders relating to it ſhould be immediately ſent to them; for which reaſon they are to be in a conſtant Readineſs, and not to leave the Camp, but when they Viſit the Grand-Guards and Out-Poſts which lie near the Army; which they generally do every Morning, to know what State they are in, that they may acquaint the General in Chief with it at Orderly time, or ſooner if requiſite.

All the Majors of Brigade of the Foot, Roll for the Day to the whole Body of Foot, each taking it in his Turn to act as ſuch.

The Majors of Brigade of the Horſe do the ſame for the whole Body of Horſe.

The Majors of Brigade of the Day remain on that Duty 24 Hours, during which time they keep the General Detail of the Whole, and Regulate what each Nation in Particular is to Furniſh to the ſeveral Duties then order'd, and receive the Orders at the Head Quarters from the Brigadiers of the Day.

They are to ſee all Detachments paraded, as is explained at large in Art. 4. Chap. xv. And if any Diſpute happens on the Parade amongſt the Officers about their Duty, the Generals then on the Spot are to decide it according to the Rules of War, or Cuſtoms of the Army; but if none are preſent, it is then to be done by the Major of Brigade of the Day, to which they are to ſubmit; which however is not to be attended with any ill conſequence in debarring any Officer of his Right, if he can make it appear afterwards that he was wrong'd by the Deciſion.

The Majors of Brigade of each Nation roll amongſt themſelves for the Day to their own Troops, each Nation being to have one at the Head-Quarters at Orderly Time to receive the Orders from the Major of Brigade of the Day for the Whole; at which time they compared and ſettled their Books of Detail with his, that they might be prepared to act for the whole in their Turn; as alſo to ſee that their Troops had no Injuſtice done them in the Numbers which they were to furniſh. When the other Majors of Brigade received the Orders from theſe, they compared and ſettled their Books in the ſame manner, by which means they all

knew

knew the General Detail; and when any of their own General Officers were to go next on Duty, they ſent them an Account of it by their Aid-de-Camps when they came for Orders, that they might be prepared for it.

The Duty which was done by the Majors of Brigade of the Day for the whole, in keeping of the Detail, and giving of the Particulars to thoſe of each Nation, was formerly perform'd by the Adjutant-General; which Method is ſtill continued by the Imperialiſts, their Majors of Brigade of the Day, or Majors of the Regiments who act as ſuch, being only to ſee the Guards and other Detachments paraded: But the Detail of the *Flanders* Army being found too great for any one Perſon, the Majors of Brigade were ordered to execute that Part Day-about, from whence the Major of Brigade who kept the General Detail, and diſtributed the Orders to the others, was call'd Major of the Day, to diſtinguiſh him from the reſt: And tho' this took off a great deal of Trouble from the Adjutant-General, yet if he performed the other Parts of his Duty, he found ſufficient Employment.

For he is obliged to receive, and write down in his Book, all Orders which are given at Orderly Time, or afterwards; to keep the Detail both of the Horſe and Foot, and be preſent at the ſettling of it with the Brigadiers and Majors of Brigade of the Day, that, when the General in Chief (with whom he always remains) wants to know any thing relating to the Detail of the Army, he may be able to inform him.

When any Orders are to be given out in the Abſence of the General Officers of the Day, the Adjutant-General receives them from the General in Chief, and ſends them to the Majors of Brigade of the Day for the Horſe and Foot, if it relates to both, for their being immediately executed.

At the Opening of the Campaign, he is to ſettle with the Majors of Brigade the Roſters for the ſeveral Duties, as alſo at any other time, that an Alteration is required.

It is likewiſe his Duty to inſpect into the Diſcipline of the Troops, to ſee that each Regiment keeps ſtrictly to the Exerciſe order'd.

In ſhort, the Adjutant-General is to keep an Account of every thing which paſſes in the Army, and attend on the General in Chief when he goes abroad, if he is not employ'd about ſome other part of his Duty; but in the Day of Action he is to be always near his Perſon, to carry his Orders to the Generals of the Horſe and Foot, which is likewiſe the Duty

of

of his Aid-de-Camps; but when the Adjutant-General is preſent, and that there are any Orders of Conſequence to be deliver'd to thoſe who command the Lines, he is generally ſent, to avoid Miſtakes in the giving of them; ſince we may reaſonably ſuppoſe, that Length of Service, and a thorough Knowledge of Military Affairs, were the chief Motives which promoted him to that Employment. The ſame Qualifications are required in Aid-de-Camps.

Leſt the Out-Poſts ſhould be forgot upon any ſudden or unexpected March of the Army, the Adjutant-General is to take care that they are drawn in due time, without which Precaution the Men on thoſe Commands may be taken or deſtroyed by the Enemy. He is likewiſe to ſee that all the Out-Poſts are relieved regularly, leſt the Major of Brigade of the Day ſhould neglect or omit it.

ARTICLE II.

The Orders are always given out at the Head-Quarters, and generally in the Forenoon; at which time it is uſual for moſt of the General Officers of the Army to repair thither; and as the General Officers of the Day are to receive the Orders from the General in Chief, they are obliged to wait upon him at that time.

The Majors of Brigade of the Day for the whole, and thoſe for each Nation, are to be at the Head-Quarters at the ſame time.

The General Officers of the Day, both of the Horſe and Foot, receive the Orders from the General in Chief, which ſhould be taken in writing by the Major-Generals and Brigadiers.

As ſoon as the Orders are received, the Major-General of the Day for the Horſe is to wait upon the General of the Horſe, and the Major-General of the Day for the Foot is to wait upon the General of the Foot, to whom they are to deliver the Orders, and to know what particular Commands they have for the Troops over which they are placed; but as nothing of Moment can be done but by the Direction of the General in Chief, we may therefore ſuppoſe that the Orders which are given by the General of the Horſe or Foot relate only to the keeping up of Diſcipline and Order in the ſeveral Corps: and what Orders they receive from them, they are to acquaint the Lieutenant-Generals of the Day with, and then deliver them to the Brigadiers of the Day, to be given out with the reſt.

During

During the time that the Major-Generals are gone to wait upon the Generals of the Horſe and Foot, the Brigadiers of the Day are to deliver the Orders to the Majors of Brigade of the Day for the Whole, and to ſettle with them the Detail; in the doing of which they are to be very exact, that none may be order'd on Duty out of their Turn, or that the Troops of any Nation furniſh more than their due Proportion of Officers and Private Soldiers to the ſeveral Commands then order'd.

When the Majors of Brigade of the Day for the Whole have received the Orders from, and fix'd the Detail with the Brigadiers of the Day, they are to deliver them to the Majors of Brigade of the Day of the ſeveral Nations, with the Particulars of what Officers and Private Men each are to furniſh.

The National Majors of Brigade of the Day (if I may be allow'd the Expreſſion, for Diſtinction's ſake) return immediately to their Incampment, deliver the Orders to the Majors of Brigade of their own Troops, and ſettle amongſt themſelves what their Brigades, or Regiments, are to furniſh for Duties then order'd; after which, the Majors of Brigade wait upon their Brigadiers, deliver them the Orders, receive their particular Commands for their Brigades, and then give out the Whole to the Majors of the Regiments of their reſpective Brigades.

The Majors wait upon their own Colonels, deliver them the Orders, receive their Commands for their Regiments, and then give them to the Adjutants; who wait upon their Lieutenant-Colonels, acquaint them with the Orders, afterwards give them out to the Orderly Serjeant of each Company, and name the Officers of the Regiment, who are to go on Duty, with the Number of Private Men from each Company; after which the Serjeants deliver the Orders to their own Officers, and the Corporals (one of each Company being always preſent when the Serjeants receive Orders, as alſo the Drum-Major) warn the Private Men, and the Drum-Major does the ſame by the Drummers who are to go on Duty.

The Lieutenant-Generals and Major-Generals who were not at the Head-Quarters at Orderly-time, ſend their Aid de Camps to the Major of Brigade of the Day of their own Troops for the Orders.

The Provoſt-Marſhal of each Nation is to receive the Orders in the ſame Manner.

The

The Major of the Train, and the Provoſt-General of the Army, receive Orders from the Adjutant-General at the Head Quarters.

All Orders, Subſequent to thoſe at Orderly-time, which the Generals of the Day ſhall receive from the General in Chief, they are to ſend by their Aid-de-Camps to the Majors of Brigade of the Day for the Whole, that they may be immediately executed. Upon their receiving ſuch Orders they are to ſend them in Writing to the National Majors of Brigade of the Day by their Orderly Serjeants, who communicate them to the reſt, and they to the Regiments of their reſpective Brigades by the Orderly Serjeants.

When any Detachment is made which is to continue out any time, it muſt be particularly Specified in the Order, that the Men may be provided with Ammunition-Bread, and Pay accordingly.

Thus far I have ſhewn how Orders are Received and Diſtributed to the Army, and in the following Article I ſhall Treat of the General Detail, according to the Military Acceptation of the Word.

ARTICLE III.

All the General Officers of the Foot of the ſame Rank Roll with one another, and are order'd on Duty according to Seniority. The ſame Rule is obſerved amongſt the General Officers of the Horſe; and at the Opening of the Campaign a Liſt of the General Officers in the Army, with the Dates of their Commiſſions, is taken by the Adjutant-General, and given by him to the Majors of Brigade of the Horſe and Foot.

When the General Officers are to go on Duty, they are always mention'd by Name in Publick Orders.

The General of the Horſe, or the General of the Foot, have not any fix'd Duty; but when a conſiderable Body of Troops is order'd out upon any Service, they are generally appointed to Command them; in which caſe they have always one or more Lieutenant-Generals, ſeveral Major-Generals and Brigadiers under them, the Number of whom are generally proportion'd to the Number of Troops, or as the Service on which they are to be employ'd may require; the particular Number of Men which the General Officers are to have under their Command being no where fix'd: For it has frequently happen'd that a Marſhal of *France* has had under his Command only ten or fifteen thouſand Men; and at another time, an hundred thouſand.

The

The Lieutenant-Generals, Major-Generals, and Brigadiers, have a constant and fix'd Duty, as that of the Day, which is explain'd in the foregoing Articles. Besides which, they have that of Commands, which is when they are order'd out with Entire Battalions, or Detachments from the Whole; so that they have two distinct Duties in the Army, that of the Day, and Commands, which is kept by the Majors of Brigade; but when the General Officers of the Day March with the Picquet beyond the Limits of the Camp, which is the Grand-Guard, it passes for a Command both for them and those of the Picquet, and is allowed as such in the General Detail.

Entire Battalions are frequently Detach'd from the Army, either for the Forming of a Siege, Blocking up of the Enemy's Garrisons, securing, or covering, some Part of your own Country from the Inroads of the Enemy, or for Convoys, in bringing of Ammunition and Provisions to the Army; all of which pass for Duties: but when Battalions are Detach'd for the covering of the General's Quarters, it only goes for a Tour of Fatigue.

As each Nation had a different Number of Battalions in *Flanders*, their Duty was Regulated by a Roster; (which Name, I suppose, was given it by the Person who invented it) but as that of Sieges was very severe Service, it was made a Duty a-part, that every Battalion might take their Tour in process of time; so that, properly speaking, there were three distinct Duties for Entire Battalions. The first was Sieges; the second Blocades, covering of your own Territories, or Convoys, or Commands of the like Nature; and the third, covering of Quarters, the Detail of which was kept by the Majors of Brigade. I presume the Generals had a particular Tour to Sieges, as well as Battalions.

Field-Officers are not order'd on Duty by Name in the General Orders, but by Nation; each being to give as many Colonels, Lieutenant-Colonels, and Majors, as they had Battalions in the Field; so that when any were Sick, Wounded, or absent by leave, those of the Nation, who remain'd, did the Duty for the full Complement.

They have two distinct Duties in the general Detail, Picquet and Commands, which is regulated by a Roster; the Form of which is exactly the same as that which is made for the detaching of Entire Battalions, since they are always to give an equal Number with them.

In the general Orders it is always ſaid, that ſuch a Nation is to give a Colonel, ſuch a Nation a Lieutenant-Colonel, and ſuch a Major for the Picquet for ſuch or ſuch a Wing; and when Field-Officers are order'd for Commands, they are mention'd in the ſame Manner in the general Orders.

In the particular Detail of each Nation, the Majors of Brigade kept a Liſt of the Field-Officers of their own Troops who were preſent, and when it came to their Turn to furniſh any for the Picquet or Commands, they order'd them on Duty by Seniority, and mention'd them by Name in the Orders which they deliver'd to their own Troops.

What particular Duty each Nation might have for their own Field-Officers, I can't ſay; but that of the *Britiſh*, was general Courts-Martial, a Detail of which was kept by their own Majors of Brigade.

As every Nation had a different Eſtabliſhment of Officers to their Regiments, each Nation gave therefore Captains and Subalterns only in Proportion to their Eſtabliſhment; which Duty was regulated by a Roſter, by taking an Eighth or Tenth of the Captains of each Nation, and the Sixteenth or Twentieth of the Subalterns, and form'd Roſters by thoſe Numbers for the general Detail of Captains and Subalterns, for whom there was only that of Commands, the Number which each Battalion furniſhed to the Picquet, being equal and conſtantly the ſame; therefore the Majors of Brigade kept only that of Commands.

As the Battalions of *Great-Britain* were all upon the ſame Eſtabliſhment, as to their Number of Officers, they all gave equally with one another, without any regard to thoſe which had more Captains and Subalterns ſick or abſent than another, every Battalion being to do Duty for its full Complement; and I ſuppoſe the Troops of every other Nation obſerved the ſame Rule amongſt themſelves.

When any *Britiſh* Captains and Subalterns were appointed for Commands by the general Orders, their own Majors of Brigade regulated amongſt themſelves what Battalions were to furniſh them; and in the giving of the Orders to their own Troops they mention'd the Regiments by Name who were to furniſh Captains and Subalterns.

The particular Duty for the Captains of the *Engliſh* Battalions was that of Courts-Martial, which Detail was kept by their own Majors of Brigade.

Every Battalion in the Army, whether ſtrong or weak gives an equal Number of Private Men to all Detachments; for

for the Uſe of which, I have hereunto annexed a Table of Proportion, that no Time may be loſt, or a Miſtake made by a wrong Calculation.

Theſe were the eſtabliſhed Rules for the Detail in *Flanders*, both as it regarded the whole, and that of each Nation in Particular; and in the next Place I ſhall endeavour to ſhew, in as clear a Manner as I can, the Form and Uſe of a Roſter, or Table, for regulating the Duty of an Army which is compoſed of the Troops of different Princes, whoſe Number of Regiments, or Officers, are unequal.

The Roſter is uſed by the Horſe as well as the Foot, for the regulating of the Duty of entire Squadrons, which are more frequently detach'd than Battalions.

Explanation of the following Roſter.

In the firſt Column are the Names of the ſeveral Nations; and in the ſecond, the Number of Battalions which each had; and as the higheſt Number was 50 which belong'd to the *Dutch*, 50 Columns more are added, which makes 50 Squares oppoſite to each Nation; but as the *Engliſh* have but 17 Battalions, and being only to give in Proportion to that Number, all the Squares but 17 are filled up: The ſame is obſerved by thoſe of *Pruſſia*, *Hanover*, and *Denmark*, each having no more blank Squares left than they have Battalions.

The Method of placing the blank Squares at a Diſtance, and filling up of thoſe between them, may be ſeen by the Plan; but the Reaſon for dividing of them in this Manner will appear very plain, when the Method of detaching of Battalions, by the Roſter, is known.

As 17 to 50 is almoſt 1 to 3, the dividing of the blank Squares oppoſite to the *Engliſh*, is very regular and eaſy; as 10 to 50 is 1 to 5, which is the *Danes*, theirs is quite regular; but thoſe of *Pruſſia* and *Hanover* not bearing ſo near a Proportion, the Number of the fill'd up Squares between the Blanks, will, of courſe, vary.

All the Columns are number'd on the Top from 1 to 50, and as the Blank Squares in the ſeveral Columns are ſuppoſed to be Battalions, I have number'd them from 1 to 104 as they are to be detach'd the one after the other; which ſhews the Method of detaching of them in ſo clear a manner, that it muſt be conceiv'd at firſt View, and will enable any one to form Roſters for any Number, and ſave me the Trouble of adding more Plans of this Nature.

But in order to ſee how the Proportion anſwers, let us ſuppoſe three Sieges to be undertaken at different Times, to each of which 30 Battalions are to be detached.

The firſt 30 Battalions begins with Column 1, and ends with Column 14, the Blanks in which Columns I have mark'd with a Point, or Stop to diſtinguiſh them from the reſt.

The Second begins with Column 15, and ends with Column 29, the Blanks in which are mark'd with a Stroke, thus (—). The third Siege begins with Column 30, and ends with Column 43, the Blanks in thoſe Columns are mark'd with a Croſs, thus (†).

The following Table will ſhew the Number of Battalions each Nation is to furniſh to the ſeveral Sieges, and what Number remains undetach'd of the Whole: And as Calculations of this Nature won't admit of Fractions, it is impoſſible to bring the Proportions nearer, or invent a more proper Method for the Purpoſe, than this.

Nations.	Number of Battalions at the firſt Siege.	Number of Battalions at the ſecond Siege.	Number of Battalions at the third Siege.	Number of Battalions Remain'd undetach'd.	Number of Battalions which belong'd to each Nation.
Engliſh	5	5	5	2	17
Pruſſians	4	4	4	2	14
Hanoverians	4	3	4	2	13
Dutch	14	15	14	7	50
Danes	3	3	3	1	10
Total	30	30	30	14	104

Expla-

Roster General for the Detaching of Ba

Nations	Nr. of Battalions belonging to each Nation.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
English	17	1.			8.			15.			21.		
Prussians	14	2.				10.				18.			
Hannoverians	13	3.				11.				19.			
Dutch	50	4.	6.	7.	9.	12.	13.	16.	17.	20.	22.	23.	25.
Danes	10	5.					14.					24.	

Continuation of the Roster.

Nations	Nr. of Battalions belonging to each Nation.	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37
English	17			58 −			64 +			70 +			77 +
Prussians	14		56 −			61 +			68 +			74 +	
Hannoverians	13	53 −				62 +				71 +			
Dutch	50	54 −	57 −	59 −	60 −	63 +	65 +	67 +	69 +	72 +	73 +	75 +	78 +
Danes	10	55 −					66 +					76 +	

of Battalions, according to that in Flanders in 1708.

12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25
	26			32			39			45			51
	27				35			41				49	
		29				37				46			
25	28	30	31	33	36	38	40	42	43	47	48	50	52
				34					44				

37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50
77 +			82 +			89 +			94			101	
			83 +				91				99		
	79 +				87 +				95				103
78 +	80 +	81 +	84 +	85 +	88 +	90 +	92	93	96	98	100	102	104
				86 +					97				

Explanation of the following Table,

As the Table is carried no further than from 10 Battalions to 109, and from 2 Men a Battalion to 71, there may be an Objection for its not being more complete; ſince Detachments of a greater Number of Men than 71 a Regiment are often commanded, particularly at Sieges and in Garriſon: but as my principal Deſign is only to ſhew the Uſe of the Table, if that End is complied with, I think I have fully anſwered the Purpoſe; for when the Method is known, every one may make a Table of Proportion to as high a Number as they pleaſe for their own Uſe.

Every Leaf, or two Sides, compleats the Tables of Ten Battalions as far as the Calculation is carried.

The firſt Leaf begins with 10 Battalions and ends with 19. The ſecond Leaf begins with 20 Battalions, and ends with 29, and ſo with the reſt, to 109 Battalions, as may be ſeen by the Figure on the Top.

The firſt Side of every Leaf begins with 2 Men a Battalion, and ends with 36, the ſecond Side of every one begins with 37 Men a Battalion, and ends with 71, as may be ſeen by the Figures in the Margin, or firſt Column.

The Uſe of the Table is as follows.

When a Number of Men are to be detach'd, and that you want to know the Proportion which each Regiment is to give, you muſt find in the Top the Number which the Battalions in the Army conſiſts of. After that carry your Eye down the Column 'till you find the Number order'd, and then trace the Line, in which the Number ſtands, 'till you come to the Margin, or firſt Column, and the Figures there ſhew you the Number which each Battalion is to furniſh; but as it won't always happen that you can find in the Column the exact Number order'd, but that ſome will be wanting, or exceed it, you muſt ſtop at that which comes neareſt to it, but always leſs than the Number requir'd. The Men thus wanting are called Odd Men, becauſe they don't come exactly to a Man a Battalion. When this is the Caſe, you then order as many Battalions as there are Men wanting to give each a Man more than what are mention'd in the Margin, an Account of which is kept by the Majors of Brigade, that every Battalion may furniſh Odd Men in their Turn.

But leſt it ſhould not be fully comprehended by the above Explanation, a few Examples, I believe, will make it indiſputably ſo.

Suppoſe a Detachment is to be made of 550 Men from 16 Battalions; you muſt find out the Column on the Top Number 16, then look down the Column 'till you come to 544, (which is the neareſt you can come to the Number ordered without exceeding it, which you are never to do) and you'll find the Figure in the Margin oppoſite to that Number to be 34, which is 34 Men a Battalion; but as 34 Men a Battalion makes only 544, and that 550 are requir'd, ſix Battalions muſt therefore give 35 Men each, and the other ten Battalions only 34 Men each.

Let us ſuppoſe further, that 1600 Men are order'd from 25 Battalions. You muſt find out the Number 25 on the Top, and look down that Column; but as the higheſt Number on the firſt Side of that Leaf is 900, you muſt turn over and look down Column 25 on the back of it 'till you come to 1600, and you'll find the Figures oppoſite to it in the Margin to be 64, which is the Number each Battalion is to give.

I am perſuaded that I need not trouble the Reader with a further Explanation, ſince it muſt be thoroughly underſtood by what is already ſaid of it.

As Detachments from the Horſe are made from the Squadrons as the Foot are from Battalions, the Table will be as uſeful to the Cavalry as it is to the Infantry, by putting in the Word Squadrons inſtead of Battalions.

Table of Proportion for detaching of Private Men.

Number of Men to be detach'd from each Battalion.	*Number of Battalions from which the Men are to be detach'd.*									
	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
2	20	22	24	26	28	30	32	34	36	38
3	30	33	36	39	42	45	48	51	54	57
4	40	44	48	52	56	60	64	68	72	76
5	50	55	60	65	70	75	80	85	90	95
6	60	66	72	78	84	90	96	102	108	114
7	70	77	84	91	98	105	112	119	126	133
8	80	88	96	104	112	120	128	136	144	152
9	90	99	108	117	126	135	144	153	162	171
10	100	110	120	130	140	150	160	170	180	190
11	110	121	132	143	154	165	176	187	198	209
12	120	132	144	156	168	180	192	204	216	228
13	130	143	156	169	182	195	208	221	234	247
14	140	154	168	182	196	210	224	238	252	266
15	150	165	180	195	210	225	240	255	270	285
16	160	176	192	208	224	240	256	272	288	304
17	170	187	204	221	238	255	272	289	306	323
18	180	198	216	234	252	270	288	306	324	342
19	190	209	228	247	266	285	304	323	342	361
20	200	220	240	260	280	300	320	340	360	380
21	210	231	252	273	294	315	336	357	378	399
22	220	242	264	286	308	330	352	374	396	418
23	230	253	276	299	322	345	368	391	414	437
24	240	264	288	312	336	360	384	408	432	456
25	250	275	300	325	350	375	400	425	450	475
26	260	286	312	338	364	390	416	442	468	494
27	270	297	324	351	378	405	432	459	486	513
28	280	308	336	364	392	420	448	476	504	532
29	290	319	348	377	406	435	464	493	522	551
30	300	330	360	390	420	450	480	510	540	570
31	310	341	372	403	434	465	496	527	558	589
32	320	352	384	416	448	480	512	544	576	608
33	330	363	396	429	462	495	528	561	594	627
34	340	374	408	442	476	510	544	578	612	646
35	350	385	420	455	490	525	560	595	630	665
36	360	396	432	468	504	540	576	612	648	684

Number of Men to be detach'd	*Battalions from which the Number*									
	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
37	370	407	444	481	518	555	592	629	666	703
38	380	418	456	494	532	570	608	646	684	722
39	390	429	468	507	546	585	624	663	702	741
40	400	440	480	520	560	600	640	680	720	760
41	410	451	492	533	574	615	656	697	738	779
42	420	462	504	546	588	630	672	714	756	798
43	430	473	516	559	602	645	688	731	774	817
44	440	484	528	572	616	660	704	748	792	836
45	450	495	540	585	630	675	720	765	810	855
46	460	506	552	598	644	690	736	782	828	874
47	470	517	564	611	6 58	705	752	799	846	893
48	480	528	576	624	672	720	768	816	864	912
49	490	539	588	637	686	735	784	833	882	931
50	500	550	600	650	700	750	800	850	900	950
51	510	561	612	663	714	765	816	867	918	969
52	520	572	624	676	728	780	832	884	936	988
53	530	583	636	689	742	795	848	901	954	1007
54	540	594	648	702	756	810	864	918	972	1026
55	550	605	660	715	770	825	880	935	990	1045
56	560	616	672	728	784	840	896	952	1008	1064
57	570	627	684	741	798	855	912	969	1026	1083
58	580	638	696	754	812	870	928	986	1044	1102
59	590	649	708	767	826	885	944	1003	1062	1121
60	600	660	720	780	840	900	960	1020	1080	1140
61	610	671	732	793	854	915	976	1037	1098	1159
62	620	682	744	806	868	930	992	1054	1116	1178
63	630	693	756	819	882	945	1008	1071	1134	1197
64	640	704	768	832	896	960	1024	1088	1152	1216
65	650	715	780	845	910	975	1040	1105	1170	1235
66	660	726	792	858	924	990	1056	1122	1188	1254
67	670	737	804	871	938	1005	1072	1139	1206	1273
68	680	748	816	884	952	1020	1088	1156	1224	1292
69	690	759	828	897	966	1035	1104	1173	1242	1311
70	700	770	840	910	980	1050	1120	1190	1260	1130
71	710	781	852	923	994	1065	1136	1207	1278	1349

Number of Men to be detach'd.	*in the Margin are to be Detach'd.*									
	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29
2	40	42	44	46	48	50	52	54	56	58
3	60	63	66	69	72	75	78	81	84	87
4	80	84	88	92	96	100	104	108	112	116
5	100	105	110	115	120	125	130	135	140	145
6	120	126	132	138	144	150	156	162	168	174
7	140	147	154	161	168	175	182	189	196	203
8	160	168	176	184	192	200	208	216	224	232
9	180	189	198	207	216	225	234	243	252	261
10	200	210	220	230	240	250	260	270	280	290
11	220	231	242	253	264	275	286	297	308	319
12	240	252	264	276	288	300	312	324	336	348
13	260	273	286	299	312	325	338	351	364	377
14	280	294	308	322	336	350	364	378	392	406
15	300	315	330	345	360	375	390	405	420	435
16	320	336	352	368	384	400	416	432	448	464
17	340	357	374	391	408	425	442	459	476	493
18	360	378	396	414	432	450	468	486	504	522
19	380	399	418	437	456	475	494	513	532	551
20	400	420	440	460	480	500	520	540	560	580
21	420	441	462	483	504	525	546	567	588	609
22	440	462	484	506	528	550	572	594	616	638
23	460	483	506	529	552	575	598	621	644	667
24	480	504	528	552	576	600	624	648	672	696
25	500	525	550	575	600	625	650	675	700	725
26	520	546	572	598	624	650	676	702	728	754
27	540	567	594	621	648	675	702	729	756	783
28	560	588	616	644	672	700	728	756	784	812
29	580	609	638	667	696	725	754	783	812	841
30	600	630	660	690	720	750	780	810	840	870
31	620	651	682	713	744	775	806	837	868	899
32	640	672	704	736	768	800	832	864	896	928
33	660	693	726	759	792	825	858	891	924	957
34	680	714	748	782	816	850	884	918	952	986
35	700	735	770	805	840	875	910	945	980	1015
36	720	756	792	828	864	900	936	272	1008	1044

Numberof Men to be detaeh'd.	*Battalions from which the Number*									
	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29
37	740	777	814	851	888	925	962	996	1036	1073
38	760	798	836	874	912	950	988	1026	1064	1102
39	780	819	858	897	936	975	1014	1053	1092	1131
40	800	840	880	920	960	1000	1040	1080	1120	1160
41	820	861	902	943	984	1025	1066	1107	1148	1189
42	840	882	924	966	1008	1050	1092	1134	1176	1218
43	860	903	946	989	1032	1075	1118	1161	1204	1247
44	880	924	968	1012	1056	1100	1144	1188	1232	1276
45	900	945	990	1035	1080	1125	1170	1215	1260	1305
46	920	966	1012	1058	1104	1150	1196	1242	1288	1334
47	940	987	1034	1081	1128	1175	1222	1269	1316	1363
48	960	1008	1056	1104	1152	1200	1248	1296	1344	1392
49	980	1029	1078	1127	1176	1225	1274	1323	1372	1421
50	1000	1050	1100	1150	1200	1250	1300	1350	1400	1450
51	1020	1071	1122	1173	1224	1275	1326	1377	1428	1479
52	1040	1092	1144	1196	1248	1300	1352	1404	1456	1508
53	1060	1113	1166	1219	1272	1325	1378	1431	1484	1537
54	1080	1134	1188	1242	1296	1350	1404	1458	1512	1566
55	1100	1155	1210	1265	1320	1375	1430	1485	1540	1595
56	1120	1176	1232	1288	1344	1400	1456	1512	1568	1624
57	1140	1197	1254	1311	1368	1425	1482	1539	1596	1653
58	1160	1218	1276	1334	1392	1450	1508	1566	1624	1682
59	1180	1239	1298	1357	1416	1475	1534	1593	1652	1711
60	1200	1260	1320	1380	1440	1500	1560	1620	1680	1740
61	1220	1281	1342	1403	1464	1525	1586	1647	1708	1769
62	1240	1302	1364	1426	1488	1550	1612	1674	1736	1798
63	1260	1323	1386	1449	1512	1575	1638	1701	1764	1827
64	1280	1344	1408	1472	1536	1600	1664	1728	1792	1856
65	1300	1365	1430	1495	1560	1625	1690	1755	1820	1885
66	1320	1386	1452	1518	1584	1650	1716	1782	1848	1914
67	1340	1407	1474	1541	1608	1675	1742	1809	1876	1943
68	1360	1428	1496	1564	1632	1700	1768	1836	1904	1972
69	1380	1449	1518	1587	1656	1725	1794	1863	1932	2001
70	1400	1470	1540	1610	1680	1750	1820	1890	1960	2030
71	1420	1491	1562	1633	1704	1775	1846	1917	1988	2059

Number of Men to be detach'd.	*in the Margin are to be Detach'd.*									
	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39
2	60	62	64	66	68	70	72	74	76	78
3	90	93	96	99	102	105	108	111	114	117
4	120	124	128	132	136	140	144	148	152	156
5	150	155	160	165	170	175	180	185	190	195
6	180	186	192	198	204	210	216	222	228	234
7	210	217	224	231	238	245	252	259	266	273
8	240	248	256	264	272	280	288	296	304	312
9	270	279	288	297	306	315	324	333	342	351
10	300	310	320	330	340	350	360	370	380	390
11	330	341	352	363	374	385	396	407	418	429
12	360	372	384	396	408	420	432	444	456	468
13	390	403	416	429	442	455	468	481	494	507
14	420	434	448	462	476	490	504	518	532	546
15	450	465	480	495	510	525	540	555	570	585
16	480	496	512	528	544	560	576	592	608	624
17	510	527	544	561	578	595	612	629	646	663
18	540	558	576	594	612	630	648	666	684	702
19	570	589	608	627	646	665	684	703	722	741
20	600	620	640	660	680	700	720	740	760	780
21	630	651	672	693	714	735	756	777	798	819
22	660	682	704	726	748	770	792	814	836	858
23	690	713	736	759	782	805	828	851	874	897
24	720	744	768	792	816	840	864	888	912	936
25	750	775	800	825	850	875	900	925	950	975
26	780	806	832	858	884	910	936	962	988	1014
27	810	837	864	891	918	945	972	999	1026	1053
28	840	868	896	924	952	980	1008	1036	1064	1092
29	870	899	928	957	986	1015	1044	1073	1102	1131
30	900	930	960	990	1020	1050	1080	1110	1140	1170
31	930	961	992	1023	1054	1085	1116	1147	1178	1209
32	960	992	1024	1056	1088	1120	1152	1184	1216	1248
33	990	1023	1056	1089	1122	1155	1188	1221	1254	1287
34	1020	1054	1088	1122	1156	1190	1124	1258	1292	1326
35	1050	1085	1120	1155	1190	1225	1260	1295	1330	1365
36	1080	1116	1152	1188	1224	1260	1295	1332	1368	1404

Number of Men to be detach'd.	*Battalions from which the Number*									
	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39
37	1110	1147	1184	1221	1258	1295	1332	1369	1406	1443
38	1140	1178	1216	1254	1292	1330	1368	1406	1444	1482
39	1170	1209	1248	1287	1326	1365	1404	1443	1482	1521
40	1200	1240	1280	1320	1360	1400	1440	1480	1520	1560
41	1230	1271	1312	1353	1394	1435	1476	1517	1558	1599
42	1260	1302	1344	1386	1428	1470	1512	1554	1596	1638
43	1290	1333	1376	1419	1462	1505	1548	1591	1634	1677
44	1320	1364	1408	1452	1496	1540	1584	1628	1672	1716
45	1350	1395	1440	1480	1530	1575	1620	1665	1710	1755
46	1380	1426	1472	1518	1564	1610	1656	1702	1748	1794
47	1410	1457	1504	1551	1598	1645	1692	1739	1786	1833
48	1440	1488	1536	1584	1632	1680	1728	1776	1824	1872
49	1470	1519	1568	1617	1676	1715	1764	1813	1862	1911
50	1500	1550	1600	1650	1700	1750	1800	1850	1900	1950
51	1530	1581	1632	1683	1734	1785	1836	1887	1938	1989
52	1560	1612	1664	1716	1768	1820	1872	1924	1976	2028
53	1590	1643	1696	1749	1802	1855	1908	1961	2014	2067
54	1620	1674	1728	1782	1836	1890	1944	1998	2052	2106
55	1650	1705	1760	1815	1870	1925	1980	2035	2090	2145
56	1680	1736	1792	1848	1904	1960	2016	2072	2128	2184
57	1710	1767	1824	1881	1938	1995	2052	2109	2166	2223
58	1740	1798	1856	1914	1972	2030	2088	2146	2204	2262
59	1770	1829	1888	1947	2006	2065	2124	2183	2242	2301
60	1800	1860	1920	1980	2040	2100	2160	2220	2280	2340
61	1830	1891	1952	2013	2074	2135	2196	2257	2318	2379
62	1860	1922	1984	2046	2108	2170	2232	2294	2356	2418
63	1890	1953	2016	2079	2142	2205	2968	2331	2394	2457
64	1920	1984	2048	2112	2176	2240	2304	2368	2432	2496
65	1950	2015	2080	2145	2210	2275	2340	2405	2470	2535
66	1980	2046	2112	2178	2244	2310	2376	2442	2508	2574
67	2110	2077	2144	2211	2278	2345	2412	2479	2546	2613
68	2040	2168	2176	2244	2312	2380	2448	2516	2584	2652
69	2070	2139	2208	2277	2346	2415	2484	2553	2622	2691
70	2100	2170	2240	2310	2380	2450	2520	2590	2660	2730
71	2130	2201	2272	2343	2414	2485	2556	2627	2698	2769

Number of Men to be detach'd.	*in the Margin are to be Detach'd.*									
	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49
2	80	82	84	86	88	90	92	94	96	98
3	120	123	126	129	132	135	138	141	144	147
4	160	164	168	172	176	180	184	188	192	196
5	200	205	210	215	220	225	230	235	240	245
6	240	246	252	258	264	270	276	282	288	294
7	280	287	294	301	308	315	322	329	336	343
8	320	328	336	344	352	360	368	376	384	392
9	360	369	378	387	396	450	414	423	432	441
10	400	410	420	430	440	499	460	470	480	490
11	440	451	462	473	484	490	506	517	528	539
12	480	492	504	516	520	540	552	564	576	588
13	520	533	546	559	572	585	598	611	624	637
14	560	574	588	602	616	630	644	658	672	686
15	600	615	630	645	660	675	690	705	720	735
16	640	656	672	688	704	720	736	752	768	784
17	680	697	714	731	748	765	782	799	816	833
18	720	738	756	774	792	810	828	846	864	882
19	760	779	798	817	836	855	874	893	912	931
20	800	820	840	860	880	900	920	940	960	980
21	840	861	882	903	924	945	966	987	1008	1029
22	880	902	924	946	968	990	1012	1034	1056	1078
23	920	943	966	989	1012	1035	1058	1081	1104	1127
24	960	984	1008	1032	1056	1080	1104	1128	1152	1176
25	1000	1025	1050	1075	1100	1125	1150	1175	1200	1225
26	1040	1066	1092	1118	1144	1170	1196	1222	1248	1274
27	1080	1107	1134	1161	1188	1215	1142	1269	1296	1323
28	1120	1148	1176	1204	1232	1260	1288	1316	1344	1372
29	1160	1189	1218	1247	1276	1305	1334	1363	1392	1421
30	1200	1230	1260	1290	1320	1350	1380	1410	1440	1470
31	1240	1271	1302	1333	1364	1395	1426	1457	1488	1519
32	1280	1312	1344	1376	1408	1440	1472	1504	1536	1568
33	1320	1353	1386	1419	1452	1485	1518	1551	1584	1617
34	1360	1394	1428	1462	1496	1530	1564	1598	1632	1666
35	1400	1435	1470	1505	1540	1575	1610	1645	1680	1715
36	1440	1476	1512	1548	1584	1620	1656	1692	1728	1764

Number of Men to be detach'd.	*Battalions from which the Number*									
	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49
37	1480	1517	1554	1591	1628	1665	1702	1739	1776	1813
38	1520	1558	1596	1634	1672	1710	1748	1786	1824	1862
39	1560	1599	1638	1677	1716	1755	1794	1833	1872	1911
40	1600	1640	1680	1720	1760	1800	1840	1880	1920	1960
41	1640	1681	1722	1763	1804	1845	1886	1927	1968	2009
42	1680	1722	1764	1806	1848	1890	1932	1974	2016	2058
43	1720	1763	1806	1849	1892	1935	1978	2021	2064	2107
44	1760	1804	1848	1892	1936	1980	2024	2068	2112	2156
45	1800	1845	1890	1935	1980	2025	2070	2115	2160	2205
46	1840	1886	1932	1978	2024	2070	2116	2162	2208	2254
47	1880	1927	1974	2021	2068	2115	2162	2209	2256	2303
48	1920	1968	2016	2064	2112	2160	2208	2256	2304	2352
49	1960	2009	2058	2107	2156	2205	2254	2303	2352	2401
50	2000	2050	2100	2150	2200	2250	2300	2350	2400	2450
51	2040	2091	2142	2193	2244	2295	2346	2397	2448	2499
52	2080	2132	2184	2236	2288	2340	2392	2444	2496	2548
53	2120	2173	2226	2279	2332	2385	2438	2491	2554	2597
54	2160	2214	2268	2322	2376	2430	2484	2538	2592	2646
55	2200	2255	2310	2365	2420	2475	2530	2585	2640	2695
56	2240	2296	2352	2408	2464	2520	2576	2632	2688	2744
57	2280	2337	2394	2451	2508	2565	2622	2679	2736	2793
58	2320	2378	2436	2494	2552	2610	2668	2726	2784	2842
59	2360	2419	2478	2537	2596	2655	2714	2773	2832	2891
60	2400	2460	2520	2580	2640	2700	2760	2820	2880	2940
61	2440	2501	2562	2623	2684	2745	2806	2867	2928	2989
62	2480	2542	2604	2666	2728	2790	2852	2914	2976	3038
63	2520	2583	2646	2709	2772	2835	2898	2961	3024	3087
64	2560	2624	2688	2752	2816	2880	2944	3008	3072	3136
65	2600	2665	2730	2795	2860	2925	2990	3055	3120	3185
66	2640	2706	2772	2838	2904	2970	3036	3102	3168	3234
67	2680	2747	2814	2881	2948	3015	3082	3149	3216	3283
68	2720	2788	2856	2924	2992	3060	3128	3196	3264	3332
69	2760	2829	2898	2967	3036	3105	3174	3243	3312	3381
70	2800	2870	2940	3010	3080	3150	3220	3290	3360	3430
71	2840	2911	2982	3053	3124	3195	3266	3337	3408	3479

in the Margin are to be Detach'd.

Number of Men to be detach'd.	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59
2	100	102	104	106	108	110	112	114	116	118
3	150	153	156	159	162	165	168	171	174	177
4	200	204	208	212	216	220	224	228	232	236
5	250	255	260	265	270	275	280	285	290	295
6	300	306	312	318	324	330	336	342	348	354
7	350	357	364	371	378	385	392	399	406	413
8	400	408	416	424	432	440	448	456	464	472
9	450	459	468	477	486	495	504	513	522	531
10	500	510	520	530	540	550	560	570	580	590
11	550	561	572	583	594	605	616	627	638	649
12	600	612	624	636	648	660	672	684	696	708
13	650	663	676	689	702	715	728	741	754	767
14	700	714	728	742	756	770	784	798	812	826
15	750	765	780	795	810	825	840	855	870	885
16	800	816	832	848	864	880	896	912	928	944
17	850	867	884	901	918	935	952	969	986	1003
18	900	918	936	954	972	990	1008	1026	1044	1062
19	950	969	988	1007	1026	1045	1064	1083	1102	1121
20	1000	1020	1040	1060	1080	1100	1120	1140	1160	1180
21	1050	1071	1092	1113	1134	1155	1176	1197	1218	1239
22	1100	1122	1144	1166	1188	1210	1232	1254	1276	1298
23	1150	1173	1196	1219	1242	1265	1288	1311	1334	1357
24	1200	1224	1248	1272	1296	1320	1344	1368	1392	1416
25	1250	1275	1300	1325	1350	1375	1400	1425	1450	1475
26	1300	1326	1352	1378	1404	1430	1456	1482	1508	1534
27	1350	1377	1404	1431	1458	1485	1512	1539	1566	1593
28	1400	1428	1456	1484	1512	1540	1568	1596	1624	1652
29	1450	1479	1508	1537	1566	1595	1624	1653	1682	1711
30	1500	1530	1560	1590	1620	1650	1680	1710	1740	1770
31	1550	1581	1612	1643	1674	1705	1736	1767	1798	1829
32	1600	1632	1664	1696	1728	1760	1792	1824	1856	1888
33	1650	1683	1716	1749	1782	1815	1848	1881	1914	1947
34	1700	1734	1768	1802	1836	1870	1904	1938	1972	2006
35	1750	1785	1820	1855	1890	1925	1960	1995	2030	2065
36	1800	1836	1872	1908	1944	1980	2016	2052	2088	2124

Number of Men to be detach'd	*Battalions from which the Number*									
	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59
37	1850	1887	1924	1961	1998	2053	2072	2109	2146	2183
38	1900	1938	1976	2014	2052	2090	2128	2166	2204	2242
39	1950	1989	2028	2067	2106	2145	2184	2223	2262	2301
40	2000	2040	2080	2120	2160	2200	2240	2280	2320	2360
41	2050	2091	2132	2173	2214	2255	2296	2337	2378	2419
42	2100	2142	2184	2226	2263	2310	2352	2394	2436	2471
43	2150	2193	2236	2279	2322	2365	2408	2451	2494	2537
44	2200	2244	2288	2332	2376	2420	2464	2508	2552	2596
45	2250	2295	2340	2385	2430	2475	2520	2565	2610	2655
46	2300	2346	2392	2438	2484	2530	2576	2622	2668	2714
47	2350	2397	2444	2491	2538	2585	2632	2679	2726	2773
48	2400	2448	2496	2544	2592	2640	2688	2736	2784	2832
49	2450	2499	2548	2597	2646	2695	2744	2793	2842	2891
50	2500	2550	2600	2650	2700	2750	2800	2850	2900	2950
51	2550	2601	2652	2703	2754	2805	2856	2907	2958	3009
52	2600	2652	2704	2756	2808	2860	2912	2964	3016	3068
53	2650	2703	2756	2809	2862	2915	2968	3021	3074	3127
54	2700	2754	2808	2862	2916	2970	3024	3078	3132	3186
55	2750	2805	2860	2915	2970	3025	3080	3135	3190	3245
56	2800	2856	2912	2968	3024	3080	3136	3192	3248	3304
57	2850	2907	2964	3021	3078	3135	3192	3249	3306	3363
58	2900	2958	3016	3074	3132	3190	3248	3306	3364	3422
59	2950	3009	3068	3127	3186	3245	3304	3363	3422	3481
60	3000	3060	3120	3180	3240	3300	3360	3420	3480	3540
61	3050	3111	3172	3233	3294	3355	3416	3477	3538	3599
62	3100	3162	3224	3286	3348	3410	3472	3534	3596	3658
63	3150	3213	3276	3339	3402	3465	3528	3591	3654	3717
64	3200	3264	3328	3392	3456	3520	3584	3648	3712	3776
65	3250	3315	3380	3445	3510	3575	3640	3705	3770	3835
66	3300	3366	3432	3498	3564	3630	3696	3762	3828	3894
67	3350	3417	3484	3551	3618	3685	3782	3819	3886	3953
68	3400	3468	3536	3604	3672	3740	3808	3876	3944	4012
69	3450	3519	3588	3657	3726	3795	3884	3933	4002	4071
70	3500	3570	3640	3710	3780	3850	3920	3990	4060	4130
71	3550	3621	3692	3766	3834	3905	3976	4047	4118	4189

Number of Men to be detach'd.	*in the Margin are to be Detach'd.*									
	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69
2	120	122	124	126	128	130	132	134	136	138
3	180	183	186	189	192	195	198	201	204	207
4	240	244	248	252	256	260	264	268	272	276
5	300	305	310	315	320	325	330	335	340	345
6	360	366	372	378	384	390	396	402	408	414
7	420	427	434	441	448	455	462	469	476	483
8	480	488	496	504	512	520	528	536	544	552
9	540	549	558	567	576	585	594	603	612	621
10	600	610	620	630	640	650	660	670	680	690
11	660	671	682	693	704	715	726	737	748	759
12	720	732	744	756	768	780	792	804	816	823
13	780	793	806	819	832	845	858	871	884	897
14	840	854	868	882	896	910	924	938	952	966
15	900	915	930	945	960	975	990	1005	1020	1035
16	960	976	992	1008	1024	1040	1056	1072	1088	1104
17	1020	1037	1054	1071	1088	1105	1122	1139	1156	1173
18	1080	1098	1116	1134	1152	1170	1188	1206	1224	1242
19	1140	1159	1178	1197	1216	1235	1254	1273	1292	1311
20	1200	1220	1240	1260	1280	1300	1320	1340	1360	1380
21	1260	1281	1302	1323	1344	1365	1386	1407	1428	1449
22	1320	1342	1364	1386	1408	1430	1452	1474	1496	1518
23	1380	1403	1426	1449	1472	1495	1518	1541	1564	1587
24	1440	1464	1488	1512	1536	1560	1584	1608	1632	1656
25	1500	1525	1550	1575	1600	1625	1650	1675	1700	1725
26	1560	1586	1612	1638	1664	1690	1716	1742	1768	1794
27	1620	1647	1674	1701	1728	1755	1782	1809	1836	1863
28	1680	1708	1736	1764	1792	1820	1848	1876	1904	1930
29	1740	1769	1798	1827	1856	1885	1914	1943	1972	2001
30	1800	1830	1860	1890	1920	1950	1980	2010	2040	2070
31	1860	1891	1922	1953	1984	2015	2046	2077	2108	2139
32	1920	1952	1984	2016	2048	2080	2112	2144	2176	2208
33	1980	2013	2046	2079	2112	2145	2178	2211	2244	2277
34	2040	2074	2108	2142	2176	2210	2244	2278	2312	2346
35	2100	2135	2170	2205	2240	2275	2310	2345	2380	2415
36	2160	2196	2232	2268	2304	2340	2376	2412	2448	2484

Number of Men to be detach'd	*Battalions from which the Number*									
	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69
37	2220	2257	2294	2331	2368	2405	2442	2479	2516	2553
38	2280	2318	2356	2394	2432	2470	2508	2546	2584	2622
39	2340	2379	2818	2457	2496	2535	2574	2613	2652	2691
40	2400	2440	2480	2520	2560	2600	2640	2680	2720	2760
41	2460	2501	2542	2583	2624	2665	2706	2747	2788	2829
42	2520	2562	2604	2646	2688	2770	2732	2814	2856	2898
43	2580	2623	2666	2709	2752	2795	2838	2881	2924	2967
44	2640	2684	2728	2772	2816	2860	2904	2948	2992	3036
45	2700	2745	2790	2835	2880	2925	2970	3015	3060	3105
46	2760	2806	2852	2898	2944	2990	3036	3082	3128	3174
47	2820	2867	2914	2961	3008	3055	3102	3149	3196	3243
48	2880	2928	2976	3024	3072	3120	3168	3216	3264	3312
49	2940	2989	3038	3087	3136	3185	3234	3283	3332	3381
50	3000	3050	3100	3150	3200	3250	3300	3350	3400	3450
51	3060	3111	3162	3213	3264	3315	3366	3417	3468	3519
52	3120	3172	3234	3276	3328	3380	3432	3484	3536	3588
53	3180	3233	3286	3339	3392	3445	3498	3551	3604	3657
54	3240	3294	3348	3402	3456	3510	3564	3618	3672	3726
55	3300	3355	3410	3465	3520	3575	3630	3685	3740	3795
56	3360	3416	3472	3528	3584	3640	3696	3752	3808	3864
57	3420	3477	3534	3591	3648	3705	3762	3819	3876	3933
58	3480	3538	3596	3654	3712	3770	3828	3886	3944	4002
59	3540	3599	3658	3717	3776	3835	3894	3953	4012	4071
60	3600	3660	3720	3780	3840	3900	3960	4020	4080	4140
61	3660	3721	3782	3843	3904	3965	4026	4087	4148	4209
62	3720	3782	3844	3906	3968	4030	4092	4154	4216	4278
63	3780	3843	3906	3969	4032	4095	4158	4221	4284	4347
64	3840	3904	3968	4032	4096	4160	4224	4288	4352	4416
65	3900	3965	4030	4095	4160	4225	4290	4355	4420	4485
66	3960	4026	4092	4158	4224	4290	4356	4422	4488	4554
67	4020	4087	4154	4221	4288	4355	4422	4489	4556	4623
68	4080	4148	4216	4284	4352	4420	4488	4556	4624	4692
69	4140	4209	4278	4347	4416	4485	4554	4623	4692	4761
70	4200	4230	4340	4410	4480	4550	4620	4690	4760	4830
71	4260	4331	4402	4473	4544	4615	4686	4757	4828	4899

Number of Men to be detach'd.	*in the Margin are to be Detach'd.*									
	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79
2	140	142	144	146	148	150	152	154	156	158
3	210	213	216	219	222	225	228	231	234	237
4	280	284	288	292	296	300	304	308	312	316
5	350	355	360	365	370	375	380	385	390	395
6	420	426	432	438	444	450	456	462	468	474
7	490	497	504	511	518	525	532	539	546	553
8	560	568	576	584	592	600	608	616	624	632
9	630	639	648	657	666	675	684	693	702	711
10	700	710	720	730	740	750	760	770	780	790
11	770	781	792	803	814	825	836	847	858	869
12	840	852	864	876	888	900	912	924	936	948
13	910	923	936	949	962	975	988	1001	1014	1027
14	980	994	1008	1022	1036	1050	1064	1078	1092	1106
15	1050	1065	1080	1095	1110	1125	1140	1155	1170	1185
16	1120	1136	1152	1168	1184	1200	1216	1232	1248	1264
17	1190	1207	1224	1241	1258	1275	1292	1309	1326	1343
18	1260	1278	1296	1314	1332	1350	1368	1386	1404	1422
19	1330	1349	1368	1387	1406	1425	1444	1463	1482	1501
20	1400	1420	1440	1460	1480	1500	1520	1540	1560	1580
21	1470	1491	1512	1533	1554	1575	1596	1617	1638	1659
22	1540	1562	1584	1606	1628	1650	1672	1694	1716	1738
23	1610	1633	1656	1679	1702	1725	1748	1771	1794	1817
24	1680	1704	1728	1752	1776	1800	1824	1848	1872	1896
25	1750	1775	1860	1825	1850	1875	1900	1925	1950	1975
26	1820	1846	1872	1898	1924	1950	1976	2002	2028	2054
27	1890	1917	1944	1971	1998	2025	205[illegible]	2079	2106	2133
28	1960	1988	2016	2044	2072	2100	2128	2156	2184	2212
29	2030	2059	2088	2117	2146	2175	2204	2233	2262	2291
30	2100	2130	2160	2190	2220	2250	2280	2310	2340	2370
31	2170	2201	2232	2263	2294	2325	2356	2387	2418	2449
32	2240	2272	2304	2336	2368	2400	2432	2464	2496	2528
33	2310	2343	2376	2409	2442	2475	2508	2541	2574	2607
34	2380	2414	2448	2482	2516	2550	2584	2618	2652	2686
35	2450	2485	2520	2555	2590	2625	2660	2695	2730	2765
36	2520	2556	2592	2628	2664	2700	2736	2772	2808	2844

Number of Men to be detach'd.	*Battalions from which the Number*									
	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79
37	2590	2627	2664	2071	2738	2775	2812	2849	2886	2923
38	2660	2698	2736	2774	2812	2850	2888	2926	2964	3002
39	2730	2769	2808	2847	2886	2925	2964	3003	3042	3081
40	2800	2840	2880	2920	2960	3000	3040	3080	3120	3160
41	2870	2911	2952	2993	3034	3075	3116	3157	3198	3239
42	2940	2982	3024	3066	3108	3150	3192	3234	3276	3318
43	3010	3053	3096	3139	3182	3225	3268	3311	3354	3397
44	3080	3124	3168	3212	3256	3300	3344	3388	3432	3476
45	3150	3195	3240	3285	3330	3375	3420	3465	3510	3555
46	3220	3266	3312	3358	3404	3450	3496	3542	3588	3634
47	3290	3337	3384	3431	3478	3525	3572	3619	3666	3713
48	3360	3408	3456	3504	3552	3600	3648	3696	3744	3792
49	3430	3479	3528	3577	3626	3675	3724	3773	3822	3871
50	3500	3550	3600	3650	3700	3750	3800	3850	3900	3950
51	3570	3621	3672	3723	3774	3825	3876	3927	3978	4029
52	3640	3692	3744	3796	3848	3900	3952	4004	4056	4108
53	3710	3763	3816	3869	3922	3975	4028	4081	4134	4187
54	3780	3834	3888	3942	3996	4050	4104	4158	4212	4266
55	3850	3905	3960	4015	4070	4125	4180	4235	4290	4345
56	3920	3976	4032	4088	4144	4200	4256	4312	4368	4424
57	3990	4047	4104	4161	4218	4275	4332	4389	4446	4503
58	4060	4118	4176	4234	4292	4350	4408	4466	4524	4582
59	4130	4189	4248	4307	4366	4425	4484	4543	4602	4661
60	4200	4260	4320	4380	4440	4500	4560	4620	4680	4740
61	4270	4331	4392	4453	4514	4575	4636	4697	4758	4819
62	4340	4402	4464	4526	4588	4650	4712	4774	4836	4898
63	4410	4473	4536	4599	4662	4725	4788	4851	4914	4977
64	4480	4544	4608	4672	4736	4800	4864	4928	4992	5056
65	4550	4615	4680	4745	4810	4875	4940	5005	5070	5135
66	4620	4686	4752	4818	4884	4950	5016	5082	5148	5214
67	4690	4757	4824	4891	4958	5025	5092	5159	5226	5293
68	4760	4828	4896	4964	5032	5100	5168	5236	5304	5372
69	4830	4899	4968	5037	5106	5175	5244	5313	5382	5451
70	4900	4970	5040	5110	5180	5250	5320	5390	5460	5530
71	4970	5041	5112	5183	5354	5325	5396	5467	5538	5609

Number of Men to be detach'd.	*in the Margin are to be Detach'd.*									
	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89
2	160	162	164	166	168	170	172	174	176	178
3	240	243	246	249	252	255	258	261	264	264
4	320	324	328	332	336	340	344	348	352	356
5	400	405	410	415	420	425	430	435	440	445
6	480	486	492	498	504	510	516	522	528	534
7	560	567	574	581	588	595	602	609	616	623
8	640	648	656	664	672	680	688	696	704	712
9	720	729	738	747	756	765	774	783	792	801
10	800	810	820	830	840	850	860	870	880	890
11	880	891	902	913	924	935	946	957	968	979
12	960	972	984	996	1008	1020	1032	1044	1056	1068
13	1040	1053	1066	1079	1092	1105	1118	1131	1144	1157
14	1120	1134	1148	1162	1176	1190	1204	1218	1232	1246
15	1200	1215	1230	1245	1260	1275	1290	1305	1320	1335
16	1280	1296	1312	1328	1344	1360	1376	1392	1408	1424
17	1360	1377	1394	1411	1428	1445	1462	1479	1496	1513
18	1440	1458	1476	1494	1512	1530	1548	1566	1584	1602
19	1520	1539	1558	1577	1596	1625	1634	1653	1672	1691
20	1600	1620	1640	1660	1680	1700	1720	1740	1760	1780
21	1680	1701	1722	1743	1764	1785	1806	1827	1848	1869
22	1760	1782	1804	1826	1848	1870	1892	1914	1936	1958
23	1840	1863	1886	1909	1932	1955	1978	2001	2024	2047
24	1920	1944	1968	1992	2016	2040	2064	2088	2112	2136
25	2000	2025	2050	2075	2100	2125	2150	2175	2200	2225
26	2080	2106	2132	2158	2184	2210	2236	2262	2288	2314
27	2160	2187	2214	2241	2268	2295	2322	2349	2376	2403
28	2240	2268	2296	2324	2352	2380	2408	2436	2464	2582
29	2320	2349	2378	2407	2436	2465	2494	2523	2552	2491
30	2400	2430	2460	2490	2520	2550	2580	2610	2640	2670
31	2480	2511	2542	2573	2604	2635	2666	2697	2728	2759
32	2560	2592	2624	2656	2688	2720	2752	2784	2816	2848
33	2640	2673	2706	2739	2772	2805	2838	2871	2904	2937
34	2720	2754	2788	2822	2856	2890	2924	2958	2992	3026
35	2800	2835	2870	2905	2940	2975	3010	3045	3080	3115
36	2880	2916	2952	2988	3024	3060	3096	3132	3168	3204

Number of Men to be detach'd	*Battalions from which the Number*									
	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89
37	2960	2997	3034	3071	3108	3145	3182	3219	3256	3293
38	3040	3078	3116	3154	3192	3230	3268	3306	3344	3382
39	3120	3159	3198	3237	3276	3315	3354	3393	3432	3471
40	3200	3240	3280	3320	3360	3400	3440	3480	3520	3560
41	3280	3321	3362	3403	3444	3485	3526	3567	3608	3649
42	3360	340.	3444	3486	35:8	3570	3612	3654	3696	3738
43	3440	3483	3526	3569	3612	3655	3698	3741	3784	3827
44	3520	3564	3608	3652	3696	3740	3784	3828	387:	3916
45	3600	3645	3690	3735	3780	3825	3870	3915	3960	4005
46	3680	3726	3772	3818	3864	3910	3956	4002	4048	4094
47	3760	3807	3854	3901	3948	3995	4042	4089	4136	4183
48	3840	3888	3936	3984	4032	4080	4128	4176	42 4	4272
49	3920	3969	4018	4067	4116	4165	4214	4263	4312	4361
50	4000	4050	4100	415/	4200	4250	4300	4350	4400	4450
51	4080	4131	4182	4233	4284	4335	4386	4437	4488	4539
52	4170	4212	4264	4316	4368	4420	4472	4524	4576	4628
53	4240	4293	4346	4399	4452	4505	4558	4611	4664	4717
54	4320	4374	4428	4482	4536	4590	4644	4698	4752	4806
55	4400	4455	4510	4565	4620	4675	4730	4785	4840	4895
56	4480	4536	4592	4648	4704	4760	4816	4872	4928	4984
57	4560	4617	4674	4731	4788	4845	4902	4959	5016	5073
58	4640	4698	4756	4814	4872	4930	4988	5046	5104	5162
59	4720	4779	4838	4897	4956	5015	5074	5133	5192	5251
60	4800	4860	4920	4980	5040	5100	5160	5220	5280	5340
61	4880	4941	5002	5063	5124	5185	5246	5307	5368	5429
62	4960	5022	5084	5146	5208	5270	5332	5394	5456	5518
63	5040	5103	5166	5229	5292	5355	5418	5481	5544	5607
64	5120	5184	5248	5312	5376	5440	5504	5568	5632	5696
65	5200	5265	5330	5395	5460	5525	5590	5655	5720	5785
66	5280	5346	5412	5478	5544	5610	5676	5742	5808	5874
67	5360	5427	5494	5561	5628	5695	5762	5829	5896	5963
68	5440	5508	5576	5644	5712	5780	5848	5916	5984	6052
69	5520	5589	5658	5727	5796	5865	5934	6003	6072	6141
70	5600	5670	5740	5810	5880	5950	6020	6090	6160	6230
71	5680	5751	5822	5893	5964	6035	6016	6177	6248	6319

Number of Men to be detach'd.	*in the Margin are to be Detach'd.*									
	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99
2	180	182	184	186	188	190	192	194	196	198
3	270	273	276	279	282	285	288	291	294	297
4	360	364	368	372	376	380	384	388	392	396
5	450	455	460	465	470	475	480	485	490	495
6	540	546	552	558	564	570	576	582	588	594
7	630	637	644	651	658	665	672	679	686	693
8	720	728	736	744	752	760	768	776	784	792
9	810	819	888	837	846	855	864	873	882	891
10	900	910	920	930	940	950	960	970	980	990
11	990	1001	1012	1023	1034	1045	1056	1067	1078	1089
12	1080	1092	1104	1116	1128	1140	1152	1164	1176	1188
13	1170	1183	1196	1209	1222	1235	1248	1261	1274	1287
14	1260	1274	1288	1302	1316	1530	1344	1358	1372	1386
15	1350	1365	1380	1395	1410	1425	1440	1455	1470	1485
16	1440	1456	1472	1488	1504	1520	1536	1552	1568	1584
17	1530	1547	1664	1581	1598	1615	1632	1649	1666	1683
18	1620	1638	1656	1674	1692	1710	1728	1746	1764	1782
19	1710	1729	1748	1767	1786	1805	1824	1843	1862	1881
20	1800	1820	1840	1860	1880	1900	1920	1940	1960	1980
21	1890	1911	1932	1953	1974	1995	2016	2037	2058	2079
22	1980	2002	2024	2046	2068	2090	2112	2134	2156	2178
23	2070	2093	2116	2139	2162	2185	2208	2231	2254	2277
24	2160	2184	2208	2232	2256	2280	2304	2328	2352	2376
25	2250	2275	2300	2325	2350	2375	2400	2425	2450	2475
26	2340	2366	2392	2418	2444	2470	2496	2522	2548	2574
27	2430	2457	2484	2511	2538	2565	2592	2619	2646	2673
28	2520	2548	2576	2604	2632	2660	2688	2716	2744	2772
29	2610	2639	2668	2697	2726	2755	2784	2813	2842	2871
30	2700	2730	2760	2790	2820	2850	2880	2910	2940	2970
31	2790	2821	2852	2883	2914	2945	2976	3007	3038	3069
32	2880	2912	2944	2976	3008	3040	3072	3104	3136	3168
33	2970	3003	3036	3069	3102	3135	3168	3201	3234	3267
34	3060	3094	3128	3162	3196	3230	3264	3298	3332	3366
35	3150	3185	3220	3255	3290	3325	3360	3395	3430	3465
36	3240	3276	3312	3348	3384	3420	3456	3492	3528	3564

Number of Men to be detach'd	*Battalions from which the Number*									
	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99
37	3330	3367	3404	3441	3478	3515	3552	3589	3626	3663
38	3420	3458	3496	3534	3572	3610	3648	3686	3724	3762
39	3510	3549	3588	3627	3666	3705	3744	3783	3822	3861
40	3600	3640	3680	3720	3760	3800	3840	3880	3920	3960
41	3690	3731	3772	3813	3854	3895	3936	3977	4018	4059
42	3780	3822	3864	3906	3948	3990	4032	4074	4116	4158
43	3870	3913	3956	3999	4042	4085	4128	4171	4214	4257
44	3960	4004	4048	4092	4136	4180	4224	4268	4312	4356
45	4050	4095	4140	4185	4230	4275	4320	4365	4410	4455
46	4140	4186	4232	4278	4324	4370	4416	4462	4508	4554
47	4230	4277	4324	4371	4418	4465	4512	4559	4606	4653
48	4320	4368	4416	4464	4512	4560	4608	4656	4704	4752
49	4410	4459	4508	4557	4606	4655	4704	4753	4802	4851
50	4500	4550	4600	4650	4700	4750	4800	4850	4900	4950
51	4590	4641	4692	4743	4794	4845	4869	4947	4998	5049
52	4680	4732	4784	4836	4888	4940	5992	5044	5096	5148
53	4770	4823	4876	4929	4982	5035	5088	5141	5194	5247
54	4860	4914	4968	5022	5076	5130	5184	5238	5292	5346
55	4950	5005	5060	5115	5170	5225	5280	5338	5390	5445
56	5040	5096	5152	5208	5264	5320	5376	5432	5488	5544
57	5130	5187	5244	5301	5358	5415	5472	5529	5586	5643
58	5220	5278	5336	5394	5452	5510	5568	5626	5684	5742
59	5310	5369	5428	5487	5546	5605	5664	5723	5782	5841
60	5400	5460	5520	5580	5640	5700	5760	5820	5880	5940
61	5490	5551	5612	5673	5734	5795	5856	5917	5978	6039
62	5580	5642	5704	5766	5828	5890	5952	6014	6076	6138
63	5670	5733	5796	5859	5922	5985	6048	6111	6174	6237
64	5760	5824	5888	5952	6016	6080	6144	6208	6272	6336
65	5850	5915	5980	6045	6110	6175	6040	6305	6370	6435
66	5940	6006	6072	6138	6204	6270	6336	6402	6468	6534
67	6030	6097	6164	6231	6298	6365	6432	6499	6566	6633
68	6120	6188	6256	6524	6392	6460	6528	6596	6664	6732
69	6210	6279	6348	6417	6486	6555	6624	6693	6762	6831
70	6300	6370	6440	6510	6580	6650	6720	6790	6860	6930
71	6390	6461	6532	6604	6674	3745	6816	6887	6958	7029

Number of Men to be detach'd.	*in the Margin are to be Detach'd.*									
	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109
2	200	202	204	206	208	210	212	214	216	218
3	300	303	306	309	312	315	318	321	324	327
4	400	404	408	412	416	420	424	428	432	436
5	500	505	510	515	520	525	530	535	540	545
6	600	606	612	618	624	630	636	642	648	654
7	700	707	714	721	728	735	742	749	756	763
8	800	808	816	824	832	840	848	856	864	872
9	900	909	918	927	936	945	954	963	972	981
10	1000	1010	1020	1030	1040	1050	1060	1070	1080	1090
11	1100	1111	1122	1133	1144	1155	1166	1177	1188	1199
12	1200	1212	1224	1236	1248	1260	1272	1284	1296	1308
13	1300	1313	1326	1339	1352	1365	1378	1391	1404	1417
14	1400	1414	1428	1442	1456	1470	1484	1498	1512	1526
15	1500	1515	1530	1545	1560	1575	1590	1605	1620	1635
16	1600	1616	1632	1648	1664	1680	1696	1712	1728	1744
17	1700	1717	1734	1751	1768	1785	1802	1819	1836	1853
18	1800	1818	1836	1854	1872	1890	1908	1926	1944	1962
19	1900	1919	1938	1957	1976	1995	2014	2033	2052	2071
20	2000	2020	2040	2060	2080	2100	2120	2140	2160	2180
21	2100	2121	2142	2163	2184	2205	2226	2247	2268	2289
22	2200	2222	2224	2266	2288	2310	2332	2354	2376	2398
23	2300	2323	2346	2369	2392	2415	2438	2461	2484	2507
24	2400	2424	2448	2472	2496	2520	2544	2568	2592	2616
25	2500	2525	2550	2575	2600	2625	2650	2675	2700	2725
26	2600	2626	2652	2678	2704	2730	2756	2782	2808	2834
27	2700	2727	2754	2781	2808	2835	2862	2889	2916	2943
28	2800	2828	2856	2884	2912	2940	2968	2996	3024	3052
29	2900	2929	2958	2987	3016	3045	3074	3103	3132	3161
30	3000	3030	3060	3090	3120	3150	3180	3210	3240	3270
31	3100	3131	3162	3193	3224	3255	3286	3317	3348	3379
32	3200	3232	3264	3296	3328	3360	3392	3424	3456	3488
33	3300	3333	3366	3399	3432	3465	3498	3531	3564	3597
34	3400	3434	3468	3502	3536	3570	3604	3638	3672	3706
35	3500	3535	3570	3605	3640	3675	3710	3745	3780	3815
36	3600	3636	3672	3708	3744	3780	3816	3852	3888	3924

Number of Men to be detach'd.	Battalions from which the Number									
	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109
37	3700	3737	3774	3811	3848	3885	3922	3959	3996	4033
38	3800	3838	3876	3914	3952	3990	4028	4066	4104	4142
39	3900	3939	3978	4017	4056	4095	4134	4173	4212	4251
40	4000	4040	4080	4120	4160	4200	4240	4280	4320	4360
41	4100	4141	4182	4223	4264	4305	4346	4387	4428	4469
42	4200	4242	4284	4326	4368	4410	4452	4494	4536	4578
43	4300	4343	4386	4429	4472	4515	4558	4601	4644	4687
44	4400	4444	4488	4532	4576	4620	4664	4708	4752	4796
45	4500	4545	4590	4635	4680	4725	4770	4815	4860	4905
46	4600	4646	4692	4738	4784	4830	4876	4922	4968	5014
47	4700	4747	4794	4841	4888	4935	4982	5029	5076	5123
48	4800	4848	4896	4944	4992	5040	5088	5136	5184	5232
49	4900	4949	4998	5047	5096	5145	5194	5243	5292	5341
50	5000	5050	5100	5150	5200	5250	5300	5350	5400	5450
51	5100	5151	5202	5253	5304	5355	5406	5457	5508	5559
52	5200	5252	5304	5356	5408	5460	5512	5564	5616	5668
53	5300	5353	5406	5459	5512	5565	5618	5671	5724	5777
54	5400	5454	5508	5562	5616	5670	5724	5778	5832	5886
55	5500	5555	5610	5665	5720	5775	5830	5885	5940	5995
56	5600	5656	5712	5768	5824	5880	5936	5992	6048	6104
57	5700	5757	5814	5871	5928	5985	6042	6099	6156	6213
58	5800	5858	5916	5974	6032	6090	6148	6206	6264	6322
59	5900	5959	6018	6077	6136	6195	6254	6313	6372	6431
60	6000	6060	6120	6180	6240	6300	6360	6420	6480	6540
61	6100	6161	6222	6283	6344	6405	6466	6527	6588	6649
62	6200	6262	6324	6386	6448	6510	6472	6634	6696	6758
63	6300	6363	6426	6489	6552	6615	6678	6741	6804	6867
64	6400	6464	6528	6592	6656	6720	6784	6848	6912	6976
65	6500	6565	6630	6695	6760	6825	6890	6955	7020	7085
66	6600	6666	6732	6798	6864	6930	6996	7062	7128	7194
67	6700	6767	6834	6901	6968	7035	7102	7169	7236	7303
68	6800	6868	6936	7004	7072	7140	7208	7276	7344	7412
69	6900	6969	7038	7107	7176	7245	7314	7383	7452	7521
70	7000	7070	7140	7210	7280	7350	7420	7490	7560	7630
71	7100	7171	7242	7313	7384	7455	7526	7597	7668	739

CHAP. XX.

Manual Exerciſe and Evolutions of the Cavalry.

ARTICLE I.

Directions for the Forming of Squadrons, Poſting the Officers, Sending for and Returning the Standards, &c.

THIS preſumed that the Troopers are taught to ride, and the Horſes dreſs'd, in order to perform the following Exerciſe.

The proper Arms for a Trooper are a Carbine, Piſtols, and a Broad-Sword.

The Carbine is to be placed in a Bucket (which is fixt by Straps to the Right Side of the Saddle, ſo as to hang below the Holſter-pipe) and to be faſtened about twelve Inches above the Lock, by a Strap that comes from the Bur, or Fore-part of the Saddle, the Barrel upward, and running between the Man's Right-arm and Side.

The Sword is to be placed on the Man's Left Thigh, the Point ſomething lower than the Hilt. As to the placing of the Piſtols, and other Accoutrements, it is ſo generally known, that it will be unneceſſary to mention it. If they link with Collars (as is cuſtomary at preſent) the End is to be faſten'd to the Right Side of the Saddle, above the Holſter-pipe, by a running Knot.

When the Regiment is order'd to draw out to Exerciſe, the Troopers are to Parade at their Captain's Quarters, or Place appointed by him compleatly arm'd and accoutred. The Lieutenant, Cornet, and Quarter-Maſter are to be there likewiſe at the Time appointed; from which Place the Captain or Officer commanding the Troop is to march them to the general Place of Parade, where they are to Form in Squadron.

A Regiment conſiſting of nine Troops is form'd into three Squadrons, three Troops in each. The firſt Squadron is compos'd of the Colonel's, firſt and fourth Captains Troops. The ſecond Squadron of the Lieutenant-Colonel's, ſecond and fifth Captains Troops. The third Squadron of the Major's, third and ſixth Captains Troops.

A Regiment of ſix Troops is form'd into two Squadrons. The firſt Squadron is compos'd of the Colonel's, Major's, and ſecond Captain's Troops. The ſecond Squadron is compos'd of the Lieutenant-Colonel's, firſt and third Captain's Troops.

When the Troops are come to the general Place of Parade, and Form in Squadron, they are to draw up in three Ranks (which is called three deep) and to complete their Files. The Officers are to remain at the Head of their Troops, the Captain in the Center, the Lieutenant on the Right, and the Cornet on the Left, and the Quarter-Maſter in the Rear of the Troop. Care is to be taken that the Troops are well ſiz'd, that is, the talleſt Men and Horſes are to be in the Front and Rear-Ranks, and the loweſt in the Center.

The Troops that compoſe the ſeveral Squadrons are to draw up in the following manner in Squadron. The eldeſt Troop of each Squadron is to be on the Right, the ſecond on the Left, and the youngeſt in the Center; except the Lieutenant-Colonel's Squadron, which is on the Left of the Regiment, and is to draw up the Reverſe; the Lieutenant-Colonel's Troop is to be on the Left, the next eldeſt on the Right, and the youngeſt in the Center.

If a Regiment be compos'd of more than two Squadrons, the others are to be drawn up in the ſame Manner as the firſt; but in caſe the Lieutenant Colonel's Squadron be ſeparated from the Colonel's, the Lieutenant-Colonel's Troop is then to take the Right.

A Regiment conſiſting of three Squadrons is to be drawn up as follows; the eldeſt Squadron on the Right, the ſecond on the Left, and the youngeſt in the Center. The Interval or Diſtance between each Squadron, is to be equal to the Ground one Squadron ſtands on. The Diſtance between the Ranks, when drawn up in Squadron, is to be at *Open Order*; which is explained in the following Article.

The ſeveral Diſtances between the Ranks are, *Open Order*, *Order*, *Cloſe Order*, and *Cloſe to the Croop*.

Open

Open Order, is the Diſtance between each Rank when drawn up into Squadron, which Diſtance muſt be equal to half the Front of the Squadron.

Order, is the Diſtance the Ranks are to be at when the Squadrons March, which is equal to a Third of the Front.

Cloſe Order, is the Diſtance the Ranks are to be at, when Moving up to an Enemy, which Diſtance is, that four Men may juſt wheel round.

Cloſe to the Croop, is as cloſe as they can be; in which Poſition they are to charge.

When the Squadrons are Form'd, the Major or Officer that is to Exerciſe the Regiment, is to order the Officers to take their Poſts, by ſaying, *Officers to your Poſts.* The Officers of each Squadron are to take their Poſts at the Head of their Squadrons by Seniority of Commiſſion, that is, the eldeſt Captain on the Right, the Second on the Left, the next Eldeſt on the Right, and the next Eldeſt Officer on the Left, and ſo on 'till the Youngeſt comes in the Center: taking care to divide the Ground equally between them, ſo as to cover the Front of the Squadron. When the Officers have taken their Poſts, they are to dreſs in the ſame Rank, and to be advanc'd a Horſe's Length before the Front Rank of Men. The Quarter-Maſters are to poſt themſelves by Seniority in the Rear of their reſpective Squadrons, a Horſe's Length behind the Rear-Rank. The Trumpets are to draw up on the Right of their Squadrons even with the Front-Rank of Men, leaving a ſmall Interval between them and the Squadron. The Kettle-Drummer is to place himſelf on the Right of the Trumpets of the Colonel's Squadron This Rule does not extend to the Lieutenant-Colonel's Squadron, when the Colonel's is preſent, but the Officers are to take their Poſts from the Left to the Right, and the Quarter-Maſters of that Squadron are to do the ſame, and the Trumpets are to place themſelves on the Left, as the others do on the Right.

As ſoon as the Officers are poſted in the Manner aforeſaid, the Standards are to be ſent for in the following Manner, The Trumpets and Kettle-Drummer are to be order'd to the Center Squadron, where they are to be form'd into Ranks according to their Number, and the Kettle-Drummer advanced before them, all facing outward. This being done, the Major is to order the eldeſt Cornet of that Squadron, to march for the Standards, with a Quarter-Maſter, and four, five or more Files from the Center of that Squa-

dron, the Cornet marching at the Head of the ſaid Detachment, the Trumpets and Kettle-Drummer before him, and the Quarter-Maſter in the Rear of the whole. When the Cornet comes to the Place where the Standards are lodg'd (which is always at the Colonel or Commanding Officer's of the Regiment's Quarters) he is to Form his Detachment into a Rank entire, facing the Houſe, by ſaying, *To the Right or Left*, (according as it ſtands) *Form a Rank entire, March.* The Kettle-Drummer and Trumpets are to form into a Rank entire with the Detachment. When this is done, the Cornet is to order the Detachment (the Men that are to carry the Standards excepted) to draw their Swords, (it being the Cuſtom of the Cavalry to go for the Standards without Sound of Trumpet or drawn Swords) which being done, and the Standards receiv'd, which muſt be by thoſe of the Front-Rank, he is to form his Detachment by theſe Words of Command, *To the Right*, (*or Left*) *Form your Ranks, March.* At which the Trumpets are likewiſe to form as before. The Cornet is then to march back to the Regiment with the Standards, the Trumpets ſounding a March; but inſtead of marching along the Front of the Regiment, as they do in the Foot, he is to march along the Rear, 'till he comes to the Interval, which was made by their Marching out, and then he is to wheel and march his Men into their former Places. As ſoon as the Standards are come near the Regiment, the Major is to order the Men to draw their Swords; which is a Ceremony always to be paid the Standards, both in bringing them to, and carrying them from the Regiment. When the Standards are come, the Eldeſt Cornets of the Right and Left Squadrons are to march with three Men from the Center of the Front-Rank, along the Front, and when they come oppoſite to the Standards, they are to Halt, and to order thoſe Men that are to carry the Standards to return their Swords, and take their ſeveral Standards. The Cornets are then to march back with their Standards, taking with them their Reſpective Trumpets, who are to ſound a March, and as ſoon as they have got to the Center of the Intervals between the Squadrons, they are to wheel to the Rear, and march 'till they come oppoſite to the Intervals of the Front and Center Ranks, and then to wheel to their Squadrons and march between thoſe Ranks, 'till they come to their Places, and then to wheel up. The Trumpets are then to go to their Poſts, and the Regiment to return their Swords.

When

When the Standards are to be return'd, the Major is to order the Cornets of the Right and Left Squadrons to carry the Standards to the Center Squadron, which they are to do in the ſame manner they brought 'em from thence, the Trumpets ſounding a march; and when they have deliver'd them to that Squadron, the Cornets are to return with the Men to their Squadrons, marching between the Front and Center Ranks, 'till they come to their own Places, and then wheel up. The Kettle-Drummer and Trumpets are to remain with the Standards, and form their Ranks as they did before. This being done, and the Cornets of the other Squadrons return'd, the Cornet that brought the Standards is to march back with the ſame Number of Files (the Trumpets ſounding a March) and lodge the Standards, drawing up his Men in a Rank entire as he did when he receiv'd them, and then to return the Swords, form them into Ranks, and march back to the Regiment without ſound of Trumpet.

Note, Before the Standards are carried to the Center Squadron, the Major is to order the Regiment to draw their Swords, and as ſoon as the Standards are gone, to return them.

A Regiment of two Squadrons muſt ſend a Detachment from the firſt Squadron for the Standards. All the other Ceremonies are to be obſerv'd as before-mention'd.

The Standards being brought to their reſpective Squadrons, the next thing to be done is, the Telling off, or Dividing the Several Squadrons into proper Diviſions for the Exerciſe. *Firſt*, each Squadron is to be told off by *Files*, then *Ranks by Fours*; *Quarter-Ranks by three Diviſions*; and *Half-Ranks*.

Telling off by Files. You begin at the Right of each Squadron, and ſay to the Right-hand Files, *You ſtand*; to the Second File, *You move*; the Third, *You ſtand*; the Fourth, *You move*; and ſo on thro' the Squadrons.

Ranks by Fours. You begin at the Right of each Rank, and ſay to the Firſt Man, *You are the Right-hand Man of Ranks by Fours*; to the Fourth Man, *You are the Left-hand Man of Ranks by Fours*; to the Fifth Man, *You are the Right-hand Man*, &c. to the Eighth Man, *You are the Left-hand Man*, &c. to the Ninth, *You are the Right*, &c. to the Twelfth, *You are the Left*, &c. and So on thro' each Squadron.

Quarter-Ranks. Each Squadron is to be divided into four equal Parts, which are to be call'd, *First, Second, Third and Fourth Quarter-Ranks*, beginning at the Right, by ſaying to the Right-hand Man, *You are the Right-hand Man of the First Quarter-Rank*; and to the Left-hand Man of that Quarter-Rank, *You are the Left*; and ſo on to the reſt in the ſame manner.

Ranks by three Diviſions. Each Squadron is to be divided into three equal Parts. The Right and Left-Hand Men are to be told in the ſame manner as the others.

Ranks by two Diviſions. Each Squadron is to be divided into two equal Parts. The Right and Left-Hand Men are to be told as above.

As the Telling off, or dividing each Squadron into the above-mention'd Diviſions, will prove tedious by doing it diſtinctly thro' every Rank, I will lay down a ſhorter Method of performing it.

The Major is to order the Center and Rear Ranks to cloſe to the Croop, at which Time the Officers are to advance ſo far, that the Major or Adjutant may go with Eaſe between them and the Front-Rank. By the Ranks being clos'd, the telling off in the Front will ſerve for the other Ranks. When they are told off, the Ranks are to be open'd backward to Open Order, and the Officers, at the ſame time, are to Rein back to their former Diſtance.

For the better underſtanding the ſeveral Wheelings, it will be proper to give an Explanation. The Circle is divided into four Parts. Wheeling to the Right or Left is a Quarter of the Circle; to the Right or Left-about is one Half; the Circle entire is quite round 'till you come on the former Ground.

Rules for Wheeling.

When you wheel to the Right, you are to cloſe to the Right, and look to the Left; and when you wheel to the Left, you are to cloſe to the Left, and look to the Right. This Rule will ſerve for all Wheeling by Ranks; but when you wheel in Squadron, or by Diviſions, the following Rules muſt be obſerv'd.

When you wheel by Squadron, or by Diviſions, the three Ranks wheel together, the Center and Rear-Ranks wheeling directly in the Rear of the Front-Rank, keeping their proper Diſtance, and each Man covering his File-Leader.

The

The firſt Rank of each Squadron or Diviſion is to obſerve the ſame Rules as are already given; that is, when you wheel to the Right to cloſe to the Right, and look to the Left; and when you wheel to the Left, to cloſe to the Left, and look to the Right: but the Center and Rear-Ranks are to cloſe to the Left, when they wheel to the Right, that the Men may keep oppoſite to their File-Leaders, and thoſe Ranks are to move quicker than the Front, the Circumference they take being larger.

The Center and Rear-Ranks are to take particular Care, not to cloſe their Ranks in wheeling, but to keep directly behind their File-Leaders. All Wheelings are to be done briskly, but no Man to exceed a large Trot. The Motion of each Man is quicker or ſlower according to the Diſtance he is from the Right or Left; Thus, when you wheel to the Right, each Man from the Right moves quicker than his Right-Hand Man, the Circle that every Man wheels being larger according to the Diſtance he is from the Right. When you wheel to the Left, the Motion of every Man is alſo different, according to the Diſtance he is from the Left.

All things being thus diſpos'd, they may proceed to the Exerciſe; unleſs they are to perform it before a General Officer; for the Reception of whom I will give ſome Directions at the End of this Chapter; as alſo the Manner of paſſing in Review, and Officers Saluting.

The Major, or Officer that is to exerciſe the Regiment, is to place himſelf oppoſite to the Center of the Center-Squadron, if the Regiment conſiſts of three Squadrons; but if only of two, he is to place himſelf oppoſite to the Center of the Interval between them.

Thoſe who think the following Exerciſe too long to be perform'd at one Time, (as, no doubt, moſt People will) may very eaſily ſhorten it, by leaving out thoſe things which they do not approve of, which, in my Opinion, is a ſufficient Anſwer to an Objection of that Kind.

The Manual Exerciſe on Horſe-back.

ARTICLE II.

I. *Center and Rear-Ranks, move forward to cloſe Order. March.*

[*Note, that no Movement is to be made 'till the Word* March *is given.*]

The two Rear-Ranks of each Squadron march forward and cloſe ſo near, that only four Men may juſt wheel round between each Rank. The Quarter-Maſters are to be on the Right of their reſpective Squadrons, to give the Ranks their proper Diſtance, and to dreſs them, and then repair to their Poſts in the Rear. This Movement is to be done at a Walk, and the Men are to obſerve their Right and Left-hand Men, that the Rank may be even in Marching.

II. *Officers rein back into the Front-Rank.*

At this Word of Command, the Front-Rank of each Squadron is to open a little to the Right and Left, to make proper Intervals for the Officers to fall into, and the Officers are to wait for the following Word of Command.

III. *March.*

At this the Commiſſion Officers rein back in a direct Line into the Front-Rank of Men and dreſs with them, and the Cornets are to take the Standards from the Men.

IV. *Shorten your Bridles.* 5 Motions.

Firſt, ſeize the upper End of the Reins of the Bridle, which is to lie on the Right Side of the Horſe, with the Right Hand. 2. Bring it up as high as your Chin, keeping your Right Elbow on a Level with the Shoulder, which is called Square. 3. Slip your Left Hand along the Reins of the Bridle, and take hold of the Loop or Button, which is near the upper End of the Reins. 4. Slip the Loop down with the Left Hand as low as the Pummel of the Saddle; and 5thly, bring the Right Hand down with Life on the Right Holſter-

Holſter-Cap, quitting the Reins of the Bridle with both Hands. [*Note, every Motion is to be done briskly, and the Time between each is to be the ſame as is practis'd in the Foot Exerciſe, of telling One, Two.*]

The Officers are not to perform theſe Motions.

V. *Make ready your Carbines.*

Unfaſten the Strap that holds the Carbine, then bring your Arm under the Carbine, and take hold of it about the middle with the Right-Hand, letting it lie between the Fore-Finger and Thumb, and raiſing it a little, that the Muzzle may run up by the Point of the Right Shoulder.

VI. *Advance your Carbines.* 3 Motions.

Firſt, raiſe the Carbine upright in the Bucket, ſlipping your Right-Hand at the ſame Time up the Barrel as high as your Shoulder, with the Elbow Square. 2. Slip the Right-Hand down the Barrel as low as you can without inclining your Body, and graſp it with a full Hand. 3. Bring up the Carbine with the Right-Hand, and place the But-end on the upper Part of the Right Thigh near the Body, turning the Barrel towards you at the ſame time, the Muzzle ſlopping to the Front.

VII. *Handle your Swivels.* 2 Motions.

Firſt, ſeize the Swivel with your Left-Hand, placing the Thumb on the Spring. 2. Bring the Swivel to the Left Side of the Carbine oppoſite to the Ring which you are to Spring it to, raiſing your Elbow as high as your Hand.

VIII. *Spring your Carbines.* 3 Motions.

Firſt, open the Swivel, by preſſing your Left-Thumb, and put it into the Ring of the Carbine, and then eaſe your Thumb that the Spring may cloſe. 2. Quit the Carbine with the Right-Hand, and take hold of the ſmall Part of the Butt a little below the Lock with a full hand. 3. Quit the Swivel with the Left-Hand, and bring it to its proper Place.

IX. *Drop*

IX. *Drop your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

Drop the Carbine on the Right Side, hanging by the Swivel, and the Muzzle lying croſs the middle of the Right Toe; at the ſame time taking hold of the Bridle with the Left-Hand, and quitting the Carbine with the Right.

X. *Join your Right Hands to your Swords.* 1 Motion.

Bring your Right-Hand over your Left Arm, which Arm you are to preſs cloſe to your Left Side, and ſeize the Handle of the Sword with a full Hand.

The Officers are to do the ſame.

XI. *Draw your Swords.* 2 Motions.

Firſt, Draw your Sword quite out of the Scabbard, by raiſing up the Right-Hand as high as your Arm will permit, and keep the Point of the Sword a little higher than the Hilt. Second, Bring your Right-Hand to your Right Side, placing the Inſide of the Hilt on the Outſide of your Right Thigh, the Wriſt bending a little out, raiſing the Point pretty high, and running in a Line with the Right Ear of the Horſe with the Edge from you. The Officers do the ſame.

XII. *Place your Swords in the Bridle Hands.* 2 Motions.

Firſt, Bring up the Sword oppoſite to the Center of the Body, reſting the Pummel on the fore-part of the Saddle, the broad Part of the Blade toward you, and the Point upright; at the ſame time you are to ſlip your Left-Hand along the Reins of the Bridle as high as your Shoulder, and ſeize the Blade with the Left-Hand, keeping the Reins between the Palm and it, and ſquaring your Left Elbow. Second, Quit the Sword with the Right-Hand, and bring it to its proper Place.

XIII. *Handle your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

Seize the round or ſmall Part of the Butt with your Right-Hand, by raiſing your Right-Hand as high as your Shoulder, and

and bringing it immediately down to the aforementioned Place.

XIV. *Advance your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

Bring up your Carbine with your Right-Hand, placing it on your Right Thigh, as in Explan. 6.

XV. *Cock your Carbines.* 2 Motions.

Firſt, Bring forward the Right Elbow, and place your Right Thumb on the Cock. Second, Bring down your Right Elbow to your Body or Side, cocking the Carbine at the ſame time, and ſlipping the Thumb off the Cock.

XVI. *Preſent.* 1 Motion.

Bring up the Carbine, and place the Butt-end firm to the Hollow of the Right Shoulder, dropping the Muzzle to a Level on the Right Side of the Sword, and ſupport it with the Fingers of the Left-Hand, which you are to extend for that purpoſe, and place the Fore-finger of the Right-Hand before the Tricker, (yet without touching it) and the other three on the Guard, and the Thumb in the Hollow of the Butt, your Body inclining a little forward only to preſs againſt the Carbine, keeping your Head up, and looking ſtrait forward.

XVII. *Fire.* 1 Motion.

At this Word of Command you draw the Tricker, with that Finger that was plac'd before it, quick and ſtrong; but if it ſhould not go off with the firſt Drawing, you are not to draw it a ſecond time.

XVIII. *Drop your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

Drop your Carbines on the Right Side, as in Explan. 9.

XIX. *Handle your Right Piſtols.* 1 Motion.

Bring your Right-Hand round, turning the back towards you, and ſeize the Butt of the Right Piſtol with a full Hand.

XX. *Draw*

XX. *Draw you Right Piſtols.* 1 Motion.

Draw your Piſtol out of the Holſter, and bring it to the Right Side of the Sword, extending your Arm directly before you, with the Muzzle upright.

XXI. *Cock your Piſtols.* 2 Motions.

Firſt, Bring the Piſtol cloſe to your Breaſt, keeping the Muzzle up, and place your Thumb on the Cock. Second, Throw off the Piſtol to its former Place, cocking it at the ſame time, and ſlip your Thumb off the Cock.

XXII. *Preſent.* 1 Motion.

Drop the Muzzle to a level, the Barrel upward, and place the Fore-finger on the Tricker, as in Explan. 16.

XXIII. *Fire.* 1 Motion.

Draw the Tricker, as in Explan. 17.

XXIV. *Return your Piſtols.* 3 Motions.

Firſt, Place the Muzzle of the Piſtol in the Holſter, the back of your Hand turn'd towards you. Second, Thruſt it quite down. Third, quit the Piſtol, and bring your Right-Hand to its proper place.

XXV. *Handle your Left Piſtols.* 1 Motion.

Do this as in Explan. 19. only the Back of the Hand from you.

XXVI. *Draw your Piſtols.* 1 Motion. As in Explan. 20.

XXVII. *Cock your Piſtols.* 2 Motions. As in Explan. 21.

XXVIII. *Preſent.* 1 Motion. As in Explan. 22.

XXIX. *Fire.* 1 Motion. As in Explan. 17.

XXX. *Return*

XXX. *Return your Piſtols.* 3 Motions. As in Explan. 24.

XXXI. *Recover your Swords.* 2 Motions.

Firſt, Seize the Handle of the Sword with the Right-Hand, graſping it with the Thumb upward. Second, Bring the Sword to your Right Thigh, as in Explan. 11. at the ſame ſlip down your Left-Hand, and take hold of the Bridle at the proper Place.

XXXII. *Point your Swords.* 1 Motion.

Bring the Sword over the Left Arm, and enter the Point in the Scabbard, and thruſt it in ſo far, that you may look over the Right Arm. For the eaſier Performance of which, you muſt cloſe your Left Arm to your Side.

The Officers to perform this Motion with the Men.

XXXIII. *Return your Swords.* 2 Motions.

Firſt, Thruſt your Sword up to the Hilt. Second, Bring your Hand back to its proper place.

The Officers to do the ſame.

XXXIV. *Officers, move into the Front, March.*

The Commiſſion-Officers are to march out of the Ranks, the Cornets bringing the Standards with them, and place themſelves at the Head of the Squadrons. As ſoon as the Officers are clear of the Men, the Front Ranks are to cloſe the Intervals, made by the Officers, to the Center.

XXXV. *Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Open Order, March.*

The Center and Rear Ranks of each Squadron are to rein back very ſlow in a direct Line to their former Ground, keeping their Ranks and Files even; of which the Quarter-Maſters are to take particular Care, as alſo that there be a due Diſtance between the Ranks, according to the Directions in *Article* the 8th, *Of Rules and Obſervations*, &c.

Note, As my Intentions at firſt were only to treat of thoſe Things that relate properly to the Exerciſe of the Horſe, I will

will proceed on that Scheme; but that this Work may not be defective, I will ſet down at the End of the Evolutions, the proper Words of Command, with an Explanation for Diſmounting, Linking the Horſes, and Forming into Battalion, with the Exerciſe on Foot, which is to be done immediately after the above 35th Article; but if the Foot Exerciſe is not to be perform'd, the above 34th and 35th Words of Command are not to be given 'till the Carbines are returned.

XXXVI. *Handle your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

This is to be done as in Explan. 13.

XXXVII. *Advance your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

As in Explan. 14.

XXXVIII. *Unſpring your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

Quit the Reins of your Bridle, and take hold of the Swivel with the Left-Hand, placing the Thumb on the Spring, and opening it, at the ſame time take it out of the Ring.

XXXIX. *Return your Swivels.* 2 Motions.

Firſt, Place the Swivel on your Right Side, by thruſting your Left-Hand under your Right Arm. Second, Bring your Left-Hand back to its proper place.

XL. *Return your Carbines.* 4 Motions.

Firſt, Throw the Carbine to the Right with the Right-Hand, turning the Barrel to the Front, ſinking it as low as you can without inclining your Body, ſeizing the Barrel at the ſame time with the Left-Hand, and keeping the Muzzle upright 2. Quit the right-Hand, and bring the Carbine with the Left under your Right Arm, ſinking it near the Buckett, and at the ſame time ſeize the Barrel with the Right-Hand a little above the Left. 3 Place the Butt-End of the Carbine in the Buckett, and quit it with the Left-Hand. 4. Faſten the Carbine with the Strap, and place your Bridle in your Left-Hand.

The End of the Manual Exerciſe on Horſeback.

Evolutions

Evolutions of the Horſe.

ARTICLE III.

I. *Officers, take your Poſts in the Front, March.*

[Note, *That no Movement be made 'till the Word,* March, *is given.*]

The Commiſſion-Officers march ſtrait forward, the Cornets carrying the Standards, 'till they paſs the Major, or Officer that exerciſes the Regiment eight or ten Paces, and then ſtand; taking Care both then and in the marching that their Ranks be even.

II. *Halt.*

The Officers of the right Squadron are to face to the Left-about, the Officers of the Left Squadron to the Right-about, and thoſe of the Center Squadron to the Right and Left-about, that is, Half the Officers on the Right to face to the Left-about, and the Half on the Left to the Right-about, in which Poſture they are to remain 'till order'd to the Front.

The Kettle-Drummer and Trumpets are to march with the Officers, and draw up in the Rear of them, as ſoon as the Word *Halt* is given, where they are to remain.

III. *Center and Rear Ranks, move forward to Order, March.*

The two Rear Ranks of each Squadron move up, and leave the Diſtance between the Ranks equal to a third of one Rank. They are to perform this and the following Movements only at a Walk, taking care to look to the Right and Left, but chiefly to the Right, that they may march even in the Ranks and keep directly in a Line with their File-Leaders. The Quarter-Maſters are to be on the Right Flanks of their reſpective Squadrons, to ſee that the Ranks keep their proper Diſtance, and to make them dreſs.

IV. *Center and Rear Ranks, move forward to Cloſe Order, March.*

The aforeſaid Ranks cloſe ſo much, that four Men can juſt wheel round. Obſerve the other Rules above in Exp. 3.

V. *Center*

V. *Center and Rear Ranks, Close to the Croop, March.*

The foresaid Ranks move up so close that the HorseHeads are to touch the Croops of their File-Leader's Horses.

VI. *Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Close Order, March.*

The Ranks that mov'd up are to rein back very slow, to the Ground from whence they last came, in a direct Line, casting their Eyes to the Right and Left to keep their Ranks strait.

VII. *Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Order, March.*

The same Ranks rein back, 'till the Distance between the Ranks is equal to a Third of the Front Rank of one Squadron; observe the other Directions as in Explan. 6.

VIII. *Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Open Order, March.*

The same Ranks rein back to the Ground they first stood on, and immediately straiten their Ranks and Files.

Note, That during these Movements the Front Rank of each Squadron stands still.

IX. *Front and Center Ranks, rein back to Order, March.*

X. *Front and Center Ranks, rein back to Close Order, March.*

XI. *Front and Center Ranks, rein back to the Croop, March.*

The Rear Rank of each Squadron stands still, the Front and Center rein back to the several Distances, as are explain'd in the foregoing Articles, and to observe the Rules as in Explan. 6.

XII. *Front*

XII. *Front and Center Ranks, move forward to Cloſe Order, March.*

XIII. *Front and Center Ranks, move forward to Order, March.*

XIV. *Front and Center Ranks, move forward to Open Order, March.*

The Front and Center Ranks are to move up to the ſeveral Diſtances, and to obſerve the Rules as in Explan. 3.

XV. *Center and Rear Ranks, move forward to Order, March.*

The ſame as in Explan. 3.

XVI. *Squadrons, to the Right open your Files, March.*

The Right-hand File of each Squadron is to paſſage to the Right very ſlow, and as ſoon as it is got to ſuch a Diſtance from the ſecond File that a Horſe can come between them, the Second is to move the ſame Way, and ſo on 'till the whole is open'd. The Men of the Front Rank are to take particular Care in opening, to keep the above Diſtance, and thoſe of the Center and Rear-ranks are to keep directly in a Line with their File-Leaders, and the whole to take Care that they don't advance or rein back, but paſſage in a ſtrait Line to the Right.

XVII. *Halt.*

As ſoon as the Whole is open'd, the Major is to give the Word *Halt*, at which the Men are to ſtop their Horſes, and to ſtraiten their Ranks and Files.

XVIII. *To the Left, cloſe your Files, March.*

The Left-hand File of each Squadron ſtands faſt, all the reſt paſſage at the ſame time to the Left very ſlow; but they are not to cloſe their Files, 'till the File on their Left ſtands; which will prevent the Horſes treading upon each other, and make the Movement more regular and beautiful.

XIX. *To the Left open your Files, March.*

The Left-hand File of each Squadron paſſages to the Left, and the reſt are to follow, as in Explan. 16.

XX. *Halt.*

The Men are to ſtop the Horſes, and to obſerve further as in Explan. 17.

XXI. *To the Right cloſe your Files, March.*

The Right-hand File of each Squadron ſtands, the reſt are to cloſe by paſſage to the Right, and to obſerve the Rules as in Explan. 18.

XXII. *From the Center, to the Right and Left open your Files, March.*

The Right and Left-hand File of each Squadron paſſage to the Right and Left at the ſame time, keeping an equal, but ſlow Pace, (obſerving the Rules already given in opening) 'till the two Files in the Center are opened, and then the Major proceeds to the next Word of Command.

XXIII. *Halt.* As in Explan. 17.

XXIV. *Cloſe your Files to the Center, March.*

All the Files are to move at the ſame time, and cloſe by paſſage to the Center of their Squadrons, and obſerve further as in Explan. 18.

XXV. *Ranks Countermarch to the Left, March.*

The Right-hand File of each Squadron moves directly forward about a Horſe Length, before the Rank they ſtood in, that is, the Man in the Front Rank a Horſe Length before that Rank, the Center Rank Man a Horſe Length before the Center Rank, and the Rear Man a Horſe Length before the Rear Rank, and then they paſſage in a direct Line to the Left; and as ſoon as that File begins to move, all the reſt are to paſſage to the Right, and when the ſecond File comes to the Ground where the firſt File ſtood, it is to move up as the firſt did and paſſage to the Left, and ſo on, 'till the Whole is come up into the ſame Ranks, and then they all ſtand a little while and Rein back to the Ground the Ranks ſtood on before.

As

As Countermarching is a Movement extremely difficult, but if well perform'd, very beautiful, it will be neceſſary to give ſome further Rules for the doing it.

Countermarching by Ranks, is to bring the Right to the Left, and the Left to the Right; for the Performance of which, the Paſſage is to be done very ſlow, and to move in a direct Line, and each File to move up and paſſage together; and when the File that mov'd out firſt comes oppoſite to the Place where the Left Flank of the Squadron ſtood, it is to halt 'till the whole is done, and then the Squadrons are to rein back together to the Ground the Ranks ſtood on before. The File that leads (of each Squadron) ſhould move in ſuch a Manner as to come to the Ground where they are to ſtand, juſt as the Whole have done, that they may all halt together.

Note, That the Quarter-Maſters are to be on the Flanks to mark out the Ground, which will be a great Help; but they are not to ſpeak to the Men, only to place themſelves on the Right and Left of the Front Rank, to direct them to move in a ſtrait Line, and the Diſtance they are to move up and rein back to.

XXVI. *Ranks Countermarch to the Right, March.*

The Left-hand File of each Squadron (which are thoſe that mov'd out before from the Right) move ſtrait forward a Horſe Length before the Ranks they ſtood in, and paſſage to the Right; the reſt at the ſame time paſſage to the Left; and when each File comes to the Ground where the Left-hand File ſtood, they move forward and then paſſage to the Right, 'till the whole have done, and then rein back to their former Ground; and to obſerve further as explain'd in the foregoing Article. This brings the Squadrons to their former Poſition.

XXVII. *Ranks Countermarch to the Right, March.*

The Left-hand File moves out, as already explain'd, and paſſages to the Right. Obſerve futher in the foregoing Article.

XXVIII. *Ranks Countermarch to the Left, March.*

The Files that mov'd out from the Left, being now on the Right, move out again, and paſſage to the Left. The reſt

to be obſerv'd as already explain'd in the 25th Article.

This reduces the Men to their firſt Poſition.

XXIX. *Ranks from the Right and Left, Countermarch to the Center, March.*

The Right and Left-hand Files of each Squadron move out, as before explain'd, and paſſage to the Right and Left inward; the reſt divide in the Center, and paſſage to the Right and Left outward, and when they come to the Ground where the Flank Men ſtood, to move and paſſage to the Center, 'till the whole is done, and then the Squadrons rein back as is before explain'd. This brings the Flank Men into the Center, and the Center Men on the Flanks.

Note, The Flank Men that lead are to move very ſlow and obſerve each other, that they may keep an equal Pace, in order to join exactly in the Center; but not, if poſſible, 'till the Center Men are come to the Flanks, that they may all ſtop together.

XXX. *Ranks from the Center, Countermarch to the Right and Left, March.*

The two Files in the Center of each Squadron move out to their proper Diſtance, and divide by paſſage to the Right and Left outward; the reſt cloſe to the Center, and as they cloſe, the next two Files move out together and paſſage to the Right and Left outward, 'till the whole are come to their former Places, and then rein back to their former Ground. The Files that lead are to move very ſlow, and not go beyond the Ground the Flank Men ſtood on.

XXXI. *Files to the Right double, March.*

The Second, Fourth, Sixth, and every Even File of each Squadron, are to rein back in a ſtraight Line, till they come to the Center of the Interval between each Rank, then to paſſage a little to the Right and cover the Men that ſtood on their Right. This Movement brings each Squadron into ſix Ranks, or ſix deep, with their Files open.

Note, The Files are to rein back together very ſlow, looking to the Right and Left to keep a ſtraight Rank, and then to paſſage to the Right together, taking care to be directly in a Line with their File-Leaders.

XXXII.

XXXII. *Files that doubled, to the Left form as you were, March.*

The Files that doubled, paſſage a little to the Left, to bring them oppoſite to their former Places, and then move into them pretty briskly; but all at the ſame time.

XXXIII. *Files to the Left double, March.*

The Firſt, Third, Fifth, and every Odd File, rein back, and cover the Men that ſtood on the Left. See Expl. 31.

XXXIV. *Files that doubled, to the Right form as you were, March.*

The Files that doubled, paſſage a little to the Right, and then move into their former Places.

XXXV. *Second and Fourth Quarter-Ranks, to the Right double your Files, March.*

The Second and Fourth Quarter-Ranks of each Squadron rein back to the Center of the Intervals between the Ranks, and then paſſage to the Right, 'till the Right-hand File of the ſecond Quarter-Rank comes oppoſite to the Right-hand File of the firſt Quarter-Rank; and the Right-hand File of the fourth Quarter-Rank comes oppoſite to the Right-hand File of the third Quarter-Rank, and then Halt, taking care to dreſs their Ranks and Files. This Movement muſt be done together, that they all may begin and finiſh at the ſame time. In the Paſſage they are not to open their Files, but keep as cloſe as they can without treading on one another. This forms each Squadron into two Diviſions, and each Diviſion ſix deep.

XXXVI. *Quarter-Ranks that doubled, to the Left form as you were, March.*

The Quarter-Ranks that doubled, paſſage to the Left very ſlow, in a direct Line, and when they come oppoſite to their former Ground, or Intervals, they are to move up into their Places. Obſerve further as in the foregoing Article.

XXXVII. *First and Third Quarter-Ranks, to the Left double your Files, March.*

The First and Third Quarter-Ranks of each Squadron rein back and paſſage to the Left, and double the Second and Fourth Quarter-Ranks; obſerve further as in Explan. 35.

XXXVIII. *Quarter-Ranks that doubled, to the Right form as you were, March.*

The Quarter-Ranks that doubled, paſſage to the Right, and move up into their former Places, as in Explan. 36.

XXXIX. *Flank Quarter-Ranks, double your Files to the Center, March.*

The Flank Quarter-Ranks, or the First and Fourth of each Squadron, rein back (as in Expl. 35.) and paſſage to the Right and Left, inwards, and join in the Center of the Squadron.

XL. *Quarter-Ranks that doubled, to the Right and Left form as you were, March.*

The Quarter-Ranks that doubled, paſſage to the Right and Left outwards, 'till they are clear of the Center Quarter-Ranks, and then move into their former Places.

XLI. *Center Quarter-Ranks, to the Right and Left double your Files, March.*

The Center or Second and Third Quarter-Ranks of each Squadron rein back, and paſſage to the Right and Left outward, and double the Firſt and Fourth Quarter-Ranks.

XLII. *Quarter-Ranks that doubled, form in the Center as you were, March.*

The Quarter-Ranks that doubled, paſſage to the Right and Left inward, and join in the Center of the Intervals, and then move up into their Places.

XLIII.

XLIII. *Half-ranks, to the Right double your Files, March.*

The Left half-ranks of each Squadron rein back, as the Quarter-ranks did, and paſſage to the Right in a ſtraight Line, 'till they come to the Right Flank of thoſe that ſtand, and then halt and cover their File-Leaders.

The ſame Rules that are given for the Quarter-ranks will ſerve for Half-ranks.

XLIV. *Half-ranks that doubled, to the Left Form as you were, March.*

The Half-ranks that doubled, Paſſage to the Left, 'till the Right-hand File comes oppoſite to the Left of thoſe that ſtood, and then move up into their Places.

XLV. *Half-ranks, to the Left double your Files, March.*

The Half-ranks on the Right of each Squadron, rein Back and Paſſage to the Left, 'till the Left-hand File comes to the Left of thoſe that Stand, and then Halt, taking care to cover their File-Leaders, and ſtraiten their Ranks.

XLVI. *Half-Ranks that doubled, to the Right Form as you were, March.*

The Half-ranks that doubled, Paſſage to the Right, 'till the Left-hand File comes to the Right of thoſe that ſtood, and move into their Places.

XLVII. *Center and Rear-Ranks, move forward to Cloſe Order, March.*

The Front-Rank of each Squadron Stands. The Center and Rear-ranks March forward, and leave an Interval between the Ranks that only four Men can juſt wheel round.

XLVIII. *Ranks, to the Right wheel by Fours, March.*

The Right-hand Man of each Diviſion, or Rank of Fours, is to keep his Horſe's Fore-feet, as much as poſſible, on the ſame Ground he ſtood on; and as he finds the other three Men come about, he is to throw the Flank of his Horſe to the Left.

Obſerve further, as in Article the 13th of *Rules and Obſervations.*

This Wheel is only a Quarter of the Circle.

XLIX. *Wheel to the Right, March.* L. *Wheel to the Right, March.* LI. *Wheel to the Right, March.*

Each of theſe is a Quarter of the Circle, and the Rules already given in Explanation 48, are to be obſerv'd in theſe and all other Wheelings to the Right by Ranks.

LII. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.* LIII. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.*

Each of theſe is half the Circle, and obſerve as in Explanation 48.

LIV. *Ranks, to the Left Wheel by Fours, March.*

The Left-hand Man of each Diviſion or Rank of Fours, is to obſerve the ſame Rules as in Explanation 48, with this Difference only, that he is to throw his Horſe's Flank to the Right, as the other did to the Left; and the whole to obſerve the General Rules in Wheeling as explain'd in Article 13.

LV. *Wheel to the Left, March.* LVI. *Wheel to the Left, March.* LVII. *Wheel to the Left, March.*

Each Movement is a Quarter of the Circle.

LVIII. *Wheel to the Left-about, March.* LIX. *Wheel to the Left-about, March.*

Each Movement is half the Circle.

LX.

LX. *Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Order, March.*

The Center and Rear Ranks of each Squadron rein back to the Ground, from whence they mov'd up laſt, leaving the Interval between the Ranks equal to the third of one Rank.

LXI *Ranks by three Diviſions, Wheel to the Right, March.*

Each Rank wheels by three Diviſions, and the Right-hand Man of each Diviſion is to obſerve the ſame Directions as are given in Explanation 48, and the Whole to obſerve further as in Article 13 of *Rules and Obſervations.*
This is a Quarter of the Circle.

LXII. *Wheel to the Right, March.* LXIII. *Wheel to the Right March.* LXIV. *Wheel to the Right, March.*

Each Movement is a Quarter of the Circle.

LXV. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.* LXVI. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.*

Each of theſe is half the Circle.

LXVII. *Ranks by three Diviſions, wheel to the Left, March.*

Each Rank wheels by three Diviſions to the Left, a Quarter of the Circle, and the Left-hand Man of each Diviſion is to obſerve the ſame Directions as are given in Explanation 54, and the Whole to obſerve the Rules in Wheeling as ſet forth in Article 13 of *Rules*, &c.

LXVIII. *Wheel to the Left, March.* LXIX. *Wheel to the Left, March.* LXX. *Wheel to the Left, March.*

Each Movement is a Quarter of the Circle.

LXXI. *Wheel*

LXXI. *Wheel to the Left-about, March.* **LXXII.** *Wheel to the Left-about, March.*

Each of theſe is half the Circle.

LXXIII. *Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Open Order, March.*

The Center and Rear-ranks of each Squadron rein back to open Order. The Intervals between the Ranks are to be equal to half the Front of one Squadron, that half of each Rank may juſt wheel round.

LXXIV. *Ranks by two Diviſions, wheel to the Right and Left Outward, March.*

Each Rank divides in the Center, and wheels to the Right and Left outward, by which each Squadron is brought into two Ranks, facing from one another.

The Flank Men of each Rank are to obſerve the Rules as in Explanation 48, and the Whole to look to the Right and Left, as in Article 13 of *Rules and Obſervations.*

The two Center Men of each Rank (being thoſe that lead, or govern the Wheeling) are to move ſlow at firſt, 'till the whole is in Motion, and to increaſe it by degrees, 'till they come to a large Trot, but never to exceed. This is a Quarter of the Circle.

LXXV. *Wheel to the Right and Left, March.*

By this Movement each Squadron is brought into two Diviſions, facing to the Rear.

LXXVI. *Wheel to the Right and Left Inward, March.*

This brings each Squadron into two Ranks, facing one another.

LXXVII. *Wheel*

LXXVII. *Wheel to your proper Front, March.*

This brings them again into Squadron, and finiſhes the Circle.

LXXVIII. *Wheel to the Right and Left about, March.*

Each Squadron is brought into two Diviſions, with an Interval between them, facing to the Rear.

LXXIX. *Wheel to the Right and Left-about, March.*

This brings them into Squadron as before.

LXXX. *To the Right and Left wheel the Circle entire. March.*

As wheeling the Circle entire at one Wheel is difficult to be perform'd as it ſhould, ſo the Men are to take care to cloſe to the Hand they wheel to and to look to the Contrary, that each Rank may come about ſtrait into the Ground it ſtood on before.

LXXXI. *Rear Ranks by four Diviſions, to the Right and Left double your Front, March.*

The Rear-rank of each Squadron divides in four equal Parts or Diviſions. The two on the Right wheel to the Right, and the two on the Left wheel to the Left, which forms them into two Diviſions of two Ranks each, facing to the Right and Left Outward.

The firſt Rank of each Diviſion, as ſoon as they have made the firſt Wheel, is to wheel again to the Front, and march directly forward and join on the Right and Left, of the Front Rank; and at the ſame time that the Front Ranks of the ſaid Diviſions make the ſecond Wheel, the Rear-ranks are to march directly Forward, 'till they come to the Ground where the Front Ranks wheel'd, and then they are to wheel towards the Front, and march forward, and form on the Right and Left of the Center Ranks.

This

This enlarges the Front of each Squadron one half, and forms them into two Ranks, or two Deep.

Care muſt be taken that they all wheel at the ſame time, and move up, and form on the Right and Left of each Squadron together.

This Wheeling muſt not be perform'd ſo quick as the other Wheelings, but yet with a briskneſs.

LXXXII. *Rear Ranks that doubled, wheel to the Right and Left-about, and form as you were, March.*

The Rear-Ranks that doubled, wheel to the Right and Left-about, and march directly to the Rear, only at a Walk, 'till they come even with the Ground they ſtood on before, and the two Ranks that lead, (which are thoſe that were drawn up on the Right and Left of the Center Rank) wheel to the Right and Left inward, and march 'till the Flank Men come oppoſite to their File Leaders. The other two Ranks, when they come to the ſame Ground, wheel the ſame way, and march forward 'till they come even with the Flanks of the Squadrons, and then the Whole is to wheel up and form in a Rank entire, as before.

LXXXIII. *Rear Ranks by two Diviſions, to the Right double your Front, March.*

The Rear-Rank of each Squadron divides into two equal Parts, and wheels to the Right, which forms them into one Diviſion of two Ranks each, facing to the Right. The firſt Rank of each Diviſion wheels again to the Left, and marches forward and joins on the Right of the Front Rank: And the ſecond Rank of each Diviſion, as ſoon as the Front Ranks begin their ſecond Wheel, marches ſtrait forward, and wheels upon the ſame Ground the others did, and then marches up and forms on the Right of the Center Rank.

Both Ranks of each Diviſion are to march and wheel in ſuch a manner, that they form on the Right of their reſpective Squadrons at the ſame time.

LXXXIV. *Rear Ranks that doubled, wheel to the Right-about, and form as you were, March.*

The Rear Ranks that doubled wheel to the Right-about, and march directly to the Rear, 'till they come even with the

the Right of the Ground they ſtood on before, and then wheel to the Right, and march towards the Left of the Squadrons, 'till the Right-hand Man of each Rank comes oppoſite to his File-Leader, and then they are all to wheel to the Right, and form in a Rank, as before.

LXXXV. *Rear Ranks by two Diviſions, to the Left double your Front, March.*

The Rear-Rank of each Squadron wheels by two Diviſions to the Left, and forms on the Left of each Squadron, as they did before on the Right.

LXXXVI. *Rear Ranks that doubled, wheel to the Left-about and form as you were, March.*

The Rear-Ranks that doubled, wheel to the Left-about, and form on their own Ground, as in Explan. 84. with this Difference only, that all their Wheelings are to the Left, as the others are to the Right.

LXXXVII. *Rear Ranks by two Diviſions, double your Front in the Center, March.*

The Diviſion on the Right of the Rear Rank of each Squadron is to move forward a Horſe Length before the Diviſion on the Left, and then Paſſage to the Left; the Diviſions on the Left that ſtood, are at the ſame time to Paſſage to the Right, 'till their Left Flanks come oppoſite to each other, and then Halt 'till they can move up in the Center of each Squadron.

As ſoon as the Rear Ranks begin to move, each Squadron is to divide in the Center, and Paſſage to the Right and Left outward, and when the Interval in the Center is large enough to contain the Rear Rank, they are to Halt, and the Rear Ranks are to move up, and join the Front and Center Ranks.

All the above Movements are to be perform'd together, for by the time that the Squadrons have open'd from the Center, the Rear Ranks of each will be form'd two Deep, and ready to move up, which they are to do, as ſoon as the Intervals will allow of it.

LXXXVIII. *Rear*

LXXXVIII. *Rear-Ranks that doubled, rein back and form as you were, March.*

The Rear Ranks that doubled, are to rein back to the Ground from whence they mov'd up, and then Paſſage to the Right and Left outward. As ſoon as the Diviſions on the Left come to the Ground they ſtood on at firſt, they are to Halt, and when the Right-hand Men of the Diviſions on the Right come oppoſite to their File-Leaders, they are to make a ſmall Halt, and then all the Diviſions on the Right are to rein back and dreſs in a Line with thoſe on the Left. As ſoon as the Rear Ranks have rein'd back, the Squadrons are to Paſſage to, and cloſe in the Center.

LXXXIX. *Officers, take your Poſts on the Front of your Squadrons, March.*

The Officers are to march in a direct Line, 'till they come within a Horſe Length of the Front Rank of Men, and then ſtand. The Kettle Drummer and Trumpets march likewiſe, and when they come to the Ground they ſtood on before, they ſtand alſo.

XC. *Halt.*

At this Word of Command, the Officers of the Squadron on the Right, face to the Right-about, and thoſe of the Squadron on the Left to the Left-about; the Officers of the Center Squadron face to the Right and Left-about inward thus: half on the Right, to the Right-about, and the half on the Left, to the Left-about.

The Trumpets of the Right and Center Squadrons face to the Right-about, and thoſe of the Left Squadron to the Left-about.

XCI. *Center and Rear Ranks, Cloſe to the Croop, March.*

The Center and Rear Ranks of each Squadron cloſe forward as cloſe as they can, and the Commiſſion Officers at the ſame time rein back cloſe to the Front Rank, and the Quarter-Maſters move up cloſe to the Rear. The Cornets that carry the Standards are, if a General Officer be preſent,

to

to fall in between the Center Men of the Front Rank of each Squadron, but if not, they are to give the Standards to the Center Man of the Front Rank of each Squadron.

As the next Word of Command is to wheel by Diviſion, before you proceed to it, the Officers are to be divided equally upon the ſeveral Diviſions you intend to wheel by, thus; if by four Diviſions, they are to be divided into four equal Parts; if by three Diviſions, into three Parts; and if by two Diviſions, into two Parts. The Quarter-Maſters are likewiſe to be divided on the Rear of the ſeveral Diviſions.

XCII. *Squadrons by three Diviſions wheel to the Right, March.*

As wheeling by Diviſions is already explain'd in the 13th Article of *Rules and Obſervations*, I will refer you to that.

The Officers are to wheel on the Front of their ſeveral Diviſions, and a Quarter-Maſter in the Rear of each.

This Movement brings each Squadron into three diſtinct Bodies, or Diviſions, all facing to the Right.

XCIII. *Wheel to the Right, March.*

This brings them into Squadron, all facing to the Rear.

XCIV. *Wheel to the Right, March.*

Each Squadron by this Movement is brought into three diſtinct Bodies, or Diviſions, facing to the Left.

XCV. *Wheel to the Right, March.*

This compleats the Circle to the Right, and brings each Squadron into its firſt Poſition.

XCVI. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.* XCVII. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.*

This compleats the Circle to the Right at twice, each being half.

XCVIII. *Squadrons*

XCVIII. *Squadrons by three Diviſions, wheel to the Left, March.* XCIX. *Wheel to the Left, March.* C. *Wheel to the Left, March.* CI. *Wheel to the Left, March.*

Each of theſe is a Quarter of the Circle.

Obſerve the Rules as are already given in Explan. 92. and in the 13th Article of *Rules and Obſervations.*

CII. *Wheel to the Left-about, March.* CIII. *Wheel to the Left-about, March.*

Each of theſe is half the Circle.

CIV. *Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Order, March.*

At this Word of Command the Commiſſion Officers are to move forward in their proper Diſtance, and the Center and Rear-Ranks are to rein back to Order. The Quarter-Maſters are alſo to rein back to their proper Diſtance.

If the Cornets carry the Standards as before mention'd, they are to remain in the Center of the Front Rank of Men; but if they do not, they are to move up, and dreſs in the Rank of Officers.

CV. *Squadrons, move to the Right, March.*

The Squadrons are to Paſſage to the Right without opening their Files, and the Officers are to Paſſage with them, taking care to keep their Diſtances equally divided between them; and when the Left of each Squadron comes to the Ground where the Right ſtood, the following Word of Command is to be given.

CVI. *Halt.*

They are then to ſtand.

CVII. *Squadrons, move to the Left, March.*

The Squadrons are to Paſſage to the Left, without opening their Files, until they come to their former Ground, and then the Major proceeds to the next Word of Command.

CVIII. *Halt.*

CVIII. *Halt.*

They all ſtand.

CIX. *Squadrons, to the Right wheel, March.*

As the wheeling in Squadron is more difficult (particularly when the Ranks are open'd to Order) than by Diviſion, the Men muſt obſerve with great Exactneſs the Directions that are given in the 13th Article of *Rules and Obſervations.*

The Beauty of wheeling conſiſts in keeping the Ranks even, neither to cloſe nor open the Diſtances between 'em, and the Men to keep oppoſite to their File-Leaders. For this end the Front Rank muſt move at an eaſy Trot, that the Center and Rear Ranks may not gallop, the Circumference they make being larger than that of the Front. The Officers are to wheel with the Squadrons.

This is a Quarter of the Circle.

CX. *To the Right wheel, March.* CXI. *To the Right wheel, March.* CXII. *To the Right wheel, March.*

Theſe three Movements bring them to their former Ground.

CXIII. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.* CXIV. *Wheel to the Right-about, March.*

Each of theſe is half the Circle.

CXV. *Squadrons, to the Left wheel, March.* CXVI. *To the Left wheel, March.* CXVII. *To the Left wheel, March.* CXVIII. *To the Left wheel, March.*

Each is a quarter of the Circle.

CXIX. *Wheel to the Left-about, March.* CXX. *Wheel to the Left-about, March.*

Each is half the Circle.

CXXI. *Squadrons, to the Right wheel the Circle entire, March.*

The Squadrons are to wheel to the Right quite round, 'till they come to their proper Front.

CXXII. *Squadrons, to the Left wheel the Circle entire, March.*

They are to wheel to the Left quite round, 'till they come to their former Ground.

CXXIII. *Center and Rear Ranks, rein back to Open Order, March.*

As in Explan. 8. of the *Evolutions.*

CXXIV. *Join your Right Hands to your Swords.*

As in Explan. 10. *of the Manual on Horseback.*

CXXV. *Draw your Swords.*

As in Explan. 11. *of the Manual on Horseback.*

The End of the Evolutions.

ARTI-

ARTICLE II.

The Words of Command for Diſmounting, Linking the Horſes, Forming into Battalion, and Exerciſing on Foot; at alſo Reducing them into their ſeveral Squadrons, returning to, and unlinking their Horſes, mounting, and returning their Carbines, with an Explanation of thoſe things that have not yet been treated of, or appear'd in Print.

When the Regiment is to diſmount and exerciſe on Foot, you are to proceed in the following Manner, immediately after the 35th Word of Command in the Manual on Horſeback.

I. *Files to the Right, double, March.*

This is to be perform'd as in Explanation 31 of the Evolutions on Horſeback.

II. *Make ready your Links.*

As there are ſeveral Sorts of Links, there cannot be one Method preſcrib'd for the whole; but as moſt Regiments link with Collars, I will proceed on that way, and give Directions accordingly.

The Collar being faſten'd by a running Knot to a Ring in the Saddle, a little above the Right Holſter, the Men are to undo the Knot with the Right-hand, taking the Rein of the Collar out of the Ring, and laying it croſs the Horſe's Neck.

III. *Handle your Carbines.*

This is done as in Explanation 13 of the Manual Exerciſe on Horſeback.

IV. *Advance your Carbines.*

As in Explanation 14 of the Manual on Horſeback.

V. *Poize your Carbines.*

This is perform'd as in the Foot Exerciſe; only with this Difference, that you bring with the Right-hand at once to the Poize from the fore-mentioned Poſition.

VI. *Hang your Carbines over your Left Shoulders.* 2 Motions.

Firſt, place your Carbine on the Left Shoulder, holding it between the Guard and Butt-End with the Right-hand, the Barrel upward, and the Butt higher than the Muzzle. Second, quit your Carbine, and bring your Right-hand down to its proper Place.

VII. *Quit your Right Stirrups.* 3 Motions.

Firſt, take your Right Foot out of the Stirrup, at the ſame time thruſting forward your Bridle-hand, and keeping the Reins faſt. 2. Take a Lock of the Horſe's Mane with the Right-hand, and place it in the Left, over the Bridle, and graſp it faſt with the Left-hand. 3. Take hold with the Right-hand of the right Burr of the Saddle, placing your Fingers on the Inſide and your Thumb on the Out. The Officers are to do the ſame.

VIII. *Diſmount.* 3 Motions.

As this is part of what the Men are taught in riding, it will not be neceſſary to mention all the Particulars; only as it is to be done at three Motions, the Men muſt perform each of them diſtinctly. Firſt, by raiſing themſelves with the Right-hand above the Saddle, and bringing the Right Leg over to the Near, or Left Side of the Horſe, with an upright Body, and looking full to the Right. 2. They come to the Ground with the Right Foot, facing full to the Rear, and then quit the Stirrup with the Left, bringing it down to the Ground, and placing it even with the other. 3. They are to quit the Bridle and Mane with the Left-hand, turning at the ſame time to the Left-about on the Right Heel, and taking hold of the Left-cheek of the Bridle with the Right-hand.

The

The Officers are to do the ſame, and their Servants are to take their Horſes from the Front of the Squadrons.

IX. *Files that doubled, move into your Places. March.*

This is done as in Explanation 32 of the Evolutions, by the Men leading their Horſes into their former Places.

X. *Link your Horſes to the Right.*

The Men face to the Right-about on the Left Heel, and give the Reins of their Collars to their Right-hand Men, who are to faſten them to the Left-cheek of their Horſes Bridles, and remain facing to the Rear 'till the following Word of Command.

Note, That three Men of each Rank, which are commonly thoſe of the Flanks and Center, are to remain with the Horſes, to take care of them during the Time the reſt are exerciſing; as alſo one Quarter-Maſter of a Squadron. And though thoſe Men remain'd formerly on Horſe-back, yet it is evident they are more uſeful on Foot; but this may be done either way, as the commanding Officer ſhall think fit. One Trumpet of a Squadron muſt remain on Horſe-back, to hold the Horſes of the other two Trumpets.

XI. *Face to the Left-about.*

All the Men, except thoſe that are appointed to remain with the Horſes, face to the Left-about upon the Right-heel; and the Officers at the ſame time, unleſs they have Fuzees, are to draw their Swords and reſt them on their Left Arms, dividing themſelves equally on the Front of their Squadrons, in the ſame manner as they did on Horſe-back, the Cornets carrying the Standards.

Note, The Cornets are to carry the Standards in the ſame manner as the Enſigns of Foot do the Colours, by advancing them in marching by the General, or other Forms and Ceremonies, ſaluting as they do, and planting them on their Right, during the Exerciſe, *&c.*

XII. *March.*

The Officers and Men (the Cornets advancing the Standards) march ſtraight forward, and when they have march'd

four Paces, the following Word of Command is to be given.

Note, That in all Marching to the Front, the Men begin with their Left Feet.

XIII. *Halt.*

They are to ſtand, and immediately ſtraighten their Ranks.

XIV. *Shoulder your Carbines.* 2 Motions.

Firſt, ſeize the Carbine on the upper Part of the Butt with the Left-hand. 2. Bring it to your Shoulder, as is explain'd in the Foot-Exerciſe.

XV. *Unſpring your Carbines.* 1 Motion.

Take hold of the Swivel with your Right-hand, placing your Thumb on the Spring, and preſſing it down at the ſame time, take it out of the Ring, and keep your Elbow ſquare.

XVI. *Return your Swivels.* 1 Motion.

Bring down the Swivel briskly with the Right-hand to the Right-ſide, and quit it.

XVII. *Squadrons, face to the Right.*

The Officers and Men face to the Right on the Left Heel.

XVIII. *March.*

They all begin their March at the ſame Time with the Left Feet, moving very ſlow; and when the Left of each Squadron is two Paces beyond the Right of their Horſes, the following Word of Command is to be given.

XIX. *Halt.*

They all face to the Left on the Left Heel, and immediately ſtraighten their Ranks.

XX. *Center*

XX. *Center and Rear-Ranks, cloſe forward to your proper Diſtance, March.*

The Center and Rear-Ranks of each Squadron march forward, 'till they come within four Paces of each other, and then halt. After this the Files are to be compleated, and the Ranks dreſs'd. Then the Major proceeds.

Squadrons have a care to March forward.

At this the Cornets advance the Standards.

XXI. *March.*

The three Squadrons march ſtraight forward, keeping in a Line, taking care not to open or cloſe their Ranks and Files, and covering their File-Leaders; and when they are advanc'd to a proper Diſtance from the Horſes, the following Word of Command is to be given.

XXII. *Halt.*

At this they all ſtand, and immediately ſtraighten their Ranks and Files. The Cornets plant their Standards on their Right, as the Enſigns do the Colours.

XXIII. *To the Left, open your Files.*

All Face to the Left, on the Right Heel, and the Cornets advance the Standards.

XXIV. *March.*

The Left-hand File of each Squadron begins at the ſame time with their Right Feet, and marches very ſlow. The reſt of the Files are to move as ſoon as the Files before them are at a proper Diſtance; and when the whole is open'd, and the three Squadrons join'd in Battalion, the next Word of Command is to be given.

The Particular Directions for this will be ſeen more at large in the Foot-Exerciſe.

XXV. *Halt.*

They are to face to the Right on the Right-heel. The Men of the Front-rank are immediately to divide their Ground equally between them; and thoſe of the Center and Rear are to govern themſelves by the Front, and cover their File-Leaders, and the whole to ſtraighten their Ranks, which the Adjutant and Quarter-Maſters are to ſee perform'd, and then return to their Poſts.

XXVI. *Officers, take your Poſts on the Front of the Battalion.*

Until the Word of Command is given, the Officers are to remain with their reſpective Squadrons; but then they are to take their Poſts on the Head of the Battalion by Seniority of Commiſſion, as they do in the Foot, the eldeſt on the Right, the next on the Left, and ſo on 'till the Cornets with the Standards come in the Center.

They are then to divide the Ground equally between them, and to dreſs in one Rank.

The Quarter-Maſters are to take their Poſts in the Rear, in the ſame Manner.

The Trumpets are to be divided on the Right, Left, and Center, as the Drummers are in the Foot, but the Kettle-Drummer remains on Horſeback with the Squadrons.

XXVII. *Officers, take your Poſts of Exerciſe in the Rear of the Battalion.*

The Officers face to the Right-about on the Right-heel, and the Cornets advance the Standards. Half the Quarter-Maſters on the Right, face to the Right on the Right-heel, and the other half face to the Left on the Left Heel, and all remain in this Poſition 'till the next Word of Command.

Note, The Colonel, or Officer commanding the Regiment in his Abſence, is not to face with the Officers, but remain facing to the Front; as alſo the Trumpets in the Center; but thoſe on the Flanks face with the Officers.

XXVIII. *March.*

The Colonel or Commanding Officer, marches ſtraight forward, and places himſelf by the General during the Exer-

ciſe;

ciſe; the other Officers march through the Ranks, beginning with the Right Feet, and keeping in Line, 'till they get ſix Paces beyond the Rear-rank, and then ſtand; but the Lieutenant-Colonel is to march two Paces beyond the Officers.

The Quarter-Maſters are to march pretty quick, and place themſelves on the Right and Left of each Rank. The Trumpets on the Right and Left are to march to the Rear, and when they come two Paces beyond the Rear-rank, they are to ſtand. Thoſe in the Center are to march ſtrait forward, and place themſelves in the Rear of the Major, or Officer that exerciſes the Regiment.

XXIX. *Halt.*

The Lieutenant-Colonel, and the reſt of the Officers in the Rear, as alſo the Trumpets of the Right and Left, face to the Right-about on the Right Heel, and remain in that Poſition during the Exerciſe, the Cornets planting the Standards on the Right.

XXX. *Have a Care.* 2 Motions.

Firſt, Bring your Right-hand briskly to your Hat, turning the Palm outward. 2. Bring it down on the Cartridge Box or Pouch with Life.

Note, The Foot-Exerciſe being already explain'd, it will be unneceſſary to inſert it here; I therefore refer you to the Account of it, both for the Manner of performing each Motion, and the proper Time between them.

XXXI. *Join your Right Hands to your Carbines.* 1 Motion.
XXXII. *Poize your Carbines.* 1 Motion.
XXXIII. *Join your Left Hands to your Carbines.* 1 Motion.
XXXIV. *Cock your Carbines.* 3 Motions.
XXXV. *Preſent.* 1 Motion.
XXXVI. *Fire.* 1 Motion.
XXXVII. *Recover your Carbines.* 1 Motion.
XXXVIII. *Half-cock your Carbines.* 3 Motions.
XXXIX. *Handle your Primers.* 3 Motions.
XL. *Prime.* 3 Motions.
XLI. *Shut your Pans.* 3 Motions.

XLII. *Caſt*

XLII. *Caſt about to charge.* 2 Motions.
XLIII. *Handle your Cartridges.* 3 Motions.
XLIV. *Open your Cartridges.* 2 Motions.
XLV. *Charge with Cartridge.* 2 Motions.
XLVI. *Draw your Rammers.* 4 Motions.
XLVII. *Shorten your Rammers.* 3 Motions.
XLVIII. *Put them in the Barrels.* 6 Motions.
XLIX. *Ram down your Charge.* 2 Motions.
L. *Withdraw your Rammers.* 3 Motions.
LI. *Shorten your Rammers.* 3 Motions.
LII. *Return your Rammers.* 6 Motions.
LIII. *Your Right Hands under the Locks.* 5 Motions.
LIV. *Poize your Carbines.* 1 Motion.
LV. *Shoulder your Carbines.* 3 Motions.
LVI. *Reſt your Carbines.* 3 Motions.
LVII. *Order your Carbines.* 3 Motions.
LVIII. *Lay down your Carbines.* 4 Motions.
LIX. *Take up your Carbines.* 4 Motions.
LX. *Reſt your Carbines.* 3 Motions.
LXI. *Club your Carbines.* 4 Motions.
LXII. *Reſt your Carbines.* 4 Motions.
LXIII. *Shoulder your Carbines.* 4 Motions.

Extraordinary Words of Command.

LXIV. *Reſt your Carbines.* 3 Motions.
LXV. *Reverſe your Carbines.* 4 Motions.
LXVI. *Reſt your Carbines.* 4 Motions.
LXVII. *Reſt your Carbines on your Left Arms.* 2 Motions.
LXVIII. *Recover your Carbines.* 2 Motions.
LXIX. *Reſt on your Carbines.* 4 Motions.
LXX. *Poize your Carbines.* 3 Motions.
LXXI. *Secure your Carbines.* 2 Motions.
LXXII. *Poize your Carbines.* 2 Motions.
LXXIII. *Shoulder your Carbines.* 3 Motions.

LXXIV. *Officers,*

LXXIV. *Officers, take your Poſts in the Front.*

At this the Cornets advance the Standards, and the Quarter-Maſters on the Flanks face to the Right and Left-about. Thoſe on the Right to the Right-about, and thoſe on the Left to the Left about, and all wait for the following Word of Command.

LXXV. *March.*

The Commiſſion-Officers march ſtrait forward and place themſelves on the Front of the Battalion as before; and the Quarter-Maſters Poſt themſelves in the Rear.

The Trumpets remain in the Rear and Front, 'till the Officers are order'd to their ſeveral Squadrons.

LXXVI. *To the Front Preſent your Arms.* 3 Motions

LXXVII. *Face to the Right.* 3 Motions.

This is perform'd at three Motions as in the Foot, *viz.* Recover the Arms, Face a Quarter of the Circle to the Right, and then come to the Reſt. The Commiſſion-Officers, Quarter-Maſters, and Trumpets in the Rear, face with the Battalion, and are to perform it at the ſecond Motion, which is when the Men Face.

LXXVIII. *Face to the Right.* 3 Motions.

LXXIX. *Face to the Right.* 3 Motions.

LXXX. *Face to the Right.* 3 Motions.

LXXXI. *Face to the Right-about.* 3 Motions.

LXXXII. *To the Left about as you were.* 3 Motions.

LXXXIII. *Face to the Left.* 3 Motions.

LXXXIV. *Face to the Left.* 3 Motions.

LXXXV. *Face to the Left.* 3 Motions.

LXXXVI. *Face*

LXXXVI. *Face to the Left.* 2 Motions.

LXXXVII. *Face to the Left about.* 3 Motions.

LXXXVIII. *To the Right-about as you were.* 3 Motions.

LXXXIX. *Shoulder your Carbines.* 4 Motions.

XC. *Officers to your ſeveral Squadrons.*

The Commiſſion-Officers and Quarter-Maſters face to the Right and Left, as the Squadrons they belong to are poſted, and remain ſo till the following Word of Command. The Cornets are to advance the Standards.

XCI. *March.*

The Commiſſion-Officers and Quarter-Maſters march to their ſeveral Squadrons, and poſt themſelves on the Front and Rear, as before by Seniority.

The Trumpets alſo march to their reſpective Squadrons; the Trumpets of the Right Squadron poſt themſelves on the Right of it in a Line with the Front-Rank; thoſe of the Left Squadron on the Left; and thoſe of the Center Squadron are to poſt themſelves in the Rear of the Cornet with the Standard.

XCII. *To the Right cloſe your Files.*

All face to the Right on the Left Heel.

XCIII. *March.*

They all begin at the ſame time with the Left Feet, marching very ſlow, and when the Right-hand File of each Squadron comes to the Ground they ſtood on before they open'd, they are to ſtand, and the reſt are to march on and cloſe to them; by which each Squadron will be oppoſite to the Interval on the Right of their Horſes.

XCIV. *Halt*

XCIV. *Halt.*

They all face to the Left on the Left Heel, and the Trumpets of the Center Squadron poſt themſelves on the Right of it.

XCV. *Squadrons, face to the Right-about.*

They all face to the Right about on the Left Heel.

XCVI. *March.*

They all begin with the Left Feet, and march very ſlow, 'till each Rank comes within four Paces of the Right of their Horſes, and then ſtand facing to the Rear.

XCVII. *Squadrons, face to the Right.*

They all face to the Right on the Right Heel.

XCVIII. *March.*

They all begin at the ſame time with the Right Feet, and march in a ſtrait Line, 'till every Man comes oppoſite to his own Horſe, and then ſtand facing to the Left of the Squadrons.

XCIX. *Squadrons, face to the Right.*

They face to the Right on the Right Heel.

C. *Handle your Swivels.* 2 Motions.

This is done as in Explan. 7. of the Manual on Horſe-back, only with this Difference, that this is to be perform'd with the Right-hand as that is with the Left, and the Right Elbow kept ſquare.

CI. *Spring your Carbines.* 2 Motions.

This is done as is explain'd by the firſt and third Motions of Explan. 8. of the Manual on Horſe-back.

CII. *Face*

CII. *Face to the Right-about.*

The Officers and Men face to the Right-about on the Left Heel.

CIII. *Quit your Carbines.* 2 Motions.

First, thruſt your Carbine back with the Left-hand, 'till the Guard is behind the Shoulder, and raiſe the Butt higher than the Muzzle. 2. Quit your Carbine with your Left-Hand, letting it hang over the Left Shoulder by the Swivel, and bring your Hand to its proper Place.

At this Word of Command the Officers return their Swords, and their Servants bring their Horſes to the Head of the Squadrons.

CIV. *March to your Horſes.*

The Men march to their Horſes, placing themſelves on the Near or Left Side, and facing full to the Rear.

CV. *Unlink your Horſes.*

The Men unfaſten their Collars, and throw them over the Right Side of the Horſe's Neck, and take hold of the Left Cheek of their Horſe's Bridle with the Left-hand, ſtill facing to the Rear.

CVI. *Files to the Right double, March.*

Every even File reins back, as in Explan. 31. of the Evolutions.

CVII. *Face to the Left-about.*

They all face to the Left-about on the Right Heel, taking hold of the Left Cheek of the Bridle with the Right-hand, and the Officers to place themſelves on the near Side of their Horſes.

The Colonel, or Commanding Officer, at this quits the General and returns to the Regiment, in order to Mount when they do.

CVIII. *Shorten*

CVIII. *Shorten your Bridles.*

The Officers and Men face to the Right-about on the Left Heel, taking hold of the Reins of their Bridles with their Left-hands, and ſhortning them to a proper Length, and with the Right-hand they take part of the Horſe's Mane and place it in the Left upon the Bridle, facing full to the Rear.

CIX. *Your Left Feet in the Stirrups.* 2 Motions.

Firſt take hold of the Stirrup with the Right-hand, and place the Left Foot in it. 2. Come to the Left Side of the Horſe with a Hop, and take hold of the Cantle or hind Part of the Saddle with the Right-hand, the Left Knee touching the Horſe's Side, and looking full to the Right of the Squadron.

The Officers are to do the ſame.

CX. *Mount.* 2 Motions.

As this is part of Riding I will not explain it at large, only firſt, the Men raiſe themſelves upright in the Stirrups. 2. They bring the Right Leg over the Horſe, placing themſelves in the Saddle, and putting the Foot in the Stirrup. Then dreſs their Ranks and Files.

CXI. *Shoulder your Carbines.*

As is explain'd in Explan. 14.

CXII. *Unſpring your Carbines.*

As in Explan. 15.

CXIII. *Return your Swivels.*

As in Explan. 16.

CXIV. *Poize your Carbines.*

This is done as in the Foot Exerciſe, by joining your Right-hand to your Carbine, and poizing it.

CXV. *Return*

CXV. *Return your Carbines.*

As in Explan. 40. of the Manual on Horſe.

CXVI. *Return your Links.*

They are to take the Reins of the Collars and faſten them by a running Knot to the Ring above the right Holſter.

CXVII. *Files that doubled, move into your Places, March.*

This is done as in Explan. 32. of the Evolutions.

The Cornets with the Standards are to rein back into the Front-Rank, and the Kettle-Drummer and Trumpets to poſt themſelves as before.

The End of the Exerciſe.

ARTICLE V.

As this Exerciſe is calculated for the Diſmounting and Forming into Battalion a Regiment conſiſting of three Squadrons, it will be proper to give ſome Directions, how a Regiment of two Squadrons is to perform it.

Before you proceed to the neceſſary Motions for diſmounting, the two Squadrons are to be open'd to a greater Diſtance than uſual, that the Interval between them may be ſufficient to contain the Men of the two Squadrons when diſmounted, at cloſe Order.

When the Men are diſmounted, the Carbines ſhoulder'd, and the Swivels return'd, they are to face to the Right and Left inward, and then march and join in the Center of the Interval, and to face to their proper Front. After which, the Center and Rear-Ranks are to be cloſed forward to their proper Diſtance, the Files compleated, and the Officers to take their Poſts by Seniority at the Head of the Battalion. This being done, the Regiment is to march forward, to a proper Diſtance from the Horſes, and halt. Then the Files to be open'd from the Center, the Officers to take their Poſts in the Rear, and proceed to the Foot-Exerciſe.

As

As ſoon as the Foot Exerciſe is over, the Files are to be clos'd to the Center, and then faced to their proper Front; the Officers order'd to their ſeveral Squadrons, and the Battalion to face to the Right-about and march to the Interval; and when each Rank comes within four Paces of the Heads of their Horſes, they are to ſtand; then they are to face to the Right and Left outward and march to their Horſes, as is explain'd in the foregoing Exerciſe.

When the Men are mounted, the Carbines and Links returned, and the Files moved into their Places, the Squadrons are to cloſe the Interval to its proper Diſtance, and then to proceed to the Evolutions.

ARTICLE VI.

Rules for the Reception of a General Officer, who comes to Review the Regiment, or ſee the Exerciſe perform'd.

When the General comes in View, the Field-Officers are to poſt themſelves on the Front of their Squadrons, a Horſe Length before the Rank of Officers, in a direct Line with the Standards. The Colonel on the Right, the Lieutenant-Colonel on the Left Squadron, and the Major on the Center: But if the Regiment conſiſts only of two Squadrons, the Major is to poſt himſelf a little to the Left of the Colonel on the Firſt Squadron, and about Half a Horſe Length further back. The Cornets are at the ſame time to take the Standards and to fall into the Center of the Front Rank and dreſs with the Men, unleſs they are to ſalute, and then they are to be Half a Horſe Length before them, for the eaſier performing it.

As ſoon as the General comes near the Right Flank of the Firſt Squadron, the Colonel is to order the Swords to be drawn, at which time the Trumpets are to ſound a March, and as the General paſſes along the Front, the Officers are to ſalute him with their Swords. If he is to be ſaluted with the Standard, the Cornet is to do it, when the Colonel or Commanding Officer of the Squadron ſalutes, and to keep it down 'till he is paſt him.

When he approaches the Center Squadron, it is to do the ſame as the Firſt, and ſo with the Left Squadron, they being not to draw their Swords or ſound a March 'till he comes near them, each Squadron being then a diſtinct Body.

When the General has review'd them Standing, it is uſual, if Time permits, to ſee the Exerciſe perform'd; after which to review them Marching, either by entire Squadrons, ſingle Troops by Fours, or by Ranking off ſingly, as he ſhall be pleas'd to order.

If by entire Squadrons (as ſoon as the General has taken his Place) the Center and Rear Ranks are to move up to Order, and the Kettle-Drummer and Trumpets are to place themſelves in the Front of the Colonel, or Officer commanding the Squadron, and to march in that Order by the General, leaving but two or three Paces between the Right Flank of the Squadron and him. When the Commanding Officer comes within a proper Diſtance of the General, he is to ſalute him; and when the Rank of Officers comes upon the ſame Ground they are to ſalute together; as is alſo the Cornet with the Standard (if order'd to ſalute) when he comes to the ſame Place. When the Squadrons have paſſed the General, they are to wheel and march back and draw up on their former Ground.

If by ſingle Troops, the Ranks are to cloſe to Order, the Officers and Trumpets order'd to their Troops, and the Standards to the Center of the Front Rank of the eldeſt Troop in each Squadron. When this is done, they are to march in Squadron, 'till they come within twenty or thirty Paces of the General, and then the Troops on the Left and Center halt, but the Troop on the Right marches on, and the other Troops (as ſoon as it is paſs'd them) paſſage to the Right, 'till they come to the ſame Ground, and then march forward, keeping directly in the Rear of one another. In this Poſition the Captain is to be in the Center, the Lieutenant on his Right and the Cornet on his Left; but the Captain Half a Horſe Length before them. In thoſe Troops that have the Standards, the Cornets are to remain in the Front Rank of Men and march and dreſs with them, unleſs they are to ſalute, and then they are to be Half a Horſe Length advanc'd before them, for the Conveniency of performing it. In this Caſe the Lieutenant is to be on the Left of the Captain, but not ſo far advanc'd. The Trumpets are to march before the Captains, and the Quarter-Maſters in the Rear of the Troops.

If they are to march thus by the General, the Officers are to ſalute together; but as it is more uſual when they are in ſingle Troops, to rank off ſingly, I will ſet down the Directions accordingly.

The

The Squadrons being reduc'd into Troops, as ſoon as the Firſt Troop comes within ten Paces of the General, it is to halt, but the Trumpets keep moving on, and the Captain follows, then the Lieutenant and next the Cornet (unleſs he carries the Standard, and then he remains in the Front Rank, 'till the Men on his Right are march'd off before him) then the Right-hand Man of the Front Rank follows him, and the reſt of that Rank paſſage to the Right, and when the Men come upon the Ground where the Right-hand Man ſtood, they are to move out and march directly in the Rear of one another. When the Front Rank is march'd off, the Center moves up into their Ground and marches off ſingly as the Firſt did, and the Rear Rank moves up at the ſame time to the Ground on which the Center Rank ſtood, and then halt, 'till that Rank is march'd off, and then it moves up and Ranks off ſingly, as the others.

The other Troops are to paſs by the General in the ſame Manner, and not rank off till they come upon the ſame Ground

When the Men have got about twenty Paces beyond the General, they are to Rank up, and the Troop is to march about twenty Paces more, when it is to halt, 'till the other Troops join; and when the Squadron is again form'd it is to march and draw up on the former Ground.

The other Squadrons are to follow the ſame Directions.

When the Squadrons are to march by Fours, the Ranks are to be clos'd to Order, and the Officers order'd to the Front of the firſt four Men on the Right, the Captains placing themſelves by Seniority in one Rank, the Lieutenants in another in the Rear of the Captains, and the Cornets in the Rear of the Lieutenants, (except the Cornet that carries the Standard, who remains in the Front Rank of Men, and is to march in the Center of the Rank of Fours he is then plac'd in) and the Quarter-Maſters to march in the Rear of their reſpective Squadrons. The Commanding Officer of each Squadron is to march before the Captains, and the Kettle-Drummer and Trumpets before him. All things being thus diſpos'd, the Commanding Officer is to give the Word, *March*, at which the Officers and firſt four Men on the Right of the Front Rank are to march ſtraight forward, and the reſt of the Front Rank are to wheel to the Right by Fours, and March 'till they come to the Ground where the firſt Rank of Fours ſtood, and then wheel to the Left, taking care to keep their proper Diſtance and to cover the Rank before them.

As

As ſoon as the laſt four Men of the Front Rank are come to the Ground where the Right ſtood, the Center Rank is to move up to the Ground of the Front Rank, and the Rear Rank up to the Ground of the Center, and then halt 'till the Center Rank is march'd off, which they are to do in the ſame Manner as the Front Rank did. The ſame Rule is to be obſerv'd by the Rear Rank as ſoon as the Center is march'd off.

Each Rank of Officers is to ſalute as they come on the Ground, where the Commanding-Officer ſaluted.

When they are got to a proper Diſtance beyond the General they ſhould then form into a Squadron, either by ranking up, or each Rank forming at once a Rank entire to the Left.

Ranking up, is when the Second Rank of Fours draws up on the Left of the Firſt, the Third on the Left of the Second, and ſo on through thoſe of the Front Rank. The Firſt Rank of Fours of the Center Rank draws up in the Rear of the Right of the Front Rank, leaving a proper Interval between them, and the reſt of that Rank draws up on their Left, as thoſe of the Front Rank did. The Rear Rank obſerves the ſame Rules in drawing up in the Rear of the Center, as the Center did in regard to the Front Rank. As they are drawing up, the Officers are to divide themſelves on the Front of the Squadron.

If you would form each Rank into a Rank entire at once, you muſt order all the Ranks of Fours of the Front Rank to wheel at once to the Left, which forms them into a Rank entire, and conſequently forms the Front of the Squadron. As ſoon as that is done, the Officers are immediately to divide themſelves on the Front, and to march forward; that the Center Rank may march in the Rear of the Front and form a Rank entire, which it is to do when the firſt Four come near the Right of the Front Rank, without any Word of Command, and then march forward that the Rear Rank may do the ſame. After this the Squadrons are to draw up on their former Ground with their Ranks at Open Order, and to keep their Swords drawn 'till the General quits the Field.

FINIS.

BRITISH MUSEUM 30 67 DEC

BOOKS lately Printed for and Sold by PHILIP CRAMPTON, Bookſeller, at *Addiſon's-head*, over-againſt the *Horſe-guard*, in *Dame-ſtreet*.

ROBBINS's Abridgment of all the Iriſh Statutes, from the firſt Seſſion of the Reign of King Edward the 2d, to the End of the 12th Year of his preſent Majeſty King George the 2d. Together with an Abridgment of all the Engliſh Statutes in Force in Ireland, from Magna Charta to the 12th Year of his preſent Majeſty King George the 2d. Price bound	0	18	5

N. B. The Abridgment of the Two laſt Seſſions to be had ſeparately, at a Britiſh Shilling each.

Spectators, 8 Vols. 12mo. Fine Paper, bound	0	18	0
——— Ditto, Common Paper, 8 Vols. bound	0	16	6
Ninth Volume to Ditto, bound	0	2	8½
Pope's Homer, 6 Vols. 12mo. with 32 Copper Plates, bound	0	16	3
Love Letters between a Nobleman and his Siſter, with the Hiſtory of their Adventures, in Three Parts, bound	0	3	6
The laſt Edition of the Independent Whig, or a Defence of Primitive Chriſtianity, and of our Eccleſiaſtical Eſtabliſhment, againſt the exorbitant Claims and Encroachments of Fanatical and Diſaffected Clergymen. N. B. To this Edition is added the following Additions, viz. A large Preface to the Publiſher, in Vindication of the Book. 2. A Bull againſt it by the Biſhop of Sodor and Mann, directed to the Clergy of his Dioceſe. 3. The Craftſman, a Sermon. 4. A Letter to a Gentleman at Edinburgh, concerning the buſy and aſſuming Spirits of the Eccleſiaſticks, and their extravagant Demands on the Laity, &c. In two Vols. 12mo. bound	0	5	6

The

The two laſt Campaigns of the Mareſchal de Turenné, from the French, giving an Account of ſeveral extraordinary Actions on the Rhine, bound	0	2	2
Abelard and Heloiſa, bound	0	1	7½
Congreve's Dramatick Works, bound	0	3	3
Wicherly's Plays, bound	0	2	8½
The Skimmer, or the Hiſtory of Tanzai and Neadarné, an entertaining Novel, tranſlated from the French, bound	0	2	2
The Military Hiſtory of the late Prince Eugene, and of the late Duke of Marlborough, including a particular Deſcription of the ſeveral Battles, Sieges, &c. in which either or both thoſe Generals commanded. In 4 Vols. 8vo. bound	0	17	6
Ditto, Fine Paper, bound	1	2	9
The Works of Francis Rabelais, now carefully reviſed, and compared throughout, with the late new Edition of M. Le du Chat, by Mr. Ozell, who has likewiſe added at the Bottom of the Pages a Tranſlation of the Notes, Hiſtorical, Critical, and Explanatory, of the ſaid M. Du Chat and others, in which Notes (never before printed in Engliſh) the Text is not only explained, but in Multitudes of Places amended, and made conformable to the firſt and beſt Editions of this learned and facetious Author. In 4 Vols. 12mo. bound	0	10	10
The Turkiſh Spy, in 8 Vols. 12mo. bound	0	18	0
Gentleman's Pocket Farrier, 12mo. bound	0	1	1
Belloſte's Eſſay on Mercury, with an Account of the many wonderful Cures performed by it, 12mo. bound	0	1	7½
Tully's Offices, with Cockman's Notes, 12mo. bound	0	2	0
Longinus, Engliſh, 12mo. bound	0	2	0
Ovid's Epiſtles, Delphini, 8vo. bound	0	3	6
- - - - without Notes, 12mo. bound	0	0	8

Ovidii de Triſtibus, Delphini, 8vo. bound	0	2	8
- - - - without Notes, 12mo. bound	0	0	6
Conſtruction, 12mo. bound	0	0	6
Engliſh Expoſitor, 12mo. bound	0	1	2
Alvary's Proſody, 12mo. bound	0	0	6
Dryden's Juvenal, 12mo. bound	0	3	3
Teſtament, 8vo. bound	0	1	1
Hill's Arithmetick, 8vo. with Additions, bound	0	4	6
Pattoon's Navigation, 8vo. with Additions, bound	0	5	5
Mair's Book-keeping, 8vo. bound	0	3	6
Harris's Geometry, 12mo. bound	0	2	2
Ward's Mathematician's Guide, 8vo. bound	0	5	0
Keil's Trigonometry, 8vo. bound	0	2	2
Whiſton's Euclid, 8vo. bound	0	4	4
Clark's Steward's Accounts, and Office of a Land Steward, 8vo. bound	0	3	6
Hawney's Meaſuring, 12mo. bound	0	2	8
Mathematical Miſcellany of Paradoxes, 12mo, bound	0	1	8
Moivre on Annuities, 8vo. bound	0	2	6
Cocker's Arithmetick, 12mo. bound	0	0	10
Fuller's Practical Aſtronomy, 8vo. with Cuts, bound	0	4	4
Langley's Builders Vade Mecum, 12mo. bound	0	2	6
Bradly on Cattle, 12mo. bound	0	1	1
Hiſtory of America, 12mo. bound	0	0	10
Argalus and Parthenia, 12mo. bound	0	0	8
Hiſtory of Ireland, 12mo. bound	0	0	10
Jane Shore and Roſamond, 12mo. bound	0	0	10
Moll Flanders, 12mo. bound	0	0	10
Hiſtory of the Pirates, 12mo. bound	0	0	10
Surprizing Miracles, 12mo. bound	0	0	10
Drake's Voyages, 12mo. bound	0	0	10
Garth's Diſpenſatory, 12mo. ſtitch'd	0	0	6½
Book of Knowledge, 12mo. bound	0	0	10
Counteſs of Moreton's Devotions, 12mo. bd.	0	0	6
Ferr's Geography, 8vo. bound	0	2	8½

Hiſtory of the Tartars, 2 Vols. 8vo. bound	0	9	6
Puffendorf's Introduction to the Hiſtory of Aſia, Africa, and America, 8vo. bound	0	4	4
Dictionarium Ruſticum, 2 Vols. 8vo. bound	0	8	0
Varenius's Geography, 2 Vols. 8vo. bound	0	9	6
Rapin's Hiſtory of England, 2 Vols. Folio	2	10	0
A Political Eſſay upon Commerce, tranſlated from the French by D. Bindon, Eſq; 8vo. bd.	0	6	0

Gordon's Geographical Grammar, or an exact Analyſis of the whole Body of Modern Geography, after a new and curious Method; comprehending 1ſt. A general View of the Terraqueous Globe, with a tranſient Survey of the Earthly Ball, as it conſiſts of Land and Water. 2d. A particular View of the Terraqueous Globe, being a clear and pleaſant Proſpect of all remarkable Countries upon the Face of the whole Earth; ſhewing their Situation, Extent, Diviſion, Subdiviſion, Cities, chief Towns, Name, Air, Soil, Commodities, Rarities, Archbiſhopricks, Biſhopricks, Univerſities, Manners, Languages, Government, Arms, Religion, &c. The Fifteenth Edition, corrected, and much enlarged, with a compleat Set of 17 new Maps, by Mr. Senex. Price bound 5 s.

Plays Sold at a Britiſh Six-Pence.

CATO.
Spaniſh Fryar.
Lucius Junius Brutus.
Indian Emperor.
Oroonoko.
Hamlet.
Cyrus.
Othello.
Theodoſius.
All for Love.
Mourning Bride.
Venice Preſerv'd.
Henry the Fourth.
Phædra and Hippolitus.
OEdipus.
Fatal Secret.
Plain Dealer.
Old Batchelor.
Cutter of Coleman-ſtreet.
Love for Love.
Careleſs Husband.
Gentleman Dancing-Maſter.
Love in a Wood.
Devil of a Wife.
Double Dealer.
Country Wife.
Way of the World.
All Vows kept.
Polite Philoſopher.

